

KIM IL SUNG

WORKS

WORKING PEOPLE OF THE WHOLE WORLD, UNITE!

KIM IL SUNG

WORKS

32

January–December 1977

FOREIGN LANGUAGES PUBLISHING HOUSE
PYONGYANG, KOREA

1988

CONTENTS

NEW YEAR ADDRESS

January 1, 1977 1

LET US FURTHER RAISE THE STANDARD OF LIVING OF THE PEOPLE BY DEVELOPING POULTRY AND LIVESTOCK FARMING

Speech Delivered at the Consultative Meeting of the Officials
in Charge of Poultry and Livestock Farming, *January 27, 1977* 13

TALK TO THE CHAIRMAN OF THE DIETMEN'S LEAGUE FOR THE PROMOTION OF JAPAN-KOREA FRIENDSHIP

January 27, 1977 42

ON SOME TASKS FOR THE LEAGUE OF SOCIALIST WORKING YOUTH

Speech Delivered to Officials of the Central Committee
of the League of Socialist Working Youth, *February 25, 1977* 49

ON THE FURTHER DEVELOPMENT OF THE FISHING INDUSTRY IN THE WEST SEA

Speech at a Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry
on the West Coast, *March 21, 1977* 67

ON FURTHER INCREASING PRODUCTION AT THE COAL MINES IN THE TOKCHON AREA

Speech at a Political Committee Meeting of the Central
Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, *March 31, 1977* 89

ON THE GENERAL MOBILIZATION OF THE PARTY,
THE ARMY AND THE PEOPLE IN A CAMPAIGN
TO PREVENT DAMAGE FROM DROUGHT BROUGHT
ABOUT BY THE COLD FRONT

Concluding Speech at the 13th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth
Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, *April 5, 1977* 116

ON MAKING FRESH INNOVATIONS IN TRANSPORT

Concluding Speech at the 13th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth
Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, *April 6, 1977* 138

LET US IMPLEMENT TO THE FULL THE DECISION
OF THE PLENARY MEETING OF THE PARTY
CENTRAL COMMITTEE ON PREVENTING
DAMAGE FROM THE DROUGHT

Speech at the Consultative Meeting of Officials from the Party,
Government, Administrative and Economic Organizations of the Provinces,
Cities and Counties in the Western Region, *April 13, 1977* 165

TALK WITH EXECUTIVE MANAGING EDITOR
OF JAPANESE *YOMIURI SHIMBUN* AND HIS GROUP

April 23, 1977 178

LET US IMPLEMENT LOCAL BUDGETS CORRECTLY SO AS TO
IMPROVE THE STANDARD OF LIVING OF THE PEOPLE

Speech at the Seventh Session of the Fifth Supreme People's
Assembly of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, *April 27, 1977* 189

ON THE LAND LAW

Speech Delivered at the Seventh Session of the Fifth Supreme People's
Assembly of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, *April 29, 1977* 197

THE LAND LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC
PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF KOREA

Adopted at the Seventh Session of the Fifth Supreme People's Assembly
of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, *April 29, 1977* 210

Chapter I. The Land of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea Is a Precious Gain of the Revolution	210
Chapter II. Land Ownership	212
Chapter III. The Master Plan for Land Development	213
Chapter IV. Land Conservation.....	214
Chapter V. Land Development.....	219
Chapter VI. Land Administration.....	223
TALK TO A DELEGATION FROM THE FRENCH ACTION COMMITTEE TO SUPPORT THE INDEPENDENT AND PEACEFUL REUNIFICATION OF KOREA	
<i>May 8, 1977</i>	227
ON SOME TASKS IN AGRICULTURE THIS YEAR	
Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting of Agricultural Officials, <i>June 7, 1977</i>	233
ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY A YUGOSLAV TELEVISION CREW	
<i>June 9, 1977</i>	248
TALK WITH THE EDITOR-IN-CHIEF OF THE FRENCH NEWSPAPER <i>LE MONDE</i>	
<i>June 20, 1977</i>	252
ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY REPORTERS FROM N.H.K.	
<i>July 3, 1977</i>	261
ON A FEW PROBLEMS IN DEVELOPING THE MACHINE INDUSTRY	
Concluding Speech at a Consultative Meeting of Officials of the Machine Industry, <i>July 19, 1977</i>	271
ON FURTHER INCREASING THE PRODUCTION OF COOKING OIL	

Speech at an Enlarged Meeting of the Political Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, <i>August 3, 1977</i>	283
ON SOME MEASURES FOR IMPROVING CAPITAL CONSTRUCTION	
Speech at an Enlarged Meeting of the Political Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, <i>August 4, 1977</i>	299
ON FURTHER DEVELOPING THE ENGINEERING INDUSTRY	
Speech Delivered at the National Meeting of Activists in the Engineering Industry, <i>August 20, 1977</i>	320
TALK TO THE SECRETARY GENERAL OF THE ITALY-KOREA FRIENDSHIP ASSOCIATION	
<i>September 3, 1977</i>	340
ON PUBLISHING THE <i>THESES ON SOCIALIST EDUCATION</i>	
Speech at the 14th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, <i>September 5, 1977</i>	344
THESES ON SOCIALIST EDUCATION	
Published at the 14th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, <i>September 5, 1977</i>	353
1. The Fundamental Principle of Socialist Pedagogy	355
2. The Content of Socialist Education	364
1) Political and Ideological Education	364
2) Scientific and Technical Education	368
3) Physical Education	370
3. The Methods of Socialist Education	371
1) Heuristic Teaching	371
2) Combining Theoretical Education with Practical Training, and Education with Productive Labour	374

3) The Development of an Organizational Way of Life and of Social and Political Activities	375
4) The Combination of School and Social Education	377
5) Continuity in Preschool, School and Adult Education	379
4. The Socialist Education System in Our Country	382
1) The System of Universal Compulsory Education	383
2) The System of Universal Free Education	385
3) The Study-While-You-Work System	387
4) The State System of Bringing Up and Educating Children	389
5. The Duty and Role of Educational Institutions; Guidance and Assistance to Education	391
1) The Mission and Duty of Schools	391
2) The Position and Role of Teachers	394
3) Party Guidance in Education	397
4) State Support and Social Assistance in Education	399

**ON THE FULL IMPLEMENTATION OF THE
*THESES ON SOCIALIST EDUCATION***

Concluding Speech at the 14th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, <i>September 7, 1977</i>	402
--	-----

**ON STRENGTHENING THE CHAPTERS AND BRANCHES
OF CHONGRYON AND WORKING EFFICIENTLY WITH
THE PEOPLE FROM ALL WALKS OF LIFE**

Talk to a Group of Koreans from Japan Present to Celebrate the 29th Anniversary of the Foundation of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea and a Delegation of Workers from Chongryon Chapters, <i>September 12, 1977</i>	423
--	-----

**A LETTER OF GOOD WISHES TO THE ELEVENTH
CONGRESS OF CHONGRYON**

<i>September 26, 1977</i>	432
---------------------------------	-----

ON GIVING DEFINITE PRIORITY TO THE MINING
INDUSTRY OVER THE MANUFACTURING INDUSTRY

Speech at a National Meeting of Activists in the Mining
Industry, *September 29, 1977*.....437

A LETTER OF CONGRATULATIONS TO THE TEACHING
STAFF AND PUPILS OF THE MANGYONGDAE
REVOLUTIONARY SCHOOL

October 10, 1977452

ON SOME TASKS FACING THE KOREAN
DEMOCRATIC WOMEN’S UNION IN JAPAN

Talk to a Delegation of Korean Women from Japan, *November 5, 1977*.....457

ON SOME TASKS FACING THE KOREAN
JOURNALISTS IN JAPAN

Talk to a Delegation of Korean Journalists from Japan, *November 20, 1977*.....468

LET US BUILD UP THE STRENGTH OF THE PEOPLE’S
ARMY THROUGH EFFECTIVE POLITICAL WORK

Speech at the Seventh Congress of Motivation Workers in the Korean
People’s Army, *November 30, 1977*485

1. On Our Party’s Policy for Achieving the Independent,
Peaceful Reunification of the Country.....485

2. On Strengthening Political Work in the People’s Army.....493

3. The Ten Rules to Be Observed by the Soldiers
of the People’s Army in Their Military Service499

LET US FURTHER STRENGTHEN THE PEOPLE’S GOVERNMENT

Speech Delivered at the First Session of the Sixth
Supreme People’s Assembly of the Democratic People’s
Republic of Korea, *December 15, 1977*506

1. The Masses of the Working People Are the Genuine
Masters of the State and Society508

2. The People's Government Should Serve the Masses of Working People.....	513
3. Let Us Fight against Bureaucracy	519

ON THE SECOND SEVEN-YEAR PLAN (1978-84)
FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE NATIONAL
ECONOMY OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE'S
REPUBLIC OF KOREA

Ordinance of the Supreme People's Assembly of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea Adopted at the First Session of the Sixth Supreme People's Assembly, <i>December 17, 1977</i>	527
1. The Basic Task of the Second Seven-Year Plan	530
2. Tasks for the Different Sectors of the National Economy	531
1) Industry	531
2) Agriculture.....	538
3) Transport and Communications	540
4) Capital Construction.....	541
5) Education, Science and Culture	542
6) The Standard of Living.....	544

LET US WAGE A MORE VIGOROUS CAMPAIGN
TO SMASH THE "TWO KOREAS" PLOT
AND REUNIFY THE COUNTRY

Talk to a Delegation of Chongryon Officials, <i>December 22, 1977</i>	548
---	-----

NEW YEAR ADDRESS

January 1, 1977

Comrades,

We have seen out a year of success and fruitful activity in the revolution and construction and are greeting 1977, a new year of hope, which will be adorned with renewed struggle and glory.

Welcoming the New Year, I offer my warmest congratulations and greetings to our heroic workers, cooperative farmers, gallant officers and men of the People's Army, working intellectuals and all the Korean people who are working with complete devotion for socialist construction and ultimate victory in the revolution.

I also extend my New Year greetings to the south Korean revolutionaries and patriotic democrats, youth and students and other people from all walks of life who are struggling doggedly for democratic freedom and national reunification in the face of the fascist oppression by the US imperialists and their puppets.

I offer my warmest congratulations and greetings to our 600,000 nationals resident in Japan and all our other compatriots overseas who are ringing in the New Year with a feeling of deep love for their homeland and with valiant fighting spirit, regarding their socialist homeland as a beacon of hope, although they are in faraway lands.

Today, as we greet the first morning of the New Year with the feelings of great pride and honour that are the victors' due, we look back with joy on the past year, replete with arduous struggle and significant happenings.

1976 was a year of historic achievement which witnessed the fulfilment of the Six-Year Plan, a grand programme of socialist construction put forward at the Fifth Congress of the Party.

Last year our people, holding high the red flag of the three revolutions, struggled hard and caused an upsurge in the revolution and construction and so achieved the great success of fulfilling the assignments of the Six-Year Plan in all areas of the national economy.

As a result of the successful fulfilment of the Six-Year Plan, the economic might of our country has increased, our revolutionary base has become more solid and our people have scaled one more peak on the road to socialism and communism.

Last year our valiant working class made great efforts with unbounded loyalty to the Party and succeeded in reaching the goal of steel production, one of the most difficult targets of the Six-Year Plan. The builders of metallurgical works and steel makers finished the construction of the rolling plant at the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex, finished the expansion projects at the Kangson Steel Complex and other major metallurgical works and thus created the capacity to produce four million tons of steel annually, hoisting the victor's banner over the height of steel.

The goal for cement production was also attained. Thanks to the energetic struggle of the constructors of building-materials production centres, it became possible to put into commission the modern Sunchon Cement Factory with a capacity of three million tons; also the production capacities of the Chonnaeri and many other cement factories were increased considerably. As a result, our country's cement production capacity surpassed eight million tons, and the goal of cement production, which had been the last remaining target of the Six-Year Plan, was finally attained.

The production foundations of the power, chemical and machine industries were strengthened and the production targets of the Six-Year Plan were overreached by a large margin in all areas of the national economy.

In particular, much was done in capital construction last year.

Displaying mass heroism and the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, the building workers, in unfailing loyalty to the Party, not only completed the construction of great metallurgical works and building-materials production centres but also fulfilled with credit many other difficult construction projects. The courageous builders completed such major construction projects as the Chongchongang Thermal Power Plant, the Taedonggang Power Station, Sodusu Power Station No. 2, the Youth General Chemical Works and many machine plants, and built modern cities in the Anju and south Chongjin areas in a short space of time. Thanks to such large-scale capital construction, the structure of industry was further perfected, the foundations of the independent national economy were made more solid and the towns and villages became more beautiful.

Last year agriculture was remarkably successful. Due to the cold front, the weather conditions were most unfavourable. But our hard-working farmers and their helpers sent to the countryside overcame all the obstacles and difficulties and reaped the richest harvest ever known in our history, producing more than eight million tons of grain. This success in agricultural output is a striking illustration of the justice of our Party's agricultural policy and the vitality of the Juche-based method of farming. Today, when because of the cold front, crop failure is a worldwide occurrence, great strides are being made in agricultural production and rich crops are harvested every year in our country. This is a cause for great pride and honour.

A major success was also recorded last year in implementing the five-point policy of transforming nature. The entire people joined in the efforts to carry out the grand projects for transforming nature, upholding the decision of the 12th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Party, with the result that in only two short months the area of irrigated non-paddy fields was significantly expanded, many terraced fields were created and the farmlands were better protected against flooding.

I extend warm thanks to our workers, farmers, working intellectuals and all other people who, by making heroic efforts last year, fulfilled

the Six-Year Plan outlined at the Fifth Congress of the Party and made major achievements on all fronts of socialist construction.

The situation in our country was very tense last year, and our people continued the revolutionary struggle and construction work under difficult and complicated circumstances.

Driven into a serious political and economic crisis by the forceful revolutionary activities of the peoples of the world, the US imperialists intensified their aggressive scheming against our country at a higher level than ever before in an attempt to solve their problems by starting a war. The Ford administration of the United States engineered the “Panmunjom incident” on August 18 last year and, using this as an excuse, frantically whipped up clamours for a war against the northern half of Korea. The Ford administration ordered all the armed forces in south Korea to prepare for action and brought in modern war equipment and armed forces on a large scale, threatening us with what they called “retaliatory measures”.

The vicious and provocative war manoeuvres of the Ford administration created a critical situation which might at any moment have sparked off a war in our country, seriously endangering peace not only in Asia, but throughout the world. At the crucial hour—war or peace—the peace-loving people of the world expressed their deep concern for the situation in our country and watched closely to see how our people would deal with the reckless aggressive scheme of the US imperialists.

Our Party and people, tried and tested in the long, arduous revolutionary struggle, were not in the least daunted by the threats and blackmail of the enemy, but answered them by taking the steps that were required. The courageous officers and men of our People’s Army, members of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards and the Young Red Guards and all the other people, standing closely around the Party under one ideology and purpose, valiantly joined the struggle to resist the enemy’s aggressive act and increased the defence capability of the country and, at the same time, energetically advanced socialist construction, holding a rifle in one hand and a hammer or a sickle in

the other. Thus we successfully thwarted this reckless provocation, steadfastly protected the security of the country and the achievements of the revolution, and gained excellent results in socialist construction.

In the course of the “Panmunjom incident” we demonstrated to the whole world the invincible might and revolutionary determination of our people, rallied closely around the Party, and proved once again the justice of the consistent peace-loving policy of our Party and the Government of the Republic.

The unity and cohesion of the Party and the masses was further strengthened and the people were hardened politically and ideologically through their arduous revolutionary struggle last year. Today our people are filled with the firm conviction that they can crush any enemy when they are united closely around the Party and have the fiery determination to fight with complete devotion for the reunification of the country and the ultimate victory of the revolution. The rock-firm unity and cohesion of the Party and the masses and the great revolutionary spirit of the people are a sure guarantee for victory in everything we do.

I extend my warmest congratulations and thanks to the gallant officers and men of our People’s Army and People’s Security Forces, members of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards and the Young Red Guards and the rest of the people who, by displaying boundless loyalty to the Party and the revolution and matchless patriotic devotion, put a decisive end to the vicious aggressive moves of the enemy and resolutely defended the security of the country and the achievements of the revolution.

Comrades,

The Party Central Committee has defined the New Year 1977 as a year of readjustment for easing the strain created in certain branches of the economy in the course of carrying out the Six-Year Plan and for preparing to embark on a new long-term plan.

Such temporary strain has been created in some branches of the economy in recent years in the course of rushing to reach the peaks of the Six-Year Plan. In our economy today, transportation is failing to

keep pace with our rapidly-growing output and the mining industry is not keeping well ahead of the processing industries. This is hindering the accelerated growth of production in certain processing industries and is impeding capital construction to a considerable extent.

It is a major law of socialist economics to maintain a proper balance between all sectors of the national economy whilst production and construction are advancing continuously at a high rate.

This year we should make great efforts to ease the strain on transportation and to keep the mining industry well ahead of the processing industries, whilst making thorough preparations to reach the peaks of a new long-term plan in all sectors of the national economy. This is the principal task that should be carried out in this year of readjustment.

The priority sector this year must be transportation.

Reinforcing the transportation front is an important guarantee for consolidating those peaks already taken and for occupying new ones. It is only when the strain on transportation has been eased, a great innovation in transportation brought about and raw materials, fuel and other supplies are delivered on time, that it becomes possible to operate the existing factories at full capacity, build new ones and guarantee the satisfactory development of the national economy as a whole.

We should make this year a year for reinforcing the transportation front.

On this front, both land and sea transport should be developed with the main emphasis on the railways. In order to increase our capacity for rail transport, ceaseless efforts should be made to electrify the rail network and, at the same time, the production of electric and diesel locomotives and 60-ton waggons should be boosted and tanker waggons and various other special waggons produced in large numbers. In addition, a considerable number of trucks, particularly 10-ton and 25-ton trucks, should be produced and many large cargo ships of 10,000 tons and bigger should be built to substantially increase our capacities for road and sea transport. Along with this, loading and unloading operations should be mechanized, the organization of

transportation improved and strict revolutionary discipline and order established in the field of transportation so that a radical change is brought about in the work of this sector.

In addition, efforts should be concentrated on the mining industry.

It is our Party's consistent policy to keep the mining industry significantly ahead of the processing industries, and this is a fundamental condition for putting production at industrial establishments on a steady basis. In particular, demands for various minerals and coal have increased sharply in recent years with the major expansion of the production capacities of the metallurgical and other processing industries and the construction of many thermal power stations. Whether the industrial establishments which have already been built will prove really worthwhile or not depends upon the supply of enough raw materials and fuel by the mining industry.

The coal mines should bring about a major increase in coal production by giving precedence to the removal of overburden and to tunnelling and by effecting technological innovations, and thus meet in full the demands for coal at the thermal power stations and other industrial establishments and in various other sectors of the economy.

A solid raw material base for the metallurgical works should be created through the large-scale development and expansion of mines. Expansion projects at large and promising mines such as the Musan Mine, the Tokhyon Mine, the Unnyul Mine and the Komdok Mine should be speeded up, and innovations introduced in ore production.

A major goal of mining should be to create a reserve of raw materials sufficient to last the metallurgical industry for at least two months.

In particular, great efforts should be directed towards increasing the production of nonferrous ores. Whilst expanding the existing nonferrous ore mines, we should work hard towards the large-scale development of new ones and the expansion of our smelting capacity. We should increase the production capacity of the smelteries by improving their equipment and speed up the construction of the Tanchon Smeltery so that it can be put into operation this year.

In the mining industry, projects for modernizing the production of magnesia clinker should be accelerated and more high-quality magnesia clinker produced.

One of the most pressing problems in giving socialist economic construction a great impetus is to generate and supply sufficient electricity.

Electricity is one of the main forms of energy for modern industry, and it holds a major share of the composition of the energy in our country. With the rapid progress of production and construction, the demands of the national economy for electric power are increasing sharply, but production at hydroelectric power stations is severely handicapped by the influence of the cold front. Under such conditions it is of major importance to solve the problem of electric power.

The workers and technicians of the power industry should ensure that all the generators operate at full capacity by taking good care of the equipment and checking and repairing it promptly as set out in the technical regulations, and thus bring about a sharp increase in the production of electricity. In order to satisfy the ever-growing demands for electricity, it is essential to make the fullest possible use of the existing generating capacity and, at the same time, continue to accelerate the projects for creating additional capacity. The Wiwon Power Station, Huichon Power Station No. 2, the Taedonggang Power Station, Sodusu Power Station No. 3 and the Chongchongang Thermal Power Plant now under construction should be put into commission at the earliest possible date by concentrating our efforts on them.

The main task facing light industry this year is to increase the production of consumer goods and improve their quality. The workers and technicians of this sector should bring about an improvement in the production of consumer goods by tapping and using every reserve and opportunity to the maximum. Cornstarch and other food-processing factories, in particular, should be operated properly and the food industry further developed to supply the people with tasty and nutritious foodstuffs in greater quantities.

The agricultural front will remain one of the major fronts this year

since the effects of the cold front persist and the whole world is suffering a food crisis.

Whilst consolidating the successes already achieved in agricultural production, we should make enormous efforts to attain the 10 million-ton target for annual grain production. Thorough measures should be taken to combat the effects of the cold front and farming should be conducted on a scientific and technical basis, as demanded by the Juche-based farming method, so that another major leap forward will be made in grain production this year. As was the case last year, the whole Party, the whole army and the whole people should turn out this year and offer substantial material, technical and manpower support to the agricultural sector.

The basic way to radically boost grain production in the future lies in thoroughly implementing the five-point policy of transforming nature put forward by the Party at the 12th Plenary Meeting of its Fifth Central Committee. This year we should introduce a mass movement to expand irrigation in non-paddy fields, build terraced fields on a large scale and make a great effort to carry out land realignment and land and river improvement and thus lay solid foundations for reaching the goal of producing 10 million tons of grain annually in the near future.

The rapid development of the fisheries is an important task for raising the people's standard of living.

Currently, the sea conditions in our country are undergoing a change which is extremely favourable to the development of fishing. We should improve the fisheries significantly by dedicating great efforts to the fishing sector this year. On this front, a scientific system for fishing should be established, all-out efforts made to increase the catch of fish, and fish processing improved, so that the demands of the working people for fish are fully met.

The task facing us is to consolidate the bases of the fishing industry and further modernize the material and technical conditions of the fisheries in order to radically increase fish production. In particular, a wide variety of modern fishing gear should be mass-produced and many fishing boats built. The shipyards should be expanded and their

capacities increased so that a large number of factory ships of over 10,000 tons and stern trawlers of 3,750 tons can be built and that many small- and medium-sized fishing boats, particularly those of 450 tons, can be produced.

The guidance of the economy and the management of enterprises should be improved and the efforts to increase production and make greater economies be further intensified. In all sectors and in all units of the national economy, political work and the work of organizing the economy should be conducted meticulously as demanded by the Taean work system and the economy should be managed with the utmost care so that as much fuel, raw and other materials are saved as possible, the consumption of materials per product is lowered and output increased with the equipment, materials and manpower available in order to cut production costs by over two per cent more than planned. It is particularly important to intensify the struggle for the economic use of electricity. Active measures should be taken in all fields to completely eliminate the waste of electricity and cut the consumption of power per product, and a mass movement be waged for the economic use of electricity.

We should maintain our energetic efforts to continue the three revolutions for the fulfilment of the revolutionary tasks facing us this year. Based on the achievements already made in the three revolutions, we should further deepen and develop the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions, and enlist the unfailing energy and creative ingenuity of the masses in order to cause another upswing in all areas of the revolution and construction.

The situation in our country remains tense due to the moves of the US imperialists and the south Korean puppet clique to spark off another war. Inasmuch as the enemy persists in his aggressive manoeuvres, the whole people should constantly remain on the alert without reducing their revolutionary vigilance in the slightest. The officers and men of the People's Army and the People's Security Forces should further improve their combat preparedness and fighting capacity through unstinting combat and political training and

resolutely guard the security posts of the country.

We have seen out another year and are greeting a New Year with the cause of national reunification still not achieved. It is the greatest and most cherished desire of the entire Korean people to reunify their divided country at the earliest possible date, and this demand becomes more pressing as the years pass.

Last year, the people and patriotic democrats in south Korea fought unyieldingly for social democracy in spite of continued fascist oppression by the puppet ruling clique, and the 600,000 Korean nationals in Japan and other overseas compatriots, too, waged a campaign to expose and denounce the crimes against the nation of the south Korean puppet clique and to hasten the independent, peaceful reunification of the homeland.

In the New Year all the people of north and south Korea and Koreans overseas should pool their strengths and stand together on the principle of great national unity, and fight with more vigour for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country, the common cause of this nation.

In order to accomplish this historic cause it is extremely important to strengthen our unity and solidarity with the revolutionary people of the world. Last year, thanks to the sound foreign policy and brisk external activities of our Party and the Government of our Republic, our solidarity with the peoples of the third world was strengthened further and a powerful solidarity movement supporting our people's cause of national reunification was staged throughout the world. The Fifth Summit Conference of Non-aligned Countries held in Colombo last August expressed firm solidarity with our people's cause of national reunification and adopted a resolution in full agreement with our Party's policy for reunification. Also, solidarity committees in support of the reunification of Korea were formed in many countries on all continents, including the third world states and Japan, France, Belgium and the United States, and voices were raised in all parts of the world in proclaiming solidarity with the struggle of the south Korean people against fascism and for democracy. We are delighted to

know that the solidarity movement supporting and encouraging our cause of national reunification is gaining strength every day among the progressive people of the world.

Greeting the New Year, I, on behalf of the entire Korean people, extend warm congratulations and greetings to progressive people and all our other friends the world over who are offering strong support and encouragement to our revolutionary cause.

This year, too, we will strive to strengthen our unity and solidarity with the peoples of socialist and third world countries and the other progressive people of the world. In this way, we shall encourage the calls for international solidarity to become louder in order to thwart and frustrate the “two Koreas” plot of the divisionists at home and abroad and to support the struggle of the south Korean people against fascism and for democracy, and compel the United States to comply with our just proposal to sign a peace agreement, so that a new phase will be opened up that is more favourable to the independent, peaceful reunification of our country.

The revolutionary tasks facing us this year are very honourable and worthwhile fighting tasks. As long as we have the wise leadership of our Party and our people are fully armed with the Juche idea, we are certain to achieve marvellous successes in our revolutionary activities this year, too.

Let us all form a close union around the Central Committee of the Party under the banner of Marxism-Leninism, the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea, and continue to fight with greater vigour for increased success in socialist construction and for the hastening of the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

LET US FURTHER RAISE THE STANDARD OF LIVING OF THE PEOPLE BY DEVELOPING POULTRY AND LIVESTOCK FARMING

**Speech Delivered at the Consultative Meeting
of the Officials in Charge of Poultry
and Livestock Farming**

January 27, 1977

Today, I am going to make a few remarks on the question of the further development of poultry and livestock farming.

Animal husbandry in our country is historically underdeveloped. Owing to the geographical conditions in our country where the area of arable land and large pastures is limited, domestic animals such as dairy cattle and sheep have never been raised on such a large scale as other countries that have a vast area of pasture land. In the olden days our people engaged in agriculture, with each farm household raising just a few chickens and one or two pigs.

To live on rice and meat soup has been the long-cherished desire of our people. In order to realize this desire we have, since the country's liberation, made great efforts to develop not only crop cultivation, but also animal husbandry and poultry farming in particular.

Under the conditions in our country, it is preferable to construct chicken and duck plants and develop poultry farming rather than to build pig plants or cattle farms. Rearing cattle or sheep requires a large area of pasture land and pig breeding requires a large amount of feed. But chickens and ducks can be raised anywhere with a small amount of

feed. Taking into consideration the Koreans' diet, it is also a good idea to develop poultry farming. Because Koreans are not accustomed to eating a great deal of meat, they do not like greasy food very much. Chicken and the like appeal to the Korean palate. Therefore, our country should develop poultry farming.

In order to develop poultry farming, as early as the difficult days of the Fatherland Liberation War, we imported ducks' eggs by air and built a duck farm, where a lot of ducks were raised. In the postwar years we visited many districts, guiding the construction of chicken and duck plants throughout the country. There are now a large number of modern, large-scale chicken and duck plants in our country. No country in the world has built as many large-scale chicken and duck plants. One chicken plant, said to be the largest in a particular developed capitalist country, has an annual production capacity of 30 million eggs, but our Mangyongdae Chicken Plant has a production capacity of 100 million eggs and Sopho and Hadang Chicken Plants 50 million eggs each. We have also established a proper pedigree system in this sector.

The efficient use of the existing foundations of our state's poultry farming will enable us to produce at least 1,000 million eggs a year and meet, in the main, the people's demands for chicken and eggs.

In recent years, however, chicken and eggs have not been produced on a steady basis because officials have managed the chicken plants badly.

The Mangyongdae Chicken Plant has always neglected the prompt repair and the management of its equipment. In consequence, the pipes burst due to freezing a short time ago. So the chickens were not supplied with sufficient water, and a large number of young birds died of the cold. This plant is not the only instance of careless management. The situation is the same at other chicken plants.

Because the attitude towards their work on the part of the officials is wrong, animal husbandry outside the state sector is not developing rapidly.

A long time ago we set out the policy of launching a mass campaign

to raise chickens and gave every county rice mill the tasks of raising 1,000 chickens, every cooperative farm rice mill 100 chickens, every threshing-floor at the cooperative farms 50 chickens, and every farmhouse five chickens. However, in very few cases have these tasks been implemented properly. During my recent inspection of Kaechon and Anju, South Phyongan Province, and Pakchon and Nyongbyon, North Phyongan Province, I found no chickens on the threshing-floors of the cooperative farms. Farm households, too, had no chickens of the *Mangyong* breed, a good layer, but just a few chickens of a native breed. From time immemorial, farmers have raised chickens, but even this fine practice is disappearing.

If the officials follow the Party's policy of a mass campaign to raise chickens and work hard to put it into effect, the rural communities alone will produce between 1,200 and 1,500 million eggs annually and even 2,000 million if things go well. If the eggs from the state chicken plants are included, our country will be able to produce 2,500 or 3,000 million eggs a year. This means at least 160 eggs per head of the population a year, one egg every other day.

But we are not producing eggs as we should, nor are we satisfying the people's demands for chicken and eggs.

When I was giving direction to the poultry industry, plenty of chicken and eggs were being produced and the shops were well stocked and crowded with customers. But in the last two or three years things have not been going well. So the efforts we have made to build such a large number of chicken plants and develop poultry farming were wasted.

What, then, is the reason for the decline of animal husbandry in recent years?

The main reason for the low output of chicken and eggs and for the failure to satisfy the people's demands is that the officials of this sector have neither the attitude befitting masters nor the spirit to serve the people.

Presently, there is no real master directing animal husbandry in a responsible manner. No one is supervising and organizing the work in

this sector. No one is reviewing and controlling it. The officials of the Agricultural Commission are working in a slipshod manner, the chairmen of the provincial rural economy committees and those of the county cooperative farm management committees are neglecting their organizational work, and the chief secretaries of the provincial and county Party committees are paying no attention to animal husbandry. The officials of the Agricultural Commission and other organizations in the agricultural sector and the chief secretaries of the provincial, city and county Party committees ought to take responsibility for the well-being of the people and work as masters, but they are not doing so.

The reason for their failure to manage chicken plants properly and ensure a rapid increase in egg production is not because the facilities are poor or because they do not know how to work.

I have made several speeches on the subject of chicken plants and given quite a few demonstration lectures for the officials in charge of animal husbandry and for the chief secretaries of the provincial, city and county Party committees, personally taking them to see model units for raising chickens, once they had been set up. I explained down to the minutest detail to the officials of this sector the major problems arising in chicken breeding, from the ways of obtaining feed in the country areas to world trends in poultry farming. Last year I also briefed the senior officials in charge of poultry and livestock farming on how other countries were making economies in their use of feed by reducing the consumption of grain feed and using substitutes, and instructed them to take measures to use feed economically. However, this task, too, was not implemented properly.

All the officials present at this meeting must conduct in-depth self-criticism for their shortcomings in their work and make fresh resolves and bring about a turn in the development of poultry and livestock farming.

First of all, we should raise many chickens.

Chicken and egg production must be increased through a mass campaign to raise chickens. If this is done, the state will not be required to expend a large amount of feed and we shall not have to use the

sophisticated equipment that is used at chicken plants. A mass campaign to raise chickens is a good way to increase chicken and egg production rapidly and satisfy the people's demands, without the need for a large investment. We must regard this work as an important political task and press ahead with it.

One important aspect of this campaign is to ensure that every farm household raises five hens.

There are 1.4 million households in the countryside which can raise chickens. If every one of them raises five hens and if every hen lays 180 eggs a year, they will produce a total of nearly 1,300 million eggs. If every farm household keeps five laying hens, the rural villages will produce considerably more eggs than the state chicken plants, without the need for heavy investment. We must therefore encourage every farm household to raise five laying hens. If every farm household raises a couple of chickens of a native breed as well as the five laying hens, they will be able to eat both chicken and eggs.

The state should provide farm households with a definite amount of grain feed for the chickens.

Chickens should also be raised extensively on the threshing-floors at cooperative farms.

Cooperative farms must develop a campaign to raise 100 chickens each on their threshing-floors. Depending on the availability of feed, they will be able to raise more, or perhaps a little less, than 100 chickens each. It would seem advisable for 50 chickens to be raised on the threshing-floor of every cooperative farm in the mountainous areas where maize is the main crop, 150 chickens in the intermediate zone where both rice and maize are cultivated, and 200 chickens in the area of the plains, such as Sukchon and Mundok Counties, where rice is the main crop.

Chickens kept on the threshing-floors of cooperative farms should also be moved from place to place frequently. If they are carried in cages from one field to another and released, they will grow strong by eating scattered grain, grass seeds and grasshoppers.

There are now 16,000 threshing-floors in the countryside. At an

estimate of 100 chickens for every threshing-floor, 290 million eggs can be produced by these places every year.

Rice mills and granaries at the cooperative farms, as well as county rice mills, should also raise many chickens.

Ideally, the rice mill at each cooperative farm should raise 200 chickens.

County rice mills should raise meat chickens. Meat chickens can reach slaughtering weight within 70 days; so you can raise them in five cycles every year. Every county rice mill should raise 2,000 chickens at a time and produce between 8,000 and 10,000 chickens every year. There are now 180 county rice mills. If each of them raises 8,000 or 10,000 chickens, a total of 2,500 tons of chicken will be produced.

If the rural people breed chickens in a mass campaign, they will all be able to eat eggs and chicken.

Eggs produced on the threshing-floors at cooperative farms should be supplied to the children in the nurseries and kindergartens at the farms. The third workteam of the Jangsuwon Cooperative Farm, Samsok District, Pyongyang, keeps 100 chickens on its threshing-floor and gives one egg to each child at the nursery and kindergarten every day. If they eat eggs regularly, the children will grow quickly and strong.

If county rice mills bring some 200 meat chickens to the peasants' market every time it is open, it will prevent the price of chickens rising.

If plenty of chickens are raised in the rural communities through a mass campaign, eggs will not have to leave the urban communities for the rural villages, and all the eggs produced by the state chicken plants will be supplied to industrial workers and town dwellers.

In order to increase the production of eggs and chicken in the rural communities, the work must be well organized and the masses roused to action. Naturally, socialism can only be built successfully when it is backed by accurate statistics and an efficient organization and when priority is given to political work to mobilize the power of the masses. Simply emphasizing verbally the need for a mass campaign to raise chickens will get you nowhere.

The Agricultural Commission must draw up detailed quotas for chicken and egg production for each province, in line with the decision adopted by this consultative meeting. The provinces must break down these quotas for every threshing-floor and rice mill at the cooperative farms and every county rice mill and every farm household, and supervise and control them so that they fulfil their quotas.

Better breeds of chicken must be raised in the rural communities.

You will be unable to increase the production of eggs and chicken rapidly with native breeds. Native breeds consume a great deal of feed, but their rate of laying is low. They do not lay in the summer because of the hot weather, and they lay neither in the moulting season nor in the brooding season, which follows a short period of laying. In fact, each chicken lays only a few dozen a year. By contrast, a *Mangyong* breed chicken lays between 250 and 280 eggs a year. Therefore, the rural communities should raise the *Mangyong* breed rather than native ones.

Introducing new breeds of chicken into the countryside represents a major change. Farmers cannot solve this problem properly on their own. It is only when chicken plants give active assistance to the rural communities, as was set out in the rural theses which require that industry should help agriculture and that the towns should support the countryside, that new breeds of chicken can be introduced quickly into the rural villages.

In order to help the rural villages raise the *Mangyong* breed, chicken plants should hatch some chickens and distribute them. Until now the rice mills at cooperative farms have been given eggs produced at county rice mills. They hatch the chickens and distribute them to the farmers. This is not the way to supply healthy chickens. Cooperative farms do not have feed with the necessary nutrients for the chicks and their management is inefficient. So they cannot raise healthy chickens which yield a lot of eggs. Therefore, chicken plants should hatch chickens and, when they reach 40 days, distribute them to the threshing-floors, rice mills and rural households.

So, chicken plants should increase the number of breeding hens.

With the breeding hens that are currently at the chicken plants, it may be difficult to satisfy the demands of the rural communities for chicks. Therefore, when hatching eggs for the rural villages, chicken plants should acquire approximately five per cent more breeding hens and extend their laying period by two months. This is the way to solve the problems we have with young chickens.

The General Bureau of Poultry and Stock Farming of the Agricultural Commission must give the chicken plants detailed assignments for the production of young chickens and guide them so that this task is implemented correctly. Thus, for approximately four months from March this year, *Mangyong* breed chickens should be distributed to all the rural villages. As the chicken plants will not be able to secure the required number of breeding hens all at once, the rural villages should also hatch some eggs which their own *Mangyong* breed hens have laid.

If the chicken plants make concerted efforts and perform this task properly, they will not have to continue with it in the future. It will be sufficient for the chicken plants run by provincial rural economy committees to hatch some eggs and supply a small number as a supplement. The state should supply the chicken plants with the feed they need to raise chickens for the rural communities.

These chicken plants should sell their poor layers to the rural communities. If these laying hens are raised in the fresh air of the countryside and exposed to sufficient ultraviolet rays, they might recover their ability to lay and produce eggs for a further two or three years.

Party and working people's organizations at all levels must pay close attention to breeding chickens and create a mass campaign by guiding the work well. The Union of Agricultural Working People and the Women's Union in particular must play a leading role in this work and encourage every farm household in the campaign to raise five chickens. In this way chicken and egg production will increase sharply. Of course, it may be impossible to produce large quantities of eggs this year because new breeds have to be introduced to replace the old ones.

Therefore, it would be a good idea for the countryside to set a target of producing 700 to 1,000 million eggs this year and make every effort to achieve it.

As well as this mass campaign, production at chicken plants must be kept at a constant level. Their equipment must be kept in a good state of repair, the feeding conditions improved, the chickens looked after better and their existing production capacity used to the full.

We should raise many quails.

Quails breed quickly and easily and lay many eggs. It is five to six months after it has been hatched that a hen begins to lay, but a quail begins to lay eggs 40 days after it has been hatched. Breeding quails also requires less feed.

Some countries do raise a lot of quails. Some foreign scientists and poultry farming specialists say that in the 21st century poultry farming will be centred on quails. Our country has been breeding quails for a few years. In fact, there are many good aspects to quail breeding. However, our officials take no interest in raising quails. Although we have quail farms, they are not managed properly, nor are they supplied with feed that is sufficiently nutritious. I have been told that in other countries a quail lays more than 300 eggs a year, but in our country the figure is only 270.

From now onwards, we must concentrate on breeding quails and increase quail and egg production.

There is no need to build separate plants for raising quails. It would be a good idea to set up a quail section at each chicken plant and raise quails there. The Hwangju and Pyongyang Rabbit Farms are currently rearing quails. They must propagate them quickly and distribute them to the provinces.

Each province should first build a good quail section and produce many eggs and then, as the number of quails increases, distribute their eggs to every chicken plant in the province so the quails can be raised, producing large quantities of meat and eggs.

The large-scale raising of ducks must be encouraged.

Ducks are very productive. A duck can be slaughtered 45 days after

it has hatched. We should raise ducks in large numbers and supply sufficient meat to the miners and other workers engaged in harmful work.

There is no need to build any new duck plants. Because of the shortage of feed, not even the existing ones are being run as they should. If we run the existing plants at full capacity, we can increase duck production to a considerable extent even though we do not build new ones.

The state must supply sufficient feed so that all these duck plants are run properly.

Most of the meat produced by these duck plants should be supplied to workers as an item to promote their health, but a part of it should be sent to shops and peasants' markets.

South Hamgyong Province should supply the duck meat produced by the Kwangpho Duck Plant to the working people in Hamhung and to the workers in the Hungnam district in particular.

In order to supply an adequate amount of duck meat to the workers, not only must the duck plants operate at full capacity, but a campaign should be launched to encourage mining families to raise ducks.

If these families are encouraged to raise ducks, meat production will increase even though the state does not have to supply the feed. It is no difficult matter for mining families to raise ducks. If the ducks are fed on leftovers from the family meal, on water used to wash the rice, on dried vegetable leaves and the like, they grow quickly without suffering from disease. Because there are quite a number of housewives who do not go to work in the mining villages, a lot of ducks can be raised.

It would be a good idea for every mining family to raise five or six ducks. Lumbermen's families should also be encouraged to raise ducks. The duck plants butcher the ducks when they are 45 days old, but workers' families will have to wait a little longer because the feeding conditions are not so good. Bearing this in mind, workers' families should ensure that the raising of the ducks is staggered, so that they have duck to eat a few times every month. If they always keep five

or six ducks, killing the grown ones for food and raising the young birds to take their place, they will eat duck a few times every month.

If you organize the work properly and galvanize the masses into action, great results will be achieved in this respect.

Trade Union and Women's Union organizations must press ahead with organizational and information work to ensure that the working families raise ducks. Party organizations must also attach great importance to this work.

Duck plants should hatch chicks and give them to the working families. There are duck plants in North and South Hamgyong Provinces, North and South Phyongan Provinces and several others where many coal and other mines are situated. Therefore, if the work is organized properly, these duck plants will soon be able to send young birds to all working families. Because ducks grow quickly, the duck plants will have to feed them for only about ten days before sending them to the working families.

We must make the valuable experience gained in raising ducks widely available. We have built many duck plants in different parts of the country and the experience we have gained in running them is rich. We can say we are leading other countries in raising ducks. If we review our experience, it will prove invaluable. We should encourage our scientists to write articles on the experience gained in raising ducks, and these should be published as pamphlets.

The campaign to raise rabbits must be accelerated.

Because the rabbit is a domestic animal which feeds on grass, it can be bred easily anywhere. The rabbit breeds and grows up very quickly. Moreover, its meat is as delicious as chicken and good for the health. It is now a trend worldwide to produce a lot of rabbit meat.

As early as the days immediately following the armistice, we introduced a policy for the large-scale raising of rabbits. However, this has not yet been done satisfactorily.

A mass campaign should be launched to raise rabbits.

It would be a good idea for schools and army units and other collective units to keep lots of rabbits. In particular, many pupils at

primary and senior middle schools must take part in this campaign. It would be a good idea to encourage each pupil to raise two rabbits every year.

If each pupil at a school where rabbits can be kept raises two a year, 12,000 tons of rabbit meat and seven million rabbit skins will be produced. This is by no means a small amount.

The League of Socialist Working Youth should take charge of this rabbit raising. It is quite a difficult task, but worthwhile. Party organizations and agricultural guidance bodies at all levels should help the pupils in this.

If we are to encourage our schools to raise a lot of rabbits, we must provide them with rabbits from which to breed. Every province and county will have to build small breeding farms, raise the rabbits there and distribute them to the schools.

In addition, the processing of the rabbits must be carefully organized.

It will be a waste of time for the pupils to raise many rabbits if the processing is not done properly. Every county should build facilities for butchering rabbits, tanning their hides and refrigerating their meat.

It would be best for the state to purchase 50 per cent of the meat produced at the schools and leave the remainder for the schools to dispose of themselves. Some of the skins should be used for the production of consumer goods and some should be exported to earn foreign currency.

As for the production of pork, your draft proposal should be implemented.

We must supply the pig plants with sufficient feed so that they operate at full capacity and not build any new ones.

It is not profitable to breed a lot of pigs together because a lot of feed is wasted and it is difficult to look after pigs.

An important task in rearing pigs at the moment is to ensure that every farming household rears them. This is the way to increase the production of pork quickly without expending a large amount of grain feed.

We must launch a campaign for every farming household to produce 100 kg of pork every year. There are one million farming households in our rural communities. If each one produces 100 kg of pork every year, a total of 100,000 tons will be produced.

If the farming households are to rear pigs, we shall have to supply them with a definite amount of grain feed. In the past, the state supplied peasants with 100 kg of grain feed on the condition that they would produce and sell 100 kg of pork to the state. However, this cannot be done at the moment because we must store up large quantities of grain to provide for any damaging effect of the cold front. Every farming household will have to be supplied with only 50 kg of grain feed and encouraged to produce and sell 100 kg of pork to the state.

Pigs reared by farmers should be purchased promptly. Apparently, the purchasing agencies are finding fault where none exists and are reluctant to buy the pigs when the producers want to sell them. This is a mistake. They must buy the pigs without argument if the farmers want to sell them.

Good breeds of pig should be raised in the rural villages. The number of pigs from bad breeds may increase, but they are not very productive. We should provide the farmers with good breeds which can produce plenty of pork without requiring a large amount of feed.

To proceed, we must solve the protein feed problem.

Many chicken, duck and pig plants have been built in our country, but eggs and meat are not being produced on a steady basis and a large amount of feed is being wasted because of the shortage of protein feed. At present we are wasting feed partly because domestic animals are not being tended scientifically and technically, but mainly because we are not giving the animals all the nutrients they need due to the shortage of protein feed.

For domestic birds and animals to lay eggs regularly or gain weight quickly, they must be fed on protein feed. Eggs and meat consist mainly of protein. If these birds and animals are fed on only carbohydrates without protein feed, they will not yield plenty of eggs and meat.

We must explore every possibility of solving the problem of protein feed.

This is the most important task facing us at present in poultry and livestock farming. This is the key area where a solution must be found at this consultative meeting.

The area of cultivated land in our country is limited, so the wide-scale cultivation of soya beans is impossible; consequently, we must take positive steps to solve the protein feed problem. If we do not, we shall have no eggs and meat to eat. In order to supply our people with eggs and meat as well as rice, we must discover various sources of protein feed.

If the officials in charge of poultry and livestock farming buckle down to the task, adopting the attitude and standpoint of masters, they will be perfectly able to solve this problem.

To this end, plenty of fish meal must be produced. The Ministry of Fisheries has been given the task of producing 23,000 tons of fish meal this year. This task must be carried out without fail. It must produce an additional amount for animals by using such offal from the fish-processing factories and fishing stations as jowls and guts.

Another step towards a solution to the problem of protein feed is to use silkworm chrysalises as chicken feed.

Our country produces a lot of cocoons every year and if we use all the chrysalises as chicken feed, the problem of protein feed will be solved to a considerable extent. Silkworm chrysalises make good animal-protein feed. If hens eat them, they lay many eggs. Obtaining silkworm chrysalises means, in effect, obtaining eggs.

At the moment, silkworm chrysalises are being fed to pigs without being processed. This is wasteful. In future, they must be sent to feed plants and processed into assorted chicken feed.

This year we must work hard to reach the target of producing 10,000 tons of wet silkworm chrysalises.

A widespread campaign for raising silkworms must be launched in order to produce large quantities of their chrysalises. This campaign did operate for some time in the past, but now it is being neglected on

the pretext that it is of no help in earning foreign currency. This is a mistake.

Efficient sericulture to obtain a large amount of cocoons is necessary both to produce chrysalises and to improve the standard of dress of the people. There are 50,000 hectares of mulberry fields in our country. If we can obtain 300 kg of cocoons per hectare, the total will be 15,000 tons. Workteams to raise silkworms must be organized on the cooperative farms, the mulberry trees fertilized and the mulberry fields tended properly so that many silkworms will be raised. Not only mulberry silkworms, but also oak silkworms must be raised extensively.

If the cooperative farms are unable to raise silkworms due to the manpower shortage, they should turn over the mulberry fields to the housewives and pensioners who live in the county towns and workers' districts for them to raise the silkworms. If the manpower situation is very serious, we can mobilize some female workers from local industry factories for sericulture work for about a month, when the production at these factories is not regular. Because the method of raising silkworms is very simple these days, anyone can do it.

A department in charge of silkworm raising must be established within the Agricultural Commission. The work must be organized in detail so that the production of 15,000 tons of cocoons is ensured this year.

Another way of solving the protein feed problem is to plant *aegukphul* on a wide scale.

It is a good grass for feed which contains a great deal of protein—2.2 per cent. If a dairy cow is fed on it she yields a lot of milk; a duck or a pig fed on it will put on weight quickly and if a hen is fed on it, she lays eggs regularly.

I have been told that an old woman in the third workteam of the Jangsuwon Cooperative Farm, Samsok District, Pyongyang, grew *aegukphul* around her house. She used to crush it and mix it with other feed and give it to the hens, with the result that they laid many eggs. The Tudan Duck Plant, Pyongyang, is also cultivating *aegukphul* and

feeding it to the ducks. If chicken and duck plants are provided with simple equipment to curdle the *aegukphul*, press it, dehydrate it and mix it with maize powder, roughage and other fodders, the animal feed obtained will be good.

The wide-scale planting of *aegukphul* is one important step towards solving the problem of protein feed. Azolla and the like may be good protein feed, but there is no land suitable for its cultivation in our country. So the feed problem cannot be solved by cultivating azolla. In our country it is also difficult to create fodder fields in the mountainous areas. If the mountains are to be planted with grass for feed, we shall have to deforest them, which may cause landslides in the rainy season and then the rivers may silt up and the farming be badly affected. If we can grow two crops a year without any risk we can devote the first crop to animal feed. However, if we raise two crops in the weather conditions that exist in our country, in the hope that we will eat meat and if things go wrong, we may not have even rice to eat. In the conditions here, the best way to obtain vegetable-protein feed is through the wide-scale cultivation of *aegukphul*.

About 10,000 hectares of this grass must be cultivated. If we assume that one hectare produces 100 tons of grass, we will obtain 22,000 tons of protein in all. This is a major benefit. By cultivating 10,000 hectares of soya beans it is difficult to produce so much protein. Ten thousand hectares of our pasture land should be devoted to the cultivation of *aegukphul* rather than maize.

Aegukphul should be planted as near to the sties and pens as possible. If the manure from them is used to fertilize the *aegukphul*, a marked improvement will be obtained in the fodder yield. It would be a good idea to grow *aegukphul* in fields near the sties and pens and the other crops in fields that are further away. If it is planted widely this year, large quantities will be harvested from next year onwards.

Clover must be planted extensively.

Clover is good fodder that contains a great deal of protein and is liked by rabbits and other domestic animals. Rabbits and cattle like to eat it when it is green and dry in winter. Once it has been planted, it can

be reaped over several years. At the moment, however, it is not being planted widely.

Is the reason for this that there is no land suitable for its cultivation in our country? That is not really the case. There is plenty. There is a considerable area of railway embankments and many river and canal dykes in our country. If clover is planted there it will be a great help both in solving the problem of protein feed and in protecting these embankments.

The League of Socialist Working Youth should take charge of this work. When planting clover on a railway embankment, one or two rows of leadplant should also be planted at the higher and lower edges of the clover belt. By doing this, the layout will be attractive and the clover belt will be protected from dust to a certain degree.

Producing plenty of urea for feed is another important way of solving the protein feed problem.

If maize stalks, rice straw and other dried grass are mixed with some urea and maize powder and put through a press, a good protein feed substitute will be obtained. Large quantities of this should be produced for pigs, ducks and cows, and real protein feed such as bean cakes and fish meal should be fed entirely to chickens. By doing this we shall go some way towards solving the problem of chicken feed.

Another way of solving the protein feed problem is to use all the byproducts from meat-processing factories and the dead animals from poultry and livestock plants for the production of chicken feed. If we produce animal feed from such by-products from meat-processing factories as the guts, feet, heads and bones, we shall obtain a lot of good-quality animal-protein feed.

The officials of the poultry and livestock farming sector should organize the production of feed properly, using the various by-products and dead animals which are abandoned by meat-processing factories and poultry and livestock plants.

These officials must also adopt measures to use as feed the water employed by cornstarch factories to wash maize. If the dregs are allowed to settle and then fermented and concentrated, good feed will

be produced with a high protein content. These factories process hundreds of thousands of tons of maize every year, so if all the water is used to make feed, we shall go a considerable way towards meeting our needs for protein feed.

I have been told that last year 4,000 tons of feed were produced from the water used to wash fish. This practice must also be introduced widely. Measures should be introduced to collect all this water from the fishing stations and fish-processing factories so as to produce feed.

If the water used to wash maize and fish is to be concentrated fully after the dregs have settled in order to produce animal feed, a great deal of heat will be used. So it must be processed into a thick liquid and then mixed with other ingredients rather than being concentrated fully.

The rural communities should breed a lot of earthworms and maggots and feed them to the chickens. Workteams at cooperative farms and farming households should obtain chicken feed in this way.

You must adopt prompt and concrete measures to produce protein feed substitutes so that the protein feed problem can be solved, and the necessary machinery and equipment must be made. If this is done, the provinces and state-run poultry and livestock plants will produce urea feed, *aegukphul* and various other kinds of protein feed, sufficient to meet their own needs.

As the poultry and livestock plants are going to mass-produce different kinds of protein feed, the feed factories should supply these plants with the basic elements of assorted feed which they cannot produce themselves. If these factories produce the basic elements of feed for them by mixing bean cakes, fish meal, silkworm chrysalises, antibiotics, micronutrients, vitamins and so on, then the poultry and livestock plants should produce feed that is fully nutritious by adding the maize and different kinds of protein feed they have produced themselves. In this way, you will ensure the production of assorted feeds without increasing the capacity of the feed factories.

When they supply the essential ingredients of feed to the poultry and livestock plants, the feed factories must provide full details of the content of the feed and the amounts of protein and carbohydrate, for

instance, contained in it as well as details of what must be added, such as maize, *aegukphul* or urea feed and in what ratio for the laying hens and similar information for duck or pig feed. Only then can the poultry and livestock plants produce fully nutritious feed. The plants should add whatever is necessary to the basic feed supplied to them and process it into pellets similar to riced corn flour before feeding it to the domestic animals.

Not only producing a variety of protein feed in large quantities, but also using it economically will help solve the feed problem.

In our country at present, the standard amount of feed consumed is very high. In those countries where poultry farming is developed, only 120 grams of feed are consumed per egg, but our country uses more than that. If the chicken plants reduce the feed consumption standard per egg by 60 grams, we will make a total saving of 60,000 tons of feed every year.

In order to use chicken feed more economically, it is necessary to obtain better breeds of chicken so that light-weight laying hens are raised.

Light-weight laying hens need less nutrients to maintain them than heavy-weight laying hens, so they eat less. According to information, for every 100 grams less a laying hen weighs, one kg of feed is saved a year. If the state chicken plants in our country are to produce 1,000 million eggs a year, they need five million laying hens. If we suppose that a saving of one kg of feed is made for every hen, then a total of 5,000 tons will be saved. This is by no means a small amount. I have been told that in one country the average weight of its laying hens has been reduced by 500 grams. Our country must also breed light-weight laying hens to make economies in the use of feed.

We can also save a great deal of feed by using scientific techniques to breed hens according to their physiological characteristics.

The chicken plants are giving their chickens as much to eat as they want. They must not do so. If the chickens eat too much, they will grow fat because they are taking in more than their physiological needs. So they do not lay eggs regularly. Laying hens must, therefore, be fed according to their physiological needs and not to excess. Consumption

can be restricted by omitting a day's rations once a week or by reducing the size of daily rations.

We should also adopt the practice of changing the quality of feed to make economies. When the hens are laying the maximum number of eggs and their weight has increased to a certain point, they will lay eggs regularly even if the energy content of their feed is reduced, because at this time they need less metabolic energy than when they first begin laying. Therefore, reducing the energy content of their feed is one method of making savings. The energy content should not be reduced by providing less feed, but by increasing the amount of maize stalks, rice straw and rice hulls contained in the feed so as to maintain the quantity. In the same way, a man who wants to lose weight eats only vegetable soup, not meat soup.

I have been told that in some countries where poultry farming is developed, economies are made in the use of chicken feed by increasing the effectiveness of the feed by including various kinds of chemical additives. I have also been told that our scientists have produced synthetic lysine to increase the effectiveness of the chicken feed. We must take steps to put it into production as soon as possible. What we cannot produce ourselves, we should import and make experiments stage by stage.

We can also economize our use of feed by reducing the amount of water given to the chickens. One country has done this and saved 360 grams of feed per kilogram of eggs produced, so I have been told.

There are many other ways that feed can be saved, such as improving the effectiveness of the feed by extending the laying period. These methods must be widely introduced, so as to save as much feed as possible.

The General Bureau of Poultry and Stock Farming should select one experimental plant in every province and study the matter of saving feed so that various methods of using less chicken feed can be adopted. From now until April experiments should be conducted at these plants, the standards established and then demonstration lectures organized to make them well known throughout the country. This is

one of the important tasks facing the General Bureau of Poultry and Stock Farming in the immediate future.

You must compile the various scientific and technical data that have been referred to at this consultative meeting—the method of restricting feed, the method of changing the quality of the feed, the method of reducing the amount of water given to the chickens and the method of reducing the weight of the laying hens and so on—and publish this information as reference books to be circulated to the officials concerned.

Furthermore, a proper system of management for poultry and livestock farming must be established.

There are many chicken and duck plants and livestock farms in this sector. But they are not producing eggs and meat properly. One of the main reasons for this is the lack of an effective system for directing and managing this sector and the failure of the senior officials to direct and manage poultry and livestock farming.

The officials of the General Bureau of Poultry and Stock Farming, and of the General Bureau for the Guidance of Cooperative Farms, under the Agricultural Commission, are not doing their work in a manner befitting masters, and simply shift their responsibilities onto others.

The officials of the GBGCF show no interest in poultry and livestock farming on the cooperative farms simply because the department in charge of this work has been transferred to the GBPSF. For the cooperative farms, raising chickens and pigs is important work which has been done by farmers for centuries. The argument that the GBGCF is responsible for grain production and has no interest in raising chickens and pigs holds no water. Of course, it was a mistake to transfer the department in charge of animal husbandry on cooperative farms to the GBPSF, but the attitude that the officials of the GBGCF have adopted, that of turning a blind eye to poultry and livestock farming, is not one worthy of masters.

The officials of the GBPSF, too, are not behaving as masters in their work. They have suggested that state-run chicken plants and feed factories should be turned over to provincial administrative committees.

That is wrong. The provinces do not have the resources to manage these plants and factories. The equipment at all the chicken plants is modern, and the provinces are not capable of looking after their repair and maintenance. The feed factories, too, cannot be run properly by these committees. A factory that provides feed for poultry farming can be likened to a kitchen. So, unless it is managed assiduously and kept hygienic, the chickens may die. The assorted feed factories need to be supplied with not only dibasic calcium phosphate, fish meal and micronutrients, but also vitamins and antibiotics. The provinces cannot obtain such materials themselves, and it is also difficult for them to maintain hygiene at the factories. By suggesting that the chicken plants and feed factories should be placed under provincial control, without making a detailed study, the officials of the GBPSF were trying to shirk their responsibility.

If we are to produce meat and eggs properly, we must first put the system of management in the poultry and livestock farming sector onto a proper footing.

First of all, the system of management for the state-run factories and enterprises in this sector should be reorganized. The GBPSF, under the Agricultural Commission, must ensure a unified system of management for all the state-run chicken, duck and pig plants and factories and enterprises in this sector.

In our country, there are many state-run plants and other enterprises in the poultry and livestock farming sector. It is difficult for the GBPSF to manage so many plants and enterprises directly. Therefore, it must keep only large-scale chicken and pig plants, breeding livestock farms and pedigree farms that are of importance to the nation under its direct control. The GBPSF must do the same for all the feed factories throughout the country and ensure a steady supply of assorted feed to all the chicken plants.

A bureau must be set up in each province to manage the state-run chicken plants and livestock farms that are not under the direct management of the GBPSF.

These management bureaux that are to be set up in the provinces

should be directly under the control of the GBPSF of the Agricultural Commission. Until now the bureaux of poultry and livestock farming have worked under the provincial administrative committees, with the duty of managing the state-run chicken plants and livestock farms in the provinces. However, the chairmen of the provincial administrative committees have failed to direct and manage them. By showing no interest in the development of poultry and livestock farming, these bureaux, under the provincial administrative committees, have not performed their duties. So, the new management bureaux of poultry and livestock farming should be placed under the direct control of the GBPSF of the Agricultural Commission.

The organizational structure of these bureaux should suit the situation in each province. Those provinces where many state-run chicken plants and livestock farms are situated should set up management bureaux, and those with only a small number should appoint management sections.

An improvement to the managerial structure is important, but what is more important is that competent cadres should be appointed. Cadres decide everything. A person who is lazy and avoids working is useless, whatever organization may have been set up.

The staff of the provincial management bureaux of poultry and livestock farming should consist of sound people. It is particularly important to take care in selecting and appointing the chiefs of bureaux.

The chiefs of the provincial management bureaux of poultry and livestock farming must have a thorough grounding in poultry and stock farming, be enthusiastic and extremely responsible. They should be excellent workers with a high degree of Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit and they must adopt the attitude of masters in their work.

The provincial Party committee must guide the provincial management bureau of poultry and livestock farming well. In addition, there must be one or two officials in the economic commission of the provincial people's committee to direct the management bureau of poultry and livestock farming.

The system of guidance of animal husbandry at cooperative farms must be put right.

The General Bureau of Poultry and Stock Farming must return the department in charge of animal husbandry on cooperative farms to the GBGCF. The GBGCF must also reacquire the department responsible for fruit farming from the General Bureau of Fruit Farming.

A veterinary and animal husbandry section should be set up within each provincial rural economy committee. In addition, one livestock breeding farm and one poultry breeding farm should be placed under the control of each provincial rural economy committee, in order to raise breeding animals and chicks for distribution to the threshing-floors and rice mills on cooperative farms and to farm households.

The GBGCF of the Agricultural Commission should offer centralized leadership to local poultry and pig raising and livestock farming at the county rice mills, threshing-floors and rice mills on cooperative farms and at farmhouses through the provincial rural economy committees and the county cooperative farm management committees.

A councillor for poultry and livestock farming must sit on the Economy Commission of the Central People's Committee and he must ensure that efficient guidance and supervision is offered so that the tasks I have given the poultry and livestock farming sector are implemented properly.

Next, repair centres must be set up so that the plants and factories in the poultry and livestock farming sector are kept in a good state of repair.

There are many chicken, duck and pig plants in our country, but there is no repair centre to serve them. As a result, even when electric motors break down or pipes burst at chicken plants, they cannot be repaired promptly.

Centres which specialize in repairing the equipment at chicken, duck and pig plants must be set up under the GBPSF. These works should be located in those provinces where there are many poultry and livestock plants.

The Administration Council must ensure that the supply of

machinery and equipment for these repair works is good.

Now I would like to touch on improving scientific research in poultry and livestock farming.

At present, the scientists in this sector are not working hard to develop poultry and livestock farming in our country. Many problems are facing us, such as those of feed and breeding livestock and these problems must be solved, yet the scientists are not going deep into these matters; they are not racking their brains to discover ways of improving breeding livestock and of solving the protein feed problem. We have a livestock research institute and a poultry research institute, but they never make any worthwhile suggestion concerning the development of poultry and livestock farming. This demonstrates a lack of enthusiasm for the research work on the part of the scientists in this sector.

They are even neglecting research work into how experience from abroad can be adopted here. I have taken every opportunity to inform the senior officials and scientists in the poultry and livestock farming sector of foreign experience and scientific and technical data from abroad, and I have strongly encouraged them to study and introduce this information into production. But they have not done any of this.

The lack of enthusiasm for the research work on the part of the scientists in this sector is mainly attributable to the fact that the senior officials and Party organizations in this sector show no interest in their research work and neglect work with the scientists.

The senior officials of the Academy of Agricultural Sciences and the Agricultural Commission have not given the scientists in this sector well-defined research projects and have not provided them with sufficient opportunity to study. They have also failed to keep them informed of advanced techniques and scientific and technical material from abroad. They have not provided them with good working conditions and have shown no concern for their living conditions. Unless scientists are given well-defined research projects and are helped in their work in every way possible, they will achieve nothing in their research work. This being so, they can take no pride in their work.

Senior officials and Party organizations must radically improve

their work with the scientists in this sector so that they bring about a change in scientific research for the development of poultry and livestock farming, by working with a high degree of revolutionary determination to contribute greatly to the good of the Party and the revolution, the country and the people.

Scientific research must be directed mainly at solving the feed problem. In view of the fact that sources of grain and protein feed are limited in our country, the scientists must develop effective ways of increasing the production of meat and eggs by exploring every possibility for obtaining feed substitutes and lowering the feed consumption standard.

The proper method of rearing poultry and livestock must be studied extensively. According to information from abroad, there are many interesting techniques in poultry and livestock farming, such as increasing egg production by either forced moulting or restricting the amount of feed and water for the chickens, or developing small-sized breeds of chickens and reducing the amount they are fed, or delaying sexual maturity and extending the laying period. By referring to this information, our scientists must work hard to solve the various scientific and technical problems that arise in breeding chickens.

The scientists in this sector must also be concerned in the mass campaign to raise chickens in the rural communities.

For a long time we have been conducting experiments into breeding chickens in the rural communities, but we cannot set well-defined standards for raising chickens because the farmers have not kept regular breeding diaries. Therefore, we advise the scientists to conduct their experiments on chicken raising at rice mills and on threshing-floors in the rural communities. The conditions for these experiments should be normal, with no sophisticated equipment, just a simple coop, allowing the chickens to peck the rice bran, dead grain, grass seed and so on which are scattered about the rice mills and threshing-floors, instead of giving them assorted feed.

The experiment on raising chickens at farmhouses must be conducted by scientists themselves raising five chickens each at their

own homes. They should try to feed the chickens on chopped *aegukphul* and cabbage as well as on earthworms and maggots they have bred themselves. The experiment to raise live chickens at every farm household may also be conducted by selected workteams at cooperative farms. Each farmhouse should keep a diary on raising the chickens. If they draw up daily records and analyse them regularly, they will be able to work out certain standard methods of raising chickens at farm households.

Research should also be conducted on ducks, quails, geese and turkeys as well as on pigs, rabbits and dairy cows.

New research centres must be set up near Pyongyang and these will make it easier to study chicken, duck, quail and livestock rearing effectively.

There are chicken and duck plants in the vicinity of Pyongyang, but these are too large and some of them are too distant, so they are not suitable research centres for me to guide directly. Therefore, a few moderate-size experimental farms which I can reach easily must be built. The experimental chicken farms should be located near rice mills and threshing-floors so that industrial and conventional methods of raising chickens can be studied simultaneously.

Well-qualified scientists should be selected and sent to the experimental farms, and they should be given well-defined research projects. Comfortable houses should be built for them near the experimental farms, and everything they need for working and living should be provided.

In recent years I have directed the agricultural sector by selecting one unit as my research centre, testing new farming methods there and encouraging their adoption throughout the country. These new methods have brought about a change in agricultural production. With poultry and livestock farming, too, I intend to employ the method of raising chickens, ducks, quails and livestock on experimental farms at first and then improve animal husbandry by encouraging the whole country to use the results. Therefore, research centres must be built for this purpose.

Also, all the scientific research institutes of the poultry and

livestock farming sector should be provided with the facilities they need to ensure that their work is successful.

In conclusion, I would like to speak briefly on how the problem of cooking oil can be solved.

The solution of this problem is of great importance in improving the people's diet. Because Koreans eat a great deal of vegetables, cooking oil is indispensable. Since the days immediately following liberation we have made great efforts to solve the problem of cooking oil, but we have not yet found a satisfactory solution. In our country the area of arable land is limited, so the best way to solve the cooking oil problem is by the large-scale development of forests of oil-producing trees. But this takes a long time, so will not provide a quick answer.

In order to solve the cooking oil problem within a short period, oil must be produced from maize embryos.

An embryo constitutes eight to 13 per cent of the maize kernel and its oil content is 46 to 55 per cent. Two million tons of maize a year are processed in our country. If all the embryos contained in this amount are processed, 60,000 tons of cooking oil will be produced.

If we are to extract oil from maize embryos, the cornstarch factories must be run properly. The present capacity of our cornstarch factories to process maize is 450,000 tons, which can produce 13,500 tons of oil.

Maize embryo separators should be provided to those factories that process maize to collect the maximum amount of maize embryos. At the riced corn flour mills, maize meal factories and assorted feed plants, all the maize embryos must be collected.

Another measure towards solving the oil problem is to plant soya beans on the ridges between paddy fields.

Being a hygroscopic plant, a soya bean thrives on the ridges between paddy fields. These ridges provide an important means of producing soya beans. In our country the total area of ridges is tens of thousands of hectares, and a lot of soya beans can be grown there.

We must ensure that the prescribed number of plants per *phyong* is grown on the ridges between paddy fields for soya bean cultivation to be a success, and they should be weeded in season.

In addition, soya beans must be cultivated properly as a staple crop in order to increase the per-hectare yield. If the crop is tended properly, at least five tons per hectare will be produced. Last year one farm produced five tons by taking great care over tending the crop.

Soya beans should also be cultivated as a later crop on an experimental basis. There is no difference between the cultivation of staple and later crop. It would be a good idea to cultivate a later crop in South Hwanghae Province once the wheat or barley has been harvested.

We must produce 150,000 tons of soya beans this year.

Perilla and hemp should be grown widely.

Perilla and hemp thrive even at the edges of non-paddy fields and on the ridges between them. When I was visiting South Hamgyong Province last autumn, I found that some cooperative farms were cultivating perilla widely, which enabled them to meet their own needs for cooking oil. A widespread campaign must be launched to plant perilla and hemp at these edges and ridges and also on the waste ground surrounding office buildings, factories and enterprises.

Flax should also be grown properly.

According to information some countries are obtaining a large amount of cooking oil by cultivating oil-producing flax. This variety bears a seed that contains 43.5 per cent of oil. Our country should also grow oil-producing flax on an experimental basis. The Academy of Agricultural Sciences should see to it that this variety is cultivated in the Haeju and Ongjin districts as a later crop after the wheat and barley have been harvested.

We should conduct research on the flax which is now being cultivated in our country, and produce more fibre and seeds.

I believe that all the senior officials and scientists in the poultry and livestock farming sector will work hard to implement the Party's policy of developing animal husbandry rapidly so as to improve the standard of living of the people.

**TALK TO THE CHAIRMAN
OF THE DIETMEN'S LEAGUE
FOR THE PROMOTION
OF JAPAN-KOREA FRIENDSHIP**

January 27, 1977

Are you well, despite the cold weather these days? What is the weather like in Tokyo? The cold weather there is due to the influence of a cold front. The situation is the same in every part of the world because of the cold front. The temperature in our country is three or four degrees lower than last year, so obviously we are feeling the cold.

I should have met you soon after your arrival here, but our meeting is a little delayed because I have been on a trip to the provinces, from which I returned this morning.

I warmly welcome you, Mr. Kuno Juji, on your second visit to our country.

Since your visit to our country in 1972, you have made efforts to build friendship between the peoples of Korea and Japan. As a result, the relations between our two countries have shown a considerable improvement. We consider the extent of this improvement as a good thing. This visit will make a major contribution to the further development of friendly relations. I thank you for this contribution.

You have asked me about this matter of the relations between our two countries, which are not improving very rapidly because of various international factors. But I think the fact that exchange visits are being made means that things are better than before. We have no

further opinion to offer on this matter.

We consider that any further improvement in the relations between Korea and Japan will be difficult before our country has been reunified peacefully. We believe that the present Japanese government is unlikely to try and improve these relations before Korea has been reunified.

National reunification is a problem, the solution of which depends on the efforts of the Korean people themselves, and it is most regrettable that they have been unable to find a solution independently. When the south Korean people become more aware of the situation and when our friends in other countries are able to render substantial help, I believe that Korea will certainly be reunified.

I shall not speak at length in reply to your question concerning the peaceful reunification of Korea, because the Comrade Secretary of the Party Central Committee has spoken to you about it.

Recently we made another proposal for reunifying the country. How this will be realized depends on the attitude the south Korean side adopts.

Although the dialogue between the north and the south has now broken down, if the present south Korean authorities end their opposition to communism, their efforts to create two Koreas, their pursuance of a war policy, their continued retention of foreign troops and their oppression of the south Korean democrats, we shall not dwell on their past and we shall consider the resumption of dialogue with them to be possible.

In 1972, when the July 4 North-South Joint Statement was issued, we proposed the three principles for national reunification.

The first principle is that reunification should be achieved independently by the Korean people themselves, without relying on outside forces or suffering their interference. The problem of Korea's reunification must be solved by Koreans. No foreigner can solve it. So we said that the country must be reunified independently.

Secondly, the country must be reunified in a peaceful way, not through war. If a war were to break out between the north and south, it

is not the people of the United States or any other country that would die, but Korean would be killing Korean. So, we proposed that the problem of national reunification should be solved peacefully.

Thirdly, great national unity must be achieved by transcending differences in ideology, ideas and social system. We said to the south Korean authorities that we would not reject the social system in south Korea and impose the socialist system on the south, that they, too, should not reject our system, and that we should thus reunify the country by bringing about the unity of the whole nation, irrespective of differences in ideology, ideas and social system.

I myself explained these principles to the south Korean delegate when he arrived in Pyongyang. After hearing me out, he told me that what I had said was very good and he expressed his agreement.

Afterwards, a delegate from our side visited Seoul. The comrade who is now the Premier met Park Chung Hee, and he, too, expressed his support for our three principles for national reunification. As a result, the North-South Joint Statement was issued.

From the day following the publication of the North-South Joint Statement, however, the south Korean authorities disowned it and violated every aspect of it. They claimed that they would not stand by the statement because it was nothing but a scrap of paper. They went on to say that the “UN forces” did not represent an external force, and that they would not cancel the “Anti-Communist Law”. Stressing the fictitious “threat of southward invasion”, they talked loudly about the need to reinforce the “Anti-Communist Law” and have increased their anti-communist clamour since the publication of the North-South Joint Statement. To achieve reunification they must stand by the principle of great national unity. If, instead of this, they try to destroy all communists, how can reunification ever be achieved? In fact, they do not want reunification. They also insisted that “two Koreas” should be admitted to the UN. This would mean, in the final analysis, the perpetual division of our country into “two Koreas”.

In no way can we approve the permanent division of our country. Our nation must on all accounts be made one. For as long as the

country remains divided, the tension will neither be removed nor eased.

Therefore, any dialogue must presuppose reunification; it will be quite meaningless if it is based on the premise of division.

We consider it essential that the scale of the dialogue should be extensive, and not conducted by the authorities of the north and south alone; we believe that representatives of all the people of north and south Korea should get together and discuss the issue of national reunification.

No improvement can ever be made in the relations between Korea and Japan, too, so long as the Japanese authorities pursue the “two Koreas” policy.

Many peace lovers in Japan are helping our efforts to reunify the country, to end the division into “two Koreas”. We regard this as a very good thing. I hope that you will continue to give this support for the cause of Korean reunification in the future.

As for our relations with the United States, no problem can ever be solved if she stands by the principle of maintaining the division of our country in her Korea policy.

Regarding the relations between our country and the US, it is the Americans that are being stubborn, not us. The US has divided our country into “two Koreas” and is aiming at a permanent occupation of south Korea. Under such circumstances, there can be no hope of solving the problem.

We maintain that in order to solve the Korean question, multilateral discussions should be held on the premise that Korea will be reunified and that these talks must proceed from the principle of giving assistance to the Korean people so that they can form a harmonious union to achieve the reunification of their country. If it was division we favoured, rather than reunification, why would it be necessary for us to use diplomacy to approve it? There would be no need for this. If this were to be our aim, we would be committing a treacherous act which could never be wiped from the pages of history. Ours is a homogeneous nation with a long history and a wealth of culture. We

could never, therefore, approve the division of our country into “two Koreas”.

You have asked me about my opinions on Carter’s campaign pledge to withdraw US troops and nuclear weapons from south Korea, and I fully approve of this. President Carter’s statement that US troops and nuclear weapons would be withdrawn from south Korea may be a reflection of the opinions of many democrats and other people in the United States. We are following developments to see how his commitment will be put into effect.

We have already proposed to the US that the Korean Armistice Agreement should be replaced by a peace agreement and we have called for talks on a number of occasions. We shall continue to knock at this door, and we shall keep an eye on how the Carter administration responds to our proposal.

In the past Ford flatly rejected our fair proposals. Not only that, but he also tried to prove that the US troops’ occupation of south Korea was justified by provoking the “Panmunjom incident”. It is unprecedented in world history for the President of a major power to order that a white poplar should be cut down. This is something that only Ford could do. To be honest, he is a man who has no regard for the honour of being a President.

After your recent visit to Panmunjom, you said that the white poplar in question would not have hindered the surveillance of the US troops in any way. The tree had been there for over twenty years. So, why did it become a hindrance to surveillance only on the morning of August 18 last year?

The reason Ford caused such trouble was to try and remain in office as President. In my opinion, Ford made a miscalculation. The American people will not be taken in by that kind of trick.

Park Chung Hee used the “Panmunjom incident” as an excuse to put Kim Dae Jung and other democrats on trial. This is the action of a political impostor. Ford’s actions belong to the past.

Since the “Panmunjom incident”, there have frequently been voices raised in the United States calling for a change in her policy towards

Korea. I believe that Carter took both American public opinion and everything that had happened into account, before putting forward his policy of withdrawing US troops and nuclear weapons from south Korea. But powerful forces opposed to this policy are trying to hamper it in a variety of ways. Therefore, we must wait and see whether Carter's promises will become reality.

As you know, the enemy planned and provoked the "Panmunjom incident" and our soldiers were caught out by this provocation.

All our soldiers are very patriotic and have a strong sense of national dignity. They will defend every tree and every blade of grass in the homeland. So they did not permit the enemy to cut down our tree without permission.

Not only did the enemy provoke us by cutting down the tree, but they were the first to show aggression by throwing an axe at our soldier, which made his nose bleed. How could our soldiers put up with being attacked like this? So a fight broke out between the two sides, in which some of our soldiers were wounded and two US soldiers were killed. Of course, the fact that men died is a cause for regret. But we were not in the wrong. There is no reason for us to apologize to the Americans, nor is there any reason for us to pay compensation. However, Kissinger demanded that we should pay compensation, apologize to the US and punish the soldiers concerned. They were the ones who provoked us and yet they asked us to make an apology. Isn't it likely that in the course of a fight, people may be killed or wounded? That is why we neither apologized to the Americans, paid compensation nor punished our soldiers. We appreciated that our soldiers were acting out of strong patriotism.

The enemy had prepared the "Panmunjom incident" and set up cameras. As soon as the incident started, these cameras began filming everything. Even so, the enemy still told the rest of the world that the incident had been provoked by us.

If we had planned the incident, why did we not prepare cameras as the enemy did? This all serves to demonstrate that they are lying.

We have experienced similar behaviour on many occasions. Johnson

arranged the *Pueblo* incident and Nixon caused the *EC-121* spy plane incident immediately upon becoming President. Ford commanded his men to cut down a white poplar at Panmunjom. Successive US Presidents have conspired to cause provocation. Carter has recently made a pledge publicly to withdraw US troops and nuclear weapons from south Korea. We harbour no illusions, but the idea is good. We shall keep a constant watch on how his policy is implemented.

I shall not refer to any further matters because the officials concerned have already spoken of them all.

I hope that upon your return home you, as chairman of the Dietmen's League for the Promotion of Japan-Korea Friendship, will continue to work hard to establish friendship and solidarity between the peoples of our two countries.

I wish good health to you, Mr. Kuno Juji, and your family. Before you grow much older, please pay us another visit together with your family, in the hot season. Please go to Mt. Kumgang on that occasion.

Since I have been so busy recently, I am meeting you as you are on the point of leaving. But if you ever visit us again, I think that we shall have a better chance for conversation.

On your return home, I hope you will convey my greetings to Chairman Han Tok Su. And I ask you to convey my greetings to the Japanese people, particularly to Mr. Utsunomiya Tokuma and my other friends in Japan.

ON SOME TASKS FOR THE LEAGUE OF SOCIALIST WORKING YOUTH

**Speech Delivered to Officials of the Central Committee
of the League of Socialist Working Youth**

February 25, 1977

I am going to make a few comments today on the work of the League of Socialist Working Youth.

One important task facing the LSWY is to make a major effort to promote LSWY and Children's Union activities in schools so as to increase the knowledge of the pupils and students.

Ten years have passed since we introduced universal compulsory nine-year technical education in our country. Today our country has adequate material foundations and the conditions needed to offer the pupils and students an excellent education. Considering the length of time that compulsory education has been in force and the excellent education facilities, the youth of our country ought to have a sufficiently high degree of knowledge now. However, the intellectual standard of the young people who have finished senior middle school is not very high. On my visits to the rural communities I have talked to many young people and discovered that the level of general knowledge of quite a few of those who have left senior middle school is not what could be expected, nor do they write properly or express themselves clearly.

The intellectual standard of those leaving senior middle school is low, partly because the teachers are failing to teach the children properly, but mainly because the LSWY has not guided LSWY and

CU activities well at the schools.

One's school days are a very important period in one's life, and the years of membership of the LSWY at senior middle school are particularly important. The period of membership of an organization for the pupils is by no means short. Life in the Children's Union begins in their second year at primary school and they join the LSWY in the third year of senior middle school. During this period, the schoolchildren should be looked after well by the LSWY.

The most important aspect of LSWY and CU activities at school is to persuade the children to study hard. The basic duty of pupils is to learn. The LSWY should encourage their enthusiasm to learn and guide them to enjoy studying and reading from early childhood.

Above all, the young people and students must become more eager to learn. This is important.

The young people and students are not keen to learn and they have no great thirst for new scientific knowledge. Whilst giving guidance to cooperative farms in South Hwanghae Province last autumn, I talked to some young cooperative farmers who had recently finished senior middle school. Some of them did not even know what time of the year rice seedlings are transplanted to their sub-workteam's and workteam's fields and when fertilizer and weed killer are applied. They did not know much about the Juche farming method either. Is it right that the young people who are to play the leading role in implementing our Party's Juche farming method should be so ignorant of it? Since young people are sensitive to new things and very enterprising, they should try, even if only out of curiosity, to discover what the Juche farming method is, what intensive farming is and why maize should be planted densely. However, they are making no such efforts.

The Party and state offer universal compulsory 11-year education in order to equip the younger generation with sound general knowledge. In our country more than five million children and students are now being educated at state expense, which represents a third of our population. Ours is the only country in the world where as much as a third of the population is being educated at state expense.

Of course, universal 11-year schooling costs a lot of money and creates many difficulties. At present we are experiencing an acute manpower shortage. As we have not yet completed the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture, and because rice seedlings are being grown in cold beds and maize seedlings in humus-cakes to combat the influence of the cold front, a great deal of manpower is required by the rural areas. That is why every year manpower support is organized for the countryside on a nationwide scale, and schoolchildren and students are mobilized for the same purpose for a specific period which is included in the education plan.

Although it is a heavy financial burden on the state and despite the strain on manpower, we are steadily continuing with compulsory 11-year education in order to bring up the younger generation as socialist builders with a high level of scientific knowledge and skill. The Party and state take great pains to educate the younger generation, but the children do not show any great enthusiasm for studying. The explanation is that the LSWY is failing to instil a proper sense of discipline in them. The LSWY should make the pupils fully aware of the advantages of our socialist education system, and its officials should talk to the children seriously in order to convince them that since the Party and state take so much care and attention over their education, they should not neglect their studies and that they should all work hard at school with a high degree of dedication. That should encourage them to study more eagerly.

In order to improve the intellectual levels of the pupils, they should be made to do a great deal of writing.

The LSWY should encourage the children to write poems and travel notes, to describe their impressions and to keep diaries. Schoolchildren can produce written work in various forms. When they have been to Mt. Kungang or to a CU camp for example, they should be encouraged to describe what they saw and felt whilst climbing the mountain or during their stay at the camp; and if they have visited a factory, they should be encouraged to write about that. And suppose there is an important function at school, they can write about it and

describe its significance. They should describe their impressions of a book they have read. Our children should be encouraged to do a lot of writing and acquire the habit. A lot of writing helps to develop thinking power and writing ability and the more one writes, the more one desires to write.

When the Down-with-Imperialism Union was formed, its officials were mostly secondary schoolchildren with just a few college students. Yet they wrote poems, stories and drama and published their own newspapers and magazines. These days, however, even the officials of the LSWY think that only writers can produce works of literature and they fail to organize writing activities properly. As a result, senior middle schoolchildren do not have the confidence to write poems, stories, plays and the like.

Children should be encouraged to do a great deal of writing, and the best results should be published in the LSWY and CU newspapers and magazines.

If a child sees his work in a newspaper or magazine, he will take great pride in having it published and remember the piece concerned for the rest of his life.

On many occasions I have told the officials of the LSWY to start a movement for writing on a wide scale amongst the children and to carry their literary work and impressions in LSWY and CU newspapers. At present, however, hardly any of their efforts are being published, and few children are contributing work, so I am told. This is because the LSWY is not doing its work properly. The problem with youth work which I encountered in the past was that pupils contributed too much for the limited space available.

In future the LSWY should encourage children, young people and students to write and ensure that plenty of their work is published in such newspapers as *Working Youth*, *Children's Newspaper* and *Saenal* and in magazines. It is perfectly all right to publish their efforts in the press if the content is good even though the composition may not be so good. Only if their writing is published frequently will students gain the confidence to write and take an interest in writing poetry and travel

notes, describing their impressions and keeping diaries.

Children have not been given much encouragement or training to write. So now the young people who have finished senior middle school and gone to work, are poor at writing. During a tour of personal guidance to the rural communities in the past, I visited a house and read a letter to a mother from her son who was serving in the People's Army after leaving senior middle school. The writing in the letter was very poor. The same can be said of the intellectual standard of the young people working in farm villages after leaving senior middle school. Some of the workteam and sub-workteam leaders on the cooperative farms, young people who have received senior middle-school education, cannot even write the farm diary properly. The fact that these young people cannot even write a letter or a farm diary properly is due to their not being given a lot of composition training during their school days.

Senior middle-school leavers are not very good at narration, either. Quite a few youngsters cannot express their opinions logically nor can they read books and newspapers fluently. Recently several girls who were working after leaving senior middle school were called in, and each of them was told to read a newspaper article and had it tape-recorded. I listened to the tapes and found that not one of them would read fluently. This shows that the schools are not training their pupils in narration and are neglecting the work of improving their ability to express themselves.

The LSWY should arrange regular and varied group activities, poetry recitals, book reading and discussion, speakers' contests and the like among members of the CU and LSWY, to encourage the pupils to recite poetry, read novels and speak in public. It is only when such activities are held frequently that the interest of the children in reading will become greater, their art of public speaking improve and their ability to make effective use of what they have learned increase.

Such events as symposia on literary works and speakers' contests were arranged on a small scale at one time, but recently they have been neglected. The major defect in the work of the LSWY is that it lacks

perseverance and tends to abandon a task half finished. These activities should be organized better in the future. Symposia on writing by children and on literary works and speakers' contests can be arranged in the form of competitions between classes or schools.

Book reading and discussion, too, should be organized widely for the pupils. When we were studying in Jilin, we organized the Ryugil Association of Korean Students in order to enlighten politically the Korean pupils of different secondary schools in the city and bring them together, and assembled them every Sunday for reading and discussion. We used to give the pupils an assignment in advance to read a revolutionary novel and speak about it. We used to make them stand before an audience and present a synopsis of the book, say how they felt about it and offer an appraisal of it. These regular sessions helped to increase the youngsters' enthusiasm for reading and to develop their ability to speak in public. Through this process we were able to check if they had understood the central theme of the novel and also ascertain their ideological level. If the LSWY arranges such reading and discussion for the schoolchildren, not only will they become more keen to read and more articulate, but also they will be encouraged to get into the habit of studying.

The LSWY should bring about a great improvement in the intellectual standard of the young people and students by employing a variety of methods, such as literary activities. The LSWY organizations in the People's Army should also concentrate on this. I will go into the question of educating the young people in the People's Army in greater detail at a later date.

The LSWY should strongly encourage our young people and students to study foreign languages.

Our country's influence and prestige abroad are increasing daily and our relations with other countries are becoming closer, yet we experience difficulties in our activities abroad because we do not have enough people who speak foreign languages. Many third world countries now have institutes of higher education where the specialists they need to build a new society are trained and they ask us for

teachers. In particular, many nations ask us to send teachers of Juche philosophy. However, we have only a small number of teachers who speak foreign languages.

Quite a few scientists do not even know a foreign language. Therefore, they cannot adopt foreign innovations in science and technology opportunely, and they are lagging behind.

When I was giving guidance in North Hamgyong Province last spring, I had the strong feeling that some of our scientists were backward in science and technology. In that province 12 tobacco plants were being sown per *phyong*. I thought that in all probability this was an outdated method which contradicted intensive farming. It seemed to me that 20 plants per *phyong* would be better. So I asked the people at the Academy of Agricultural Sciences about the matter, and they answered that 12 plants were ideal, and that if tobacco was planted more densely the crop would not thrive because the air circulation would be poor.

Later, I studied an article about tobacco cultivation in a foreign magazine and found that in some other countries 37 tobacco plants were being grown per *phyong* as early as 1955 and 1960. My information came from books on technology, the books available in the central and other libraries in our country. Nevertheless, our scientists were ignorant of this fact because they were unable to read foreign books on science and technology.

Our country has a large number of books on technology available to the scientists. Although our economic situation was difficult in the days immediately after the truce, we imported one million valuable books on science and technology for the education of the younger generation and for the development of science and technology. These books are kept in libraries, but they are not widely read because not many people know a foreign language.

The standard of education in foreign languages can be improved by giving the pupils systematic instruction from their senior middle-school days. The study of foreign languages should be increased at school, so that all our young people and students have a good command of either

English, French, Russian, German, Spanish, Japanese or Chinese.

In future the officials of the LSWY, too, will all be required to speak a foreign language. The chairman of the Central Committee of the LSWY and the vice-chairmen, not to mention the vice-chairman in charge of international affairs, must speak a foreign language.

At the moment there are too few foreign language teachers in our country and foreign language reference books are in short supply, so the sectors concerned should produce many well-qualified teachers and publish large numbers of foreign language textbooks, dictionaries and basic conversation books.

To proceed, the LSWY should make a major effort to improve the scientific and technical skills of our young people and students.

In order to build socialism and communism, the technical revolution, as well as the ideological and cultural revolutions, should be conducted. Success in the technical revolution necessitates an improvement in the scientific and technical skills of our young people who are to play a leading role in this revolution.

In our country there are many universities as well as large numbers of technicians and specialists. We have already built up an army of intellectuals that numbers one million. However, the scientific and technological skills of these people are not very advanced. A large number of those who have graduated from the university of technology are not properly informed of the technology of modern agriculture, modern biology and chemistry and trends in the development of science and technology. The university students who are now active as members of the three-revolution teams are not well informed of modern science and technology, either.

Many automated factories have been built in our country, but many difficulties are being experienced in running them because the standard of scientific and technological attainment of those who have been educated at university, college and senior middle school is low.

Recently, when I was talking to the management of the newly constructed Youth General Chemical Works, the senior officials at the works asked for a few hundred university graduates to operate the

automatic control panels. I criticized them for asking for university graduates when senior middle-school leavers could do the job if they were taught the skills. Later I talked to the management of the Sunchon Cement Factory. These people also requested an additional number of university graduates. The factory management ask for university graduates to operate automatic control panels and the like because the scientific and technical levels of those who have received senior middle-school education are too low to operate the factories properly.

University graduates are not very well qualified, either. Last year university graduates were appointed to the newly-built large, modern rolling plant at the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex because the steel works requested more technicians to operate the new plant. But they are not playing their role properly at the moment.

If we are to run our modern factories without problems and develop science and technology rapidly, the standard of education in natural sciences and engineering must be radically improved. As I told the educationists last year when Kim Il Sung University celebrated its 30th anniversary, it is high time for work to be done on improving the quality of education.

The LSWY should launch an extensive campaign to improve the scientific and technical levels of students at university, college and senior middle school and, in particular, a major effort should be made to intensify the study of the basic sciences, such as physics, chemistry and mathematics.

A great deal of work needs to be done by the LSWY to make science and engineering popular amongst our young people.

Because the LSWY has neglected this work, young people show no enthusiasm for studying these subjects. One must not think that this work should be done only by scientific research institutes or by the organizations in charge of the dissemination of scientific knowledge. The LSWY should assume one of its fundamental tasks to be the raising of the scientific and technical levels of the young people.

Young people have a strong desire to learn and inquiring minds

where science and engineering are concerned. If the work of disseminating science and technology is properly organized, the interest of the young people will be aroused and they will be helped considerably to improve their knowledge of science and engineering.

I am now going to relate an episode from my own experience in the youth movement. In Jilin there was a youth hall maintained at public expense which could seat about 300 people. The management of the hall used to invite leading scholars on Wednesdays, Saturdays and Sundays to give lectures on astronomy, physics and other areas of natural science and engineering. Their lectures were of great interest to the young people. Of course, by arranging such lectures the management aimed to bring young people together and infuse its own ideas into them. But the young people gained a lot of scientific and technical knowledge from the lectures. I myself often attended the lectures and they helped me greatly to broaden my general knowledge.

In our country there are youth clubs, mass culture halls, workers' culture halls and other facilities everywhere, and these are suitable for bringing young people together to help them acquire scientific and technical knowledge. The LSWY should organize many lectures on science and engineering at these places.

The lectures should be of relevance to the local area. In county towns, for example, they could be about agricultural techniques or local industry; at a chemical works, about chemistry; and at a metal works, about metallurgy or electricity. It would be a good idea to arrange lectures on technology or short courses on the Juche methods of farming for the rural youth. The subject of the lectures should vary, according to the demands of the young people.

The LSWY should take the initiative in spreading the knowledge of science and technology amongst the young people. They should not confine themselves to political lectures, but should organize lectures on literature and art and on science and technology as well. For this purpose, a timetable should be drawn up with dates for the political, literature and art and science and technology lectures, and with the title and lecturer specified.

Both teachers and technicians can be invited to give science and engineering lectures.

If such lectures are regular and frequent, all young people, to say nothing of technicians and specialists, will attend them out of curiosity and interest. The work of making science and engineering popular amongst the young people should be arranged by the LSWY so as to increase their understanding of science and technology, and this will enable them to make a positive contribution to fulfilling the three major tasks of our technical revolution.

To proceed. The LSWY should also encourage the children and young people to take part in physical education and sport.

Physical education and sport are very important. They prepare the children and young people for work and for military service. A man who is physically weak and often falls ill is of little use, however good his knowledge and skill. It is only a strong, well-developed man who can make a positive contribution to building socialism and defeating the American imperialists. A strong physique is an addition to our defence potential.

Currently sports activities at school are poorly run. As a result, the young people joining the People's Army recently straight from senior middle school have been of small stature.

The LSWY should launch a major drive to increase the stature of the children and young people. This drive should be encouraged particularly in primary and senior middle schools, so that every pupil and student takes a lot of exercise to improve his stature from childhood onwards.

Taking a great deal of such exercise helps one grow in height. Once we visited the Haeju Revolutionary School and discovered that all the pupils were short, so we gave instructions that they should exercise to grow taller. Several years later I went to the Nampho Revolutionary School to attend the celebration of its 10th anniversary. The pupils of the Mangyongdae and the Haeju Revolutionary Schools took part in the ceremony. The pupils from the Haeju Revolutionary School were taller and in better health. This

was because they had taken plenty of physical exercise.

Good food alone does not always mean that children and young people grow tall. Eating well without taking physical exercise will make the children plump, but not tall. Physical education and sport are essential for increasing a man's height. However, as there is no drive for increased height in the LSWY at present, the children and young people are short. This is a problem with both boys and girls.

On February 8 this year I visited a People's Army unit and met the recruits; I discovered that one of them was less than 160 centimetres tall. When I asked the shortest soldier if he had taken part in athletics at school, he replied that he had only done a little team running and football. I instructed the commander of the unit to see that by the time I visited the unit again two years later the height of every soldier was increased to at least 165 centimetres through an intensive exercise for growth.

The exercise should be stepped up in order to improve the physique of the children and young people and ensure that they grow tall without simply putting on weight. The physical development of a man can also be counted as a revolution.

The LSWY should launch a major drive for increased height; it should ensure that many iron bars, parallel bars and other apparatus that are good for these exercises are installed in schools and factories.

Basketball, volleyball and mass gymnastics are excellent forms of exercise that increase a person's stature. Children and young people should be encouraged to play them a lot.

Calisthenics and gymnastic dance should become more popular amongst schoolgirls. By doing these exercises, their figures will become slender and beautiful.

The LSWY should ensure that all the young people grow to at least 165 centimetres. So, a major drive should be conducted for about five years amongst children to increase their height. It is difficult for girls to grow above 165 centimetres, but they should reach at least 160 centimetres. This is my instruction to the LSWY and it is a duty you must carry out while you are working as its cadres.

All the People's Army soldiers should achieve a height of at least 165 centimetres. This should be conveyed to the People's Army through the LSWY, and the campaign for increased height amongst the soldiers should be energetic.

The LSWY should encourage the masses to participate in physical education and sport. Encouraging people to take part in physical education and sport is the only way to develop sporting skills in our country. The officials of the LSWY should visit factories that make sports equipment and conduct political work there, urging the workers to turn out more gymnastic apparatus and sports equipment; also a mass movement should be conducted to build good sports facilities. In this way, sports facilities and gymnastic apparatus will be established everywhere so that everybody can take physical exercise.

Further, the LSWY should organize activities amongst the children and young people that are of economic benefit to the state.

The LSWY already has a lot of work to do, such as creating woods of oil-producing trees and rearing rabbits. The LSWY has failed to persevere in its work in the past, but this time it must be persistent in its efforts to carry out the tasks that have been assigned.

In view of the conditions in our country, the land should be used intensively and the economy managed assiduously. Unless this is done, we cannot subsist. Our country has a large population and a small area of arable land. The area of cultivated land in our country is two million hectares, and if the area of fruit and mulberry trees is excluded, the area of crops is only 1.5 million hectares. Because this area is so small, we are unable to sow oil-producing crops widely. If you cultivate oil-producing crops so that the people can eat cooking oil, grain production will be so much the less and this will cause a shortage of food grain. We have to eat grain, although we can dispense with cooking oil. Because of the limited area of the cultivated land, we cannot devote a large area to oil-producing crops, so we cannot supply the people with an adequate amount of cooking oil.

Currently, it is impossible to import cooking oil. In the past when there was no cold front exerting an influence and no food crisis in the

world, we imported soya beans and cooking oil, but now no country is offering these for sale.

In view of the fact that we have no land on which to cultivate oil-producing crops and that we cannot import cooking oil from anywhere, what can we do to solve the problem of cooking oil? We should grow many oil-producing plants on the mountains. If oil-producing woods are established widely, it will be quite possible to solve the problem of oil without the need to cultivate oil-producing crops in the fields.

We have been emphasizing the need to create oil-producing woods for a long time, but the work has not been attended to properly. So, the speeches we have made on this matter are still just words.

The LSWY should take the work of creating oil-producing woods in hand and promote it consistently. In this way many oil-producing woods should be created in the lifetime of your generation. This work will prove of benefit to you, the younger generation.

To create oil-producing woods, many walnut, heartnut and pine-nut trees, toothache trees, and leadplants must be planted. It is said that in China, apricot trees are planted on a wide scale and oil is extracted from the stones. However, I do not think it would pay to plant apricot trees in our country. As for extracting oil from apricot stones, we should go at it in a small way by creating some apricot orchards. When creating oil-producing woods, the main emphasis should be on planting walnut, heartnut and pine-nut trees, toothache trees and leadplant.

The LSWY should rouse the children and young people in a vigorous drive to plant walnut trees near their houses, on the edges of fields and by the roadside. Good varieties of these trees that bear fruit early should be planted. Since they grow well in warm places, walnut trees should be planted in wide areas south of Pyongyang. A vigorous campaign should be launched in the area north of Pyongyang to create many pine-nut and heartnut groves and plant toothache trees.

Leadplants should be planted on railway embankments. They should be planted on the upper and lower edges of the embankment,

with clover in between the two rows. When the leadplant is planted in this way, it presents a pleasant aspect and prevents dust from settling on the clover.

The oil obtained from leadplant seeds is not edible, but it can be used to make soap and paint. Since a lot of edible oil is currently being used in making soap and paint, that much less cooking oil is available for the people. If many shrubs of leadplants and toothache trees are planted and a lot of oil obtained from them, it can be used in the production of soap and paint and all the edible oil will be available for the people.

We should solve the problem of oil by making the best use of the mountains and we should produce grain from the arable land.

The LSWY should conduct a vigorous campaign amongst the children and young people to raise rabbits. The pupils should be encouraged to cultivate a lot of clover and rear 7,000,000 rabbits a year.

To proceed. The LSWY should pay scrupulous attention to hygiene.

Young people should be in the vanguard of hygiene, too. If this work is not done properly the honour of Chollima Korea will be tarnished.

Effective hygiene information work should be carried out by the LSWY. Children and young people should be organized into teams to carry out this work; articles on hygiene should be published in newspapers; and officials of the LSWY should lecture the masses.

The LSWY should take a resolute stand against the practice of neglecting hygiene, which represents a battle against backwardness, and young people should play a leading role.

The LSWY should organize the children and young people and enlist them in the work of improving the levels of hygiene in towns, villages, schools and houses and encouraging all the working people to keep themselves clean and observe health regulations. The LSWY should be particularly concerned with hygiene in rural areas. Many modern houses have been built in these areas, but they are not well

maintained. The LSWY should launch a major good-conduct drive amongst the children and young people so that modern rural houses are kept clean and the fences and roads are well maintained.

In addition, the LSWY should intensify ideological education amongst the children and young people.

In order to gain ultimate success in our revolutionary cause, it is essential to bring up well the younger generation, which will continue to advance the revolution. The LSWY is the reserve of our Party and it nurtures those who are heirs to our revolutionary cause. Therefore, the LSWY should step up the ideological education of the children and young people, with prominence being given to the matter of the young people continuing the advancement of the revolution.

The central task in the ideological education of children and young people is to arm them all fully with the monolithic ideology of our Party. The LSWY should intensify education in our monolithic ideology and inspire in the young people and children an unfailing loyalty to the Party and leader.

Alongside an expansion of education in our monolithic ideology, education in socialist patriotism and communism should be increased. The LSWY should be responsible for doing this, encouraging the children and young people to fight selflessly for the Party and revolution, for the working class and the people, for socialism and communism, with deep loyalty to the Party, the working class and the people. In addition, children and young people should be taught to take care of groves and forests, and protect animals and plants. If the LSWY forms pupils, children and young people into greenery guards, forest protection guards and the like as part of a widespread campaign for planting and tending trees properly, they will naturally grow to love the trees they have planted and are tending, and so the pupils will protect and value the groves and forests even after leaving school and joining the rest of society.

The LSWY should refrain absolutely from using formalistic methods in the ideological education of the children and young people; it must be undertaken in a practical way.

Furthermore, the training of cadres for the LSWY should be conducted properly.

Because people only belong to the LSWY for a limited period, it is very difficult to train LSWY cadres. As LSWY workers grow older, they must be replaced by younger people. It is only when its cadres are young that the LSWY can be considered as a genuine organization of young people. Therefore, it is important to train LSWY cadres well, in keeping with the nature of the league.

If this work is to be done efficiently, future cadres should be properly registered and systematically trained. The LSWY should use foresight in the training of cadres, adhering to a practical plan regarding who will be replaced by whom when the time comes.

A proper system of recommendation of student candidates for admission to Kum Song Political University should be established. We should recommend for admission to this university only those who, after leaving senior middle school, have led an exemplary life in the LSWY section of the army for about three years or have performed well in the LSWY whilst working at a factory. If those young people who, after finishing senior middle school and learning something of the work of the LSWY in the army or at a factory for about three years, are admitted to the Kum Song Political University, they will make fine, able LSWY cadres.

At the same time as training a large number of LSWY cadres at the Kum Song Political University, some graduates from Kim Il Sung University and other institutes of higher education should be selected to become LSWY cadres. It is only then that we can meet the continual demand for replacement of LSWY cadres.

The LSWY should have a proper system for recommending candidates for admission to institutes of higher education. They should not recommend senior middle-school leavers for direct admission to any university except the university of foreign studies, the universities of physical education and art and some special faculties such as physics, mathematics and electronics. Once they have finished senior middle school, young people should serve in the army or work in a

factory or on a farm for some three years before entering higher education on the recommendation of the LSWY. This is the principle that should govern the selection of university students. It is only when the students are selected in this way that the young people will play an active part in the life of the LSWY and carry out their revolutionary duties with honesty, keenly aware that they will not be recommended for admission to institutes of higher education if their behaviour in the LSWY is not good enough and if they fail to discharge their revolutionary assignments to the best of their ability. The recommendation of exemplary people for enrolment is the way for the institutes of higher education to train able personnel. Only those who will be useful and work selflessly in the interests of the Party and the revolution should be recommended for admission to our universities. In future, the LSWY should be absolutely strict about its recommendation of candidates for institutes of higher education in line with the Party's principle on student selection.

I believe that the officials of the LSWY will work hard to justify the Party's trust and expectations.

ON THE FURTHER DEVELOPMENT OF THE FISHING INDUSTRY IN THE WEST SEA

**Speech at a Meeting of Activists from the Fishing
Industry on the West Coast**

March 21, 1977

Today I would like to talk about some problems which must be resolved in order to develop fishing in the West Sea.

The world is currently experiencing an acute food shortage. It is because of the influence of the cold front that many parts of the world are suffering a shortage of food and the people in these countries are going hungry. According to information from abroad, as much as a quarter of the world's population is now suffering from malnutrition.

Recently many countries have even been experiencing a shortage of drinking water because of severe drought. One thousand two hundred million of the world's people do not have sufficient drinking water, and apparently tens of thousands of them are dying of thirst every day. The UN is actually holding a conference on water to find a solution to this problem.

In short, the whole world is facing a very serious food crisis because of the abnormal weather conditions.

However, our people are provided with sufficient food because we have been reaping a good harvest over recent years despite the severe effects of the cold front. However, we should not rest content with this or consume food with no control.

As long as the cold front continues to exert an influence, our country, too, may be hit by drought any year. Recently, only a little rain has fallen here. If a severe drought hits our country, a great loss in our output of grain and consequently a food shortage will result. Actually, irrigation has been introduced into 600,000 hectares of our paddy fields and a large area of dry fields. So, no matter how severe a drought may hit our country, there will never be a complete failure of our farming and at the worst our people will be able to eat gruel. However, we should still make whatever preparations are necessary to cope with any difficult situation. We must always think of new ways of obtaining food so as to build up stocks.

In order to build up food reserves, we must first produce plenty of non-staple foodstuffs. If the people are provided with large quantities of non-staple foodstuffs such as fish, this will help to save a lot of staple food. Fish is very good for a person's health. It is particularly good for children because they will grow quickly and become strong if they eat a lot of fish. Therefore, it is important to develop the fishing industry so that large quantities of fish are caught.

We are directing great efforts towards developing the fishing industry in order to provide plenty of fish for the people. Last year, we held the Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the East Coast and set various tasks for the development of the East Sea fishing industry.

In the past, the fisheries and fishermen's cooperatives in the East Sea region have mainly concentrated on catching pollack and sandfish in winter and have caught only a little fish in summer. They have been unable to land big catches of such fish as anchovy, sand eel, sardine and saury because of a shortage of vessels and fishing gear, although the fish came to our seas in large shoals. Therefore, we set the task of building all-purpose fishing boats and gear to make it possible to fish in summer as well, and of thus catching fish all the year round by using various methods—gill, trawl and seine.

Currently the Party organizations and the fishing sector in the East Sea region are working hard to implement the tasks assigned by that meeting, including the building of all-purpose fishing boats. In this way

they have already solved many of the problems that arise in making preparations for summer fishing. The provincial Party committees and the sector concerned in this region must continue to promote the building of all-purpose fishing boats so that the work will be completed by the end of April and full-scale fishing can start in May.

In order to provide the people with plenty of fish, the fishing industry in the West Sea should be developed in conjunction with that in the East Sea.

We have discovered a lot that is wrong with the fishing industry in the West Sea region.

No one is in charge and takes full responsibility for the fishing industry in the West Sea region. Neither the Ministry of Fisheries nor the Administration Council is showing any concern for this sector, nor do any of the provincial Party and administrative committees in this region make any efforts to help. This explains why the tasks which were set for the development of fishing in the West Sea have not been carried out properly. Recently small-scale fishing has not been going well in this region and the number of fishermen's cooperatives and sideline fishing teams is gradually falling.

The West Sea is teeming with good fish and is favourable for small-scale fishing. In days gone by the fishermen were able to catch large quantities of well-known fish in this sea such as planktonic shrimps, prawns, *Acetes chinensis*, blue crabs, gizzard shad, yellow corbina, *Setipinna gilberti*, anchovy, sand eel and grey mullet. But this is not the case now, and as a result pickled planktonic shrimps, pickled prawns, and pickled *Acetes chinensis* are scarce and the once famous Nampho blue crab is rarely seen in the shops.

I made enquiries into whether the number of shoals of fish has diminished due to the sea perhaps being affected by pollution, because recently chemicals have been used in large quantities in our rural areas and a lot of reagents have been used in mines. However, this is not the case. Even now the West Sea is teeming with fish. Planktonic shrimps abound in this sea and there are also plenty of common shrimps. I have been told that one-metre deep shoals of planktonic shrimps are moving

about in some places. This shows that there is no pollution problem. If the sea was polluted, planktonic shrimps and prawns would not survive. The present poor catch of fish in the West Sea can be ascribed to the fact that no great efforts are being put into fishing and small-scale fishing in particular is not being carried out on a wide scale.

The officials of the West Sea fishing sector are not organizing properly the work of increasing the amount of fish caught and they are working bureaucratically.

The West Sea fishermen whom I met during my preparations for this meeting said that presently the fishermen of the Sinuiju Fishing Station are going as far as the waters off Cholsan to catch fish. So they spend more time on sailing to and from the fishing grounds than on actually fishing. The members of the sideline fishing team of the Taean Electric Machinery Plant catch fish off the Onchon coast. They spend 14 hours sailing to and the same time returning from the fishing grounds, while they engage in fishing for only one day. In the West Sea, the boats are unable to enter their harbours at low tide because of the great difference between high and low tides. So, in fact the fishermen have only a short time to devote to fishing. The situation is the same throughout the whole of the West Sea region.

If you have simple wooden piers built near the fishing grounds in Cholsan and Onchon, for instance, so that the boats can unload the fish for it to be transported to the fishing stations by truck, more time can be devoted to fishing and more fish caught with the boats we have at present. The fishermen say that if this is done, they will be able to catch three or four times more fish.

Officials of the fishing industry in the West Sea region do know nothing about this fact because they work in a bureaucratic way, confined to their offices even during the fishing season and therefore no measures are taken.

Seafood farming is not being done properly. Although the conditions in the West Sea region are favourable for seafood farming, the work is not being organized by the officials. Worse still, in some instances they have misappropriated building materials for the

construction of their offices, materials that were meant for the construction of seafood farms.

If the officials work in this way, the people will not enjoy a prosperous life.

The land area of our country is limited, but the population is large. There is neither suitable pasture land, nor a wide area of land which could be converted into pastures. Therefore, it is difficult to develop livestock farming on a wide scale. The land area is barely sufficient to grow enough rice and maize to feed the people.

It is most important to make effective use of the sea in our country. Our ancestors said that people living on the coast should make good use of the sea and those in the mountainous regions should make good use of the mountains. We will only ever prosper if we make effective use of the sea.

At present our officials are not concerned about making effective use of the sea, so no large quantities of fish are caught and they cannot provide the people with much even though our seas are teeming with fish.

The poor fishing in the West Sea is due neither to the fishermen nor to the fact that the Party has not put forward a policy for the development of the fishing industry. The fishermen are working hard to catch fish and the Party's policy regarding the fishing industry is sound. The trouble lies in the fact that the senior officials in charge of fishing are lacking in Party loyalty, working-class loyalty and loyalty to the people, and their sense of responsibility and enthusiasm are weak. In other words, problems arise because the officials in this sector are not thinking of providing good food for the people.

This meeting must criticize the indifference of these officials to the people's standard of living and adopt measures to bring about a radical improvement in the fishing industry in the West Sea.

The fishing bases in the West Sea region should be developed as a matter of priority.

Unlike the East Sea, the West Sea fishing industry does not need any large ships or factory ships at the moment, because in the West Sea all the fishing grounds are found in coastal waters. There is no need to go

out on the high seas or as far as the waters south of the Ongjin peninsula in order to catch fish. Furthermore, the techniques for catching fish used by the West Sea fishermen are different from those introduced in the East Sea. In the West Sea large shoals move with the current. Therefore, nets are set across the current and the fish are caught by using the high and low tides when the fish come in and go out. So large fishing boats and factory ships are not needed in the West Sea.

Certainly, these ships will be required in the West Sea when our country mass-produces large fishing boats and undertakes deep-sea fishing on a bigger scale in the future.

However, there is no need to provide the West Sea region with such ships and large transports at the moment.

At present, the most important task facing the West Sea fishing industry is to build good fishing bases. If this is done, the existing fishing boats can be used to greater effect and more fish landed.

I have been told that fishermen in the West Sea go out fishing for some 180 days a year. However, approximately two-thirds of this time is spent sailing to and from the fishing grounds. So, they actually fish for no more than 60 days. Such being the case, fish are not caught in large quantities. I have been told that last year 27 fishermen from one fishermen's cooperative in Songnim landed 45 tons of fish and the same number of people from a sideline fishing team in the Nampho Smeltery caught 50 tons. These figures are very small.

If the fishing bases are improved and the fishing boats motorized by fitting the 8-hp, 16-hp, 28-hp and 75-hp engines that are mass-produced in our country, and if various kinds of fishing gear are provided, it will enable you to extend the period of fishing operations considerably so that a great deal of fish is caught.

Fishing bases should be established near the fishing grounds.

In the West Sea, fishing grounds are found in the seas off Kangryong and Ongjin, Kwail County and Nampho and in the area to the north of Sok Island. So, fishing bases should be established near these fishing grounds.

The best plan for establishing West Sea fishing bases is as follows; three in South Hwanghae Province, four in South Phyongan Province and

three in North Phyongan Province. It would be reasonable to establish fishing bases around Ongjin, Monggumpho and Unnyul in South Hwanghae Province, around Onchon, Jungsan, Sukchon and Mundok in South Phyongan Province and in Cholsan, Jongju, at the mouth of the Chongchon River and on Sinmi Island in North Phyongan Province.

If you build fishing bases near the fishing grounds and take charge of fishing operations, supply the materials needed and receive and dispose of the fish caught, you will be able to increase the amount of fish caught per boat several times.

Fishing bases should be established in promising places, taking into account the reclamation of tideland.

I have been told that some officials are concerned how fishing bases should be built when the sea is being walled off along the tidal flat. However, there is no problem. Any problem can be avoided by cutting a canal for the fishing boats. If dams are constructed in this way, the farther the sea walls stretch out into the sea, the longer the canal will be making it possible for fishing boats to anchor safely. This will mean there is no need to construct harbours. The canal will provide good shelter for the fishing boats. Therefore, without forgetting that the tideland is continually being walled off, you should select the best places for new fishing bases. And the tideland reclamation projects should be undertaken according to a plan that conforms with the master plan for land development.

Fishing bases should be established first in those places which will not be affected by the reclamation of tideland. If fishing bases are established on Sinmi Island and Cholsan peninsula in North Phyongan Province, they will not be affected by the reclamation of tideland. I think appropriate sites could be found in South Hwanghae Province, too. When new fishing bases have been established in the West Sea region, the number of days you go out fishing should increase.

In the East Sea fishing continues even in winter, but in the West Sea it is done mainly in summer because the sea freezes in winter. As a result, it is impossible for the West Sea fishermen to put to sea for 300 days a year as is done in the East Sea. It is possible for you to go out to

sea for some 250 days a year during the eight and half months from April to mid-December when fishing is possible in the West Sea. It is perfectly acceptable for fishing to be undertaken for only 250 days a year in the West Sea. You should work hard to increase the number of days the boats are out fishing by granting leave for the fishermen in winter as far as possible and also by concentrating on the repair of boats at the same time.

Piers should be built at the fishing bases. It is a good idea to build wooden piers. A good pier can be made by driving posts into the seabed and laying boards across the top. Fishing boats can anchor on both sides of such piers. Revetments should be built alongside the channel through which boats come to their base, so that they can anchor there.

One or two small cranes to unload such things as boxes of fish should be installed at every fishing base. Waterworks and oil tanks should also be installed in order to provide water and oil for the ships. The oil tanks should be underground. In addition, each base should have a small salt storehouse. If the boats are provided with salt, the fish can be salted on board ship.

Small refrigeration plants and chipped-ice plants should also be built at the fishing bases. If this is done, the ships will be able to carry chipped ice and large quantities of fish can be kept fresh and frozen fish can be supplied to the consumers.

Each fishing base should have about five blocks of houses of a similar style to modern rural dwellings so that the fishermen can rest in comfort after working at sea, as well as a bathhouse, a barbershop, a medical clinic, a laundry and a dining room.

If the fishing bases are equipped in this way, not only will the catch increase considerably, but the life of the fishermen will be comfortable.

Equipment and facilities should be introduced into the fishing bases gradually. It is impossible to provide everything at one fell swoop.

All that has to be done this year is to build piers and small cranes at the fishing bases. The installation of waterworks and oil tanks, the construction of salt storehouses, refrigeration plants, chipped-ice

plants, bathhouses and barbershops should be considered as the next stage. I think that building a medical clinic is a simple job which can be done in the near future.

Each fishing base should be given three or four lorries to transport water, oil, salt, vegetables and fish until all the facilities they need have been provided.

Constructing a fishing base is not a difficult matter. If some timber is provided, a pier can be built easily. If cranes for the fishing bases are not immediately available, derricks will serve instead. You must not think simply of providing the fishing bases with modern equipment from the beginning. Initially, in the period of postwar reconstruction the builders acquitted themselves well using wooden derricks. It is true that the situation today is different from that in the postwar period. However, modern cranes are still not available everywhere; so, derricks at least should be installed.

As there is no company that is directly responsible for the construction of fishing bases, this work should be undertaken by tideland reclamation companies. Even though they cannot continue the work of walling off the tideland for a year, these companies must build the fishing bases first so that the people are provided with fish.

Currently several major tideland reclamation companies are operating in the West Sea region, and their workers are capable of building piers and revetments. Once they are provided with materials, these companies will have no problem building one or two fishing bases each.

The Administration Council and the State Planning Commission should conduct a detailed examination into the problem of building fishing bases and ensure that the work is properly organized. The Administration Council should ensure that the materials that are needed for building piers, timber in particular, are supplied without delay. The chairmen of the provincial people's committees, the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and the chairmen of the provincial administrative committees in the West Sea region should adopt the attitude of masters and supervise the work of constructing the bases, acting with a due sense of responsibility.

If you concentrate on the construction of fishing bases, you may not be able to catch large quantities of fish this year. However, lots of fish will be caught from next year onwards.

Next, many sideline fishing teams should be formed.

Some factories and enterprises want to build poultry and livestock plants in order to solve the problem of non-staple food. However, I believe it would be better to form sideline fishing teams rather than build such plants. Poultry and livestock plants are not easy to manage. A lot of grain is used to produce eggs and meat at these plants. Nearly 200 grammes of maize are needed to produce one egg. We must not use a large amount of grain to breed poultry and livestock because the world is experiencing an acute food shortage and we have to build up our food reserves. The production of eggs and meat requires large quantities of not only grain feed but also protein feed, antibiotics, vitamins and micronutrients. Poultry and livestock can be given only fully nutritious feed which contains various components for it to be possible to produce large quantities of eggs and meat. Although many poultry and livestock plants have been built, they cannot produce eggs and meat properly because the supply of fully nutritious feed is inadequate. It is useless to build a large number of poultry and livestock plants unless an adequate amount of feed is available.

If sideline fishing teams are organized at factories and enterprises, the problem of non-staple foodstuffs for the workers can be solved quickly. There is no difficulty in catching fish. All that needs to be provided is the boats and nets. You can catch as many fish as you like simply by going out on the West Sea, because this sea is teeming with fish.

Some factories and enterprises are now running sideline fishing teams and in the case of those teams in which the senior officials take some interest, they are working reasonably well. The team run by the Taean Electric Machinery Plant catches a lot of such fish as grey mullet, prawns, anchovy and shellfish with a 100-hp and a 28-hp boat and a sailing boat.

In those teams which acquit themselves well in their work, a fisherman lands 10 tons of fish a year. This is no small amount. At the

moment a fisherman is landing 10 tons even though the fishing gear is inadequate and the boats are operating at a very low rate. If the work of constructing fishing bases is properly organized, modern fishing gear supplied and the operation rate of ships increased, each fisherman will be able to catch between 20 and 30 tons of fish a year.

Every major factory and enterprise can form a sideline fishing team. The Kangson Steel Complex, the Kum Song Tractor Plant, the Sungni General Motor Works, the Joyang Coal Mine and the Unnyul and November 8 Mines could run such teams because they can build fishing boats from their own resources and they have the manpower needed for fishing operations. They should organize these teams by using their latent reserves to the full.

It would be a good idea to organize such teams in provincial capitals and county towns, too. Such cities as Pyongyang, Kaesong, Sariwon and Nampho should form them. It would also be good for any other place which has labour available to organize such teams. In the case of Kaesong, a city which is not on the coast, teams should be organized to catch fish in both the East and West Seas.

Cooperative farms on the coast should also form fishing teams.

It would be wise to choose the labour force for these teams from Party members and other workers at factories and enterprises who are elderly. There are many elderly Party members who have done good work for many years, but are now unable to play a part in the main production processes because of their age or infirmity. However, it is a shame to simply pension them off. These teams should be made up of such people. Fairly old and weak people are able to cast nets or go angling. I believe that they will grow stronger if they breathe the sea air and eat plenty of highly nutritious fish. Women can take the fish from the nets and salt them. Fish can be caught by teams that are formed in the main of fairly old and weak people if a helmsman and a couple of young fishermen are allocated to each boat.

The Ministry of Fisheries must provide each factory and enterprise team with the helmsmen and young fishermen it needs.

Normal production should not be interrupted because productive

labour is needlessly selected to form the teams. Sideline fishing teams must always be formed on the principle of not hindering normal production. Production at factories and enterprises should not be allowed to decline for the sake of fishing.

The formation of sideline fishing teams should not be compelled. These teams should be formed only in those factories and enterprises where it is feasible after careful consideration of the potential for building ships and the labour available. If a factory or enterprise is forced to form such a team even though it may be unable to do so, valuable engines and materials will be wasted in the efforts to build ships and regular production will be interrupted by the ill-advised use of productive labour.

The factories and enterprises must decide what the proper size of the teams should be. Their size should be determined after close consideration of various factors, such as the demand for seafood at the given factory or enterprise and the potential catch of each boat.

I have been told that the November 8 Mine is going to form a sideline fishing team of four or five boats. This would seem to be the appropriate size in view of the state of affairs at this mine. Forty-seven men capable of fishing are sufficient even if some seven men are allocated to each boat. If this mine forms a team with three 75-hp and two 28-hp boats, it will be able to provide the miners and their families with plenty of fish. If the work is properly organized, a 75-hp fishing boat will be able to catch 500 tons and a 28-hp ship 300 tons a year. So the fishing team of this mine will land over 2,000 tons of fish annually. This amount is enough to supply over 100 grammes of fish daily to every miner and to each member of his family.

A sideline fishing team must not consist of a single boat, but should be a little bigger in size. A team should be formed by merging several sub-teams which have only one or two fishing boats each.

The organizational structure of sideline fishing teams should suit the situation. Either they should be attached to the existing fishermen's cooperatives or fishery stations, or an enterprise should be formed by merging several fishing teams.

In order to catch large quantities of fish, these teams have to engage in fishing activities of various kinds. Young men do not enjoy fishing using longlines. But in fact, it is only when this method is used that delicious and nutritious fish can be caught. The teams should ensure that fishing can continue without interruption by using various types of equipment such as gill nets, setnets, longlines, as well as by angling.

Each factory and enterprise should build its own fishing boats for the sideline fishing teams. Those factories and enterprises which have their own technicians capable of shipbuilding must build boats on their own, and those which need technical assistance should take their materials and labour force to shipyards, ship repair yards or fisheries in order to build fishing boats with their help.

The machine-building industry should produce the engines needed for the boats of the sideline fishing teams. Tractor plants should continue to turn out tractors until April and the engines they make in May and June should be diverted to shipbuilding. The 75-hp engine for the *Phungnyon*, 28-hp engine for the *Chollima*, 16-hp engine for the *Jonjin* and 8-hp engine for the *Chungsong* tractors are suitable for the fishing boats that will be used by the sideline fishing teams. The machine-building industry must modify the tractor engines so that they can be used in fishing boats.

The Ministry of Railways must ensure that the timber needed for building these fishing boats is transported without delay.

The factories and enterprises should begin the construction of ships as soon as possible. First of all you must make the hull and the boats should be fitted with engines as soon as you receive them in May or June; then the boats can put to sea for fishing from the second half of the year.

The fishing boats that are to be built by the factories and enterprises should be motorized; this will help increase the catch and make the fishermen's work easier.

A variety of fishing gear must be mass-produced. Both fishing gear and boats are indispensable to sea fishing.

In order to increase production not only must the capacity of the

existing fishing gear factories be expanded, but also many new production centres should be established. Fishing gear factories and housewives' workteams which produce fishing equipment should be set up in provincial capitals like Haeju and Nampho, county towns and workers' districts and a great deal of quality fishing gear produced by encouraging the housewives at such places to take part.

The thread needed for fishing gear should be supplied. I think that a maximum of a few thousand tons of thread are needed to produce fishing gear. In our country today this will present no problem. If there is not sufficient nylon thread for the purpose, cut vinalon yarn should be provided, and should there still not be adequate, even cotton yarn can be used.

Some of the timber required to hold the set fish nets should be supplied by the Ministry of the Building-Materials Industry and the rest by the provinces, factories and enterprises themselves. They can either fell trees themselves to make the posts needed to hold nets or make a contract to buy them from Ryanggang or Jagang Provinces. It would be a good idea for Jagang and Ryanggang Provinces to exchange timber for fish.

The wire ropes needed to produce fishing gear must also be provided.

Ship repair yards should be improved. In order to repair fishing boats promptly you must make effective use of the existing dockyards at the same time as building new ones by pooling the efforts of those major factories and enterprises which form sideline fishing teams. Because the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex, and the Jaeryong and Unnyul Mines belong to the same complex, they should pool their efforts and build a fishing base in Sohae-ri, for instance, and a dockyard nearby.

The new dockyards should be built near fishing bases as far as possible. This will make it possible to make prompt repairs to the fishing boats which anchor there with their catch. Those ships which now have their repair yard in Sinuiju may still be repaired at this yard.

In the process of constructing ship repair yards you must build

mobile repair ships. Mobile repair ships must carry out simple repairs on boats out at sea, working in the same way as mobile repair vans in the rural communities. If such ships are used, there will be no instances of suspending fishing for several days to have a broken nut repaired as happens at present. The construction of a mobile repair ship is not difficult. All that has to be done is to equip a small craft with a few lathes to cut simple spare parts.

In the West Sea region you must ensure that during the three and half months from mid-December to next March when it is impossible to catch fish, ships and fishing gear are repaired and the fishermen relax and study.

If you improve the fishing bases, form sideline fishing teams on a wide scale and adopt other measures in the west coast region, you will be able to land between 200,000 and 300,000 tons of fish annually in the future. Last year at the Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the East Coast, I assigned this region the task of producing 1,200,000 tons of processed fish products. If you catch 300,000 tons of fish in the West Sea region, the total catch for the country will amount to 1,500,000 tons. Shellfish should be counted in the catch at the rate of six shellfish to one fish but seaweeds such as kelp, tangle and laver should not be included. Producing 1,500,000 tons of fish would be reasonably good.

At this meeting I should like to call on you, the workers in the fishing sector of the West Sea region, to catch between 200,000 and 300,000 tons of fish annually in the future. Of course, it will be difficult to catch 300,000 tons of fish immediately because the current annual catch is barely 100,000 tons. But I think it will be possible in the future. The fishermen in the west coast region should work hard, setting the goal of catching 200,000 tons at first and then 300,000 tons later.

Next, seafood farming should be developed extensively.

In order to increase the supply of seafood, not only must fish be caught in large quantities, but also seafood farming must be developed. The West Sea fishing sector must establish good breeding grounds in order to cultivate a lot of kelp, tangle, laver, oysters and shellfish. Also, a

major effort should be directed towards raising grey mullet and prawns.

The period of growth of a grey mullet is short. Therefore, this fish must be raised extensively.

Hatching the fry artificially is difficult in breeding grey mullet. However, last year the Wonsan University of Fisheries made a breakthrough in its research in this area, opening the prospect of raising grey mullet on a large scale. A method of breeding prawn in the laboratory has also been discovered. So all that needs to be done is to build incubation beds to hatch mullet and prawn fries before transferring them into the breeding ponds.

Many grey mullet and prawns can be bred in the west coast region because there are many tidal flats in this area. Grey mullet live in rivers that are slightly salty. They leave the sea and swim upstream at high tide. They move downstream into the sea only when they spawn. Many grey mullet can be found in the lower reaches of the Taedong, Chongchon and Amnok Rivers because the water in this part of the rivers is salty due to the influence of high and low tides. If you wall off the tideland and construct breeding ponds, you will be able to raise as many grey mullet and prawns as you wish because these ponds will be salty. The fishing sector on the west coast must raise grey mullet and prawns extensively by using the conditions effectively.

In managing seafood farming it is important to produce a great deal of fish at as little cost as possible. In order to attempt to breed mullet, the people of North Phyongan Province are walling off the tideland to make a 1,000-hectare mullet breeding pond. We intend to breed not only grey mullet but also other kinds of fish there in the future. We also plan to build a chicken plant near the breeding ground and feed the fish on the microbes which will be produced in the hens' excrement, which will be supplied by the poultry factory. This will enable us to raise large quantities of different kinds of fish with no need to take the trouble of using any other feed.

Those counties in South Hwanghae and North and South Phyongan Provinces where tidal flats are found must construct a breeding pond 20 to 30 hectares in size and breed large quantities of not only grey

mullet and prawn but also carp and crucian. You can breed many fish at the same time as obtaining new land if you wall off the tidal flats and use them as breeding ponds and then convert them into paddy fields once the water is no longer salty and repeat the process further on.

Next, the sale of fish should be properly organized.

Fish shops run directly and jointly by the fisheries and sideline fishing teams should be set up at the peasant markets in county towns, at factories and enterprises, and those shops that already exist should be managed well, so that anyone can buy marine products as he pleases.

If these shops are established in the county towns, factories and enterprises, you will be able to sell a good assortment of fish such as pollack, sandfish, anchovy, sand eel, prawns and shellfish.

The shops should be equipped with facilities for refrigerating and salting as well as storehouses so that fish can be stored and sold at any time.

The correct prices should be fixed for marine products.

The principle should be observed of making these prices uniform. If prices are not uniform and everybody can fix them as they please, the result will be reselling. However, not all fish can be priced uniformly. The prices of pickled products must be fixed in accordance with the labour put into producing them. In producing them, a lot of labour and spices are needed. If this is not taken into account and the prices that are fixed are as low as those of other kinds of fish, no one will produce them.

In the past pickled seafood could not be found on the market because the price assessors fixed the price too low. That is why we criticized them at a plenary meeting of the Cabinet, with the result that the price was corrected. Afterwards, the price of pickled foodstuffs has risen a little, but it is not yet high enough to stimulate the producers' enthusiasm for production. That is why we still do not find a large amount of pickled shellfish, prawns, *Acetes chinensis* and planktonic shrimps in the shops and even those products which are available are of poor quality. It is only when the price of pickled foodstuffs is fixed slightly high that their production and quality will be improved. The price assessment sector must reinvestigate the price of pickled foodstuffs and make alterations if

it finds the price has not been fixed accurately.

In order to provide the people with an adequate amount of fish, a solution to the problem of transportation must be found.

At the moment one of the most difficult problems facing us is the transportation of fish. The senior officials at the Ministry of Fisheries say that it is very difficult for them to obtain lorries from the motor pools. These were formed by combining the motor vehicles belonging to civil service establishments and industrial enterprises and they took over vehicles from the materials supply agencies of the fishing industry and the fisheries. If these pools do not supply the lorries on time the fish will go bad and ship repairs will be delayed because the materials needed are not delivered promptly.

The fishing industry on the west coast must obtain lorries for its exclusive use. A road transport company should be formed under every provincial fishing management bureau and local fishing management section in the west coast region.

Road transport companies must be formed by recovering those lorries which were transferred to the motor pools from the materials supply agencies under the provincial fishing management bureaux, local fishing management sections and the fisheries. And the state must provide each company with the additional lorries. The companies must also be provided with special lorries, such as those for carrying marine products, water and oil. In the future, as the output of marine products increases, more lorries will be provided.

There is no need for a large staff to manage the road transport companies. One man—the chief—will be sufficient.

To proceed. The training of technicians should be improved and research into fishing stepped up in the fishing sector of the west coast region.

Our country is bounded on three sides by the sea and must develop and use all its marine resources. We must, therefore, direct proper efforts to the training of fishing technicians and to research into fishing. However, at the moment nobody is showing any concern for it. That is why no rapid progress is being made by the fishing industry.

The scientific and technical levels of the fishing industry should be raised by making radical improvements in the training of technicians and stepping up research work.

Priority should be given to the training of technicians and great efforts should be directed towards this. There are not many technicians in the fishing sector on the west coast. It will be impossible to give proper technical guidance to the fishing industry unless a large number of technicians is trained. You should make the Nampho Junior College of Fisheries a senior college by revising its training programme and produce qualified technicians by admitting promising students.

Due regard should also be given to improving the levels of skill and workmanship of the fishing workers. So, many meetings should be arranged for them to swap experiences. In the same way that people in the agricultural sector hold an agricultural congress every year to debate farming methods and experiences, so fishing workers should hold an annual meeting in order to exchange experiences in fishing. If the good experience that has been gained in fishing is made widely known through an extensive debate, it will be of major benefit to raising the technical knowledge and skills of all the fishing workers. In future, meetings for swapping experiences should be held every winter in each province or for the east or west coast regions.

Many magazines and technical books should be published in order to help the fishing workers in their daily study.

Research into the science of fishing must be improved. You must ensure that the West Sea Fishery Research Institute in Nampho is equipped well and improve research into shoal detection, sea conditions, fishing gear, ships, marine resources and seafood farming. Any useful experience from abroad should also be introduced.

Next, the work of supplying equipment and materials and of the supply service for the men should be improved further.

Because the fishing industry has a direct bearing on the standard of living of the people, the work of providing this industry with equipment and materials must be ascribed equal importance to the supply of farming equipment and materials, and it must be done well.

In particular, the engines, spare parts and materials that are needed to repair fishing boats and gear should be supplied promptly and the supply of fuel improved.

In order to supply the equipment and materials needed by the fishing industry, a proper supply system must be set up, in such a way that equipment and materials are supplied to the east and west coast regions separately.

At the moment the Ministry of Fisheries does not direct and supervise the management bureaux under its control properly, nor does it supply the equipment and materials as it should. You should establish separate general bureaux of fishing for the east and west coast regions by reducing the staff at the ministry and set up a materials supply agency under each of them. The State Planning Commission must work out a plan for each general bureau for supplying equipment and materials and they must be supplied according to this plan.

The supply of spare parts and materials must be satisfactory and to facilitate this it is necessary to define several standard types of engine to be used for all fishing vessels. If various kinds of engine are fitted in different boats, it is very difficult to supply the spare parts. When the agricultural sector used to employ different kinds of imported tractors, it was very difficult to supply the spare parts, but now there is no problem because domestically produced tractors are used. The west coast fishing sector still has different kinds of boats that are equipped with foreign engines. As a result, the boats cannot be repaired on time because the necessary spare parts are not available. The fishing industry in this region must gradually replace the various types of foreign engine with domestically produced 8-hp, 16-hp, 28-hp, 75-hp and 200-hp engines.

In addition to a well-regulated supply system for equipment and materials, a proper system of supplying rice, vegetables and water should be established for the fishing industry.

Next, fishing boats and fishing gear should be modernized.

The modernization of fishing vessels and gear is very important for the rapid scientific and technical development of the fishing industry.

In line with the policy put forward at the Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the East Coast, the fishing industry on the west coast must also modernize its fishing boats and install up-to-date equipment and fittings, such as shoal detectors and machines for making chipped ice, and also introduce a radio-communication system. Of course, all this cannot be done overnight. This work should be carried out step by step.

For the present it is more urgent to modernize the fishing boats on the east coast. In this region efforts are now being made to convert the boats of 200 hp and greater into multi-purpose vessels. But the progress being made is not good because speed reducers and winches are not supplied when they are needed. The appropriate sectors must provide them without fail by the end of April.

This year the fishing industry on the west coast must first motorize all its fishing boats—not only those which belong to the fisheries and fishermen's cooperatives, but also those of the sideline fishing teams at factories and enterprises—instead of trying to convert the large fishing boats into multi-purpose vessels. This year you should designate the months of May, June and July as the period for repairing fishing boats and work hard to keep them in good condition.

From now onwards the west coast region must build a large number of 75-hp and 28-hp angle-net boats and similar, instead of building large ships. It would also be a good idea to make several 200-hp all-purpose boats for experimental use at the fisheries.

A radio-communication system should be introduced. This will make fishing more scientific and safer. Every fishing base and boat should be furnished with a wireless telephone and a wireless telegraph which can be used when the telephone breaks down. The Administration Council should supply radios so that this communication system can be introduced.

Shoal-spotting vessels should be equipped with shoal detectors.

On its own, the Ministry of Fisheries will not be able to modernize fishing vessels and gear. Having designated this year as a year in which a great change must take place in the development of the fishing industry, the Party Central Committee is paying close attention to

improving this industry. In order to promote the fishing industry by making fishing boats and gear more up-to-date, the whole nation must give effective assistance to this sector as they do to the country areas.

Spare parts for those fishing boats that are fitted with tractor engines can be produced by the tractor repair plants and also by coal and ore mines. All sectors and echelons including agriculture and the machine-building industry, must assist the fishing industry to the best of their ability.

Next, we must ensure that all our fishermen are good.

Everyone must make every effort to guard our shores. To this end, we must ensure that our fishermen are good whilst reinforcing our naval forces and coast guards. Fishermen can be called a naval force engaged in fishing. It is only when this body is strengthened that they will carry out their duties well.

In conclusion, you must review your work properly every year.

Every year factories and enterprises hold a meeting to review how the tasks which I gave at the Taean Electric Machinery Plant have been accomplished and each rural community meets to check on the implementation of the tasks set in the rural theses. I think that from now onwards it would be a good idea for the fishing industry to hold similar meetings—a meeting to review the completion of the assignments given today for the west coast region and a meeting to check on the implementation of the tasks set on November 15 for the east coast region. These meetings should be held in the fishing teams, fishermen's cooperatives and fisheries, or some of the fisheries may hold a joint meeting. All the Party, trade union and LSWY organizations in the fishing sector should also hold similar meetings. If this is done, a great improvement could be brought about in the fishing industry.

Party organizations and people's committees at all levels must adopt measures to carry out the tasks put forward at this meeting.

I am fully convinced that the fishing workers of the west coast region will bring about a change in the development of the fishing industry in the West Sea by carrying out all their assignments to the letter.

ON FURTHER INCREASING PRODUCTION AT THE COAL MINES IN THE TOKCHON AREA

**Speech at a Political Committee Meeting of the Central
Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea**

March 31, 1977

Today I should like to speak about the matters of increasing production at the coal mines in the Tokchon area and of building the Taedonggang Power Station.

I shall begin by speaking about the need to increase production at the coal mines.

A few days ago, the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee received a report on the current situation at the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant from the Party Central Committee's directing team at the site. According to the report, the plant is failing to maintain a steady output of power because of a shortage of coal.

So I inspected the Tokchon area to take stock of the situation at the coal mines which supply the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant; I also intended to take whatever measures were necessary.

As our hydroelectric power stations are currently unable to operate properly owing to the severe drought caused by the cold front, the thermal power plants must be run at full capacity so that enough electricity is supplied to factories and other industrial establishments. It is particularly important to operate the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant, the largest in our country, at full capacity.

We plan to increase the generation capacity of this power plant in the future.

However, because the coal mines in the Tokchon area are failing to supply sufficient quantities of coal to the power plant, the generation of electricity at this plant is very unstable. At present, the situation is such that it has not a single day's supply of coal in reserve. Daily and hourly supplies have to be used as soon as they arrive. During my recent stay in the Tokchon area, the plant was not generating electricity at full capacity because it was not being supplied with sufficient coal. This being the case, the management at the plant cannot give its full attention to operations and worries only about the supply of coal, waiting impatiently for the arrival of the coal wagons.

Electric power is the motive force of the national economy. Without it we can do nothing; we cannot run factories or raise crops. So, how can national economy be managed in a planned way, free from risk, when the thermal power plants are operating on a hand-to-mouth basis with barely a day's or hour's supply of coal in reserve?

The Party Central Committee's directing team working at the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant should be congratulated for the accurate and prompt report it produced recently concerning the current situation at the plant. Unless our understanding of the situation at the plant is up-to-the-minute and we take the measures that are necessary, a major obstacle will be laid in the way of the economic development of the country.

According to the investigation I conducted whilst in the Tokchon area recently, the main reason for the inadequate production of coal lies in the fact that the officials at the mines do not manage the implementation of Party policy responsibly and with the attitude of being masters.

It is not because the Party's lines and policies are wrong that the coal mines around Tokchon fail to produce the required amounts of coal. The lines and policies of our Party are absolutely correct; not one of them is wrong.

A long time ago our Party put forward the policy of keeping the

mining industry decisively ahead of the manufacturing industry. This is our Party's consistent policy.

When the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant was under construction, the Party discussed the problem of coal supply and adopted the decision to provide the plant with enough coal by means of the large-scale development of coal mines around Tokchon. In my New Year Address, I designated this year as a period of readjustment and stressed the importance of making a great effort to give precedence to the mining industry over the manufacturing industry.

However, the officials concerned have neglected the Party's policy of keeping the mining industry ahead of the manufacturing industry. The officials of the Administration Council and of the Mining Industry Commission and the other officials concerned lack the correct ideological attitude that Party lines and policies should be accepted and fulfilled without fail.

If we are to ensure that the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant generates at its present full capacity, we have to supply it with six million tons of coal annually and, in order to increase its capacity as planned, the figure must be eight million tons a year. Therefore, the officials concerned should have made detailed arrangements to develop the coal mines around Tokchon on a large scale in accordance with the Party's policy. However, the officials concerned, including those of the Administration Council and the Mining Industry Commission, have neglected to do so. If the work had been organized in detail, the coal mines in the Tokchon area would have been able to mine as much coal as they wanted. It is not because there are no deposits there that coal cannot be mined. According to my own study of the five coal mines in the area, each one has deposits of more than 100 million tons of coal.

Labour, too, presents no great problem at the coal mines in the Tokchon area. Last autumn, we assigned 2,500 discharged soldiers to these coal mines, so each mine received some 500. In spite of the fact that the Party's policy is correct, coal abundant and labour available, coal production is unsatisfactory because senior officials have

neglected their duty to organize people to implement the Party's policy, working without any sense of responsibility.

The attitude of the senior officials is so irresponsible that they are not even supplying the coal mines in this area with adequate shovels, pickaxes, jumpers, torches and other small tools, to say nothing of drills, transformers and compressors. Because they have instructed the mines to cut coal, but not supplied small tools and equipment properly, satisfactory production is impossible.

If the officials supervise the work properly, the manufacture and supply of the tools and machinery needed by the coal mines will offer no serious problem. The construction of a satellite, for instance, is a different matter, but it is not difficult to produce torches, shovels, pickaxes, transformers, drills and so on.

Take the drill for example. If they send the coal mines in the Tokchon area an additional 1,500 drills, every tunnelling worker can be given one.

In fact, producing 1,500 drills poses no problem. I have been told that the Jonchon Rock Drill Factory can produce thousands of drills a month. These are more than enough to meet the needs of the Tokchon coal mines. If the Jonchon Rock Drill Factory works hard for only a year, it will be able to provide one drill for every tunnelling worker at all the coal mines throughout the country, not just the Tokchon coal mines.

Some officials say that the failure to produce mining equipment is due to an inadequate supply of steel to mining-machinery plants caused by the fact that they are concentrating on the supply of steel for dry-field irrigation. But this is nothing more than an excuse. If the Jonchon Rock Drill Factory had been provided with enough steel for just a part of last year, they could have produced the drills needed by the Tokchon coal mines a long time ago. The problem is not due to steel being in short supply, but to the negligent attitude of the officials in settling the problem of coal.

The officials of the Administration Council and of the Mining Industry Commission have not properly organized prospecting work

either in the Tokchon area. In order to increase the amount of coal produced by this area, it is imperative to send prospecting teams there and give priority to this work. However, there are only a few workers who are engaged in prospecting to ensure steady mining and expand these existing mines and at each mine only 20 or 30 prospectors are operating in the drift. So, prospecting at the existing mines is not being done satisfactorily and this leads to useless tunnels being dug frequently. The prospecting team that is currently working in the Tokchon area can achieve no results on its own, no matter how competent it is.

In our country, the prospecting force is by no means small. There are tens of thousands of prospecting workers throughout the country. So, all the necessary prospecting could be done. The reason for our current lack of success in prospecting is not because the prospecting force is small, but because it is scattered uselessly in different places. The General Bureau of Geology is not conducting prospecting work where it is needed now, but dispersing prospecting effort over many places without a definite plan, thereby wasting a lot of manpower, equipment and materials.

The Majon Prospecting Team under the General Bureau of Geology is now looking for iron ore in a valley near Kangdong. But this is not an urgent task. More than 10,000 million tons of iron ore deposits have already been discovered in our country. There are inexhaustible deposits of iron ore in Toksong, Kaechon, Sohae-ri and the Musan area. Even if we tried to, we could not mine all the iron ore that has already been found.

When we find new deposits of iron ore, we are not able to mine them immediately. Before mining can begin, we have to build a new railway, lay power cables and undertake a variety of other projects.

However, the officials of the General Bureau of Geology, spurred on by fame-seeking, are scattering prospecting teams here and there, making them scratch the earth uselessly.

The Administration Council is also to blame for the dispersal of prospecting forces. The Administration Council is neglecting to

control and direct geological survey work and, worse still, failing even to sanction a plan for prospecting.

In the past the plenary meetings of the Cabinet examined in detail and approved prospecting plans every year. At present, however, no member of the Administration Council is directing geological surveys with the attitude that befits all masters.

Our officials are also neglecting the arrangements to increase the rate of use of coal-mining equipment.

I have discovered that at the coal mines in the Tokchon area, the rate of operation of the lorries is very low. Although the state has sent a large number of lorries to the coal mines, they stand idle and are not used regularly. In the present circumstances, it would be very difficult for the mines to transport coal to railway stations, even should large quantities of coal be mined.

Of course, the fact that the lorries at these mines are used so little is related also to their poor quality. But, the main reason lies in the fact that the officials are not making strenuous efforts to increase the use of lorries.

Currently, none of the officials is making arrangements for the supply of spare parts for lorries and taking measures for their repair. So there is a lack of spare parts and consequently a good many lorries at the coal mines in the Tokchon area are standing idle.

There is no doubt that our officials are found wanting in the attitude of masters. When there are problems with the economy, many officials do not feel regret, but adopt an indifferent attitude. The fact that our officials do not work properly is not because their ability is poor, but because they lack enthusiasm and the attitude befitting all masters.

Nowhere in the coal-mining industry sector are work norms defined correctly. Tunnelling workers are not told clearly how far to go and the miners how much to dig each day, so that they are working in a happy-go-lucky fashion.

When I visited the Tokchon area recently, I intended to calculate how much additional labour should be sent to the coal mines there before increasing the manpower. However, I could make no accurate

estimate of the labour force because they had no clearly defined work norms. The officials of the Mining Industry Commission and the cadres at the coal mines requested an additional 5,600 workers, after making a calculation by using the antediluvian work norms.

There are no clearly defined work norms in the geological survey sector, either.

At present, senior economic officials are failing to direct lower units properly.

Some officials make their secretaries or subordinates take stock of the situation in the lower units, instead of going themselves to learn and give assistance. Even when they themselves go to the lower units to offer guidance, many officials travel about by car, as if they were on a sightseeing tour and then leave or meet the managers or chief engineers to check some figures before returning, without ever mixing with the producer masses. Their guidance is so perfunctory that they do not know which of the prospecting or technical equipment is to blame for coal not being produced or how the cadres at the coal mines are working. So, clearly they are in no position to adopt measures to increase coal production.

If the officials work in this careless fashion, they will make no contribution to the rapid building of a communist society. In order to build a communist society everyone must work for the society and the collective with the attitude of masters, under the slogan "One for all and all for one".

Senior economic officials must nurture the revolutionary habit of accepting Party policy without question and of carrying it out.

The senior officials of the coal-mining industry must fully implement the Party's policy for increasing coal production and thus bring about a sharp increase in output at the mines in the Tokchon area.

It is one of the most important tasks facing the coal-mining sector at present to increase coal production at these mines and provide the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant with sufficient coal. It must concentrate on the coal mines in the Tokchon area and bring about a radical increase in production, so that the power plant can be run at full capacity.

The prospecting teams at the coal mines in the Tokchon area must be strengthened.

Unless this is done, prospecting will not be conducted properly, nor will useless tunnelling be avoided. Strengthening the prospecting teams at the coal mines in the Tokchon area will not hinder prospecting work in other areas.

The Administration Council and the sectors concerned must send more prospecting teams to the coal mines in the Tokchon area to develop new coal mines on a long-term basis, to ensure steady production at the existing mines, and to operate in the drifts so that priority is given to prospecting and tunnelling and coal production is increased.

In order to increase coal production in this area, we should ensure that materials are supplied efficiently.

The coal mines in this area should be supplied with sufficient technical equipment.

In the same way that soldiers must be fully armed with such combat equipment as weapons and ammunition and such accoutrements as infantryman's shovels and canteens if they are to win a battle, so miners must be fully provided with the equipment and small tools they need if they are to mine large quantities of coal. A miner without the essential equipment and small tools is tantamount to a soldier without a weapon.

The coal mines in the Tokchon area must be provided with enough drills.

The drill is the basic weapon of a tunnelling worker. Therefore, each tunnelling worker should have his own drill. Then, the tunnelling workers can readjust their drills when they finish work and achieve better results during the next shift. If several workers have to use the same drill as they do now, they will be unable to work properly.

We must, without fail, provide each tunnelling worker at the coal mines around Tokchon with one drill.

The men at these coal mines should also be provided with sufficient small tools such as shovels, pickaxes, axes, saws, files, pliers, screwdrivers and oil-cans.

These small tools are to a coal mine what medical appliances such as pincettes, pincers and scissors are to a hospital. Just as a hospital without pincettes, pincers, scissors and other small medical appliances cannot offer good treatment even though it may have a fine collection of such large equipment as X-ray machines, so a coal mine without small tools cannot ensure the smooth production of coal even if it has a lot of large equipment.

I was told that the Anju County People's Hospital had been developed into a modern establishment, so I sent some officials there to examine it. They told me that the hospital was in no position to offer good medical services because it was not equipped with small appliances like pincettes, although large, modern medical equipment such as an X-ray machine was there.

Asking miners to cut coal with only large equipment, whilst neglecting to provide them with shovels, pickaxes, saws, axes, files and other small tools, is little short of ordering soldiers to fight with only artillery pieces. In the case of the axe, for instance, one should be provided for every three setters. This will enable them to carry axes whilst working so they can be used whenever necessary.

The coal mines around Tokchon must also be provided with conveyer-chains, winches to haul timber to be used for roof support, loading machines and other machinery and equipment.

They shall be provided with a 3,200 kva transformer and two 1,800 kva transformers which were to be used for dry-field irrigation. If we fail to produce the coal to run the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant, dry-field irrigation projects will be pointless, however good an irrigation system is set up.

The materials supply agency under the Tokchon Area Management Bureau of the Coal-Mining Industry must repossess the 13 lorries it handed over to the county motor pool.

We must supply materials to these coal mines on request. We must provide them with pig iron, rolled steel, seamless pipes, tungsten steel and any other materials they demand.

The cement needed to build permanent pits should also be supplied.

Permanent pits guarantee the safety of the workforce in the coal mines, ensure a steady output of coal and require less timber.

Because of the importance of creating permanent pits, when I appointed a new chief secretary of the South Phyongan Provincial Party Committee, I told him that his first task was to make the pits in the province permanent by using cement produced at the Pusanri Cement Factory.

The coal mines around Tokchon must be supplied with cement and all the pits that need to be made permanent must be made so.

The supply of technical equipment and materials to the coal mines in the Tokchon area and to the Tukjang Coal Mine must be guaranteed without fail. We are probably not in a position to supply technical equipment and materials to every coal mine in the country at one time. However, it is well within our capabilities to do so for the coal mines in the Tokchon area and the Tukjang Coal Mine.

The Mining Industry Commission, the Ministry of the Metal Industry, the Ministry of the Building-Materials Industry, the Ministry of the Chemical Industry and the Ministry of the Machine Industry must supply technical equipment and materials to the coal mines in the Tokchon area on a preferential basis and without fail.

The coal mines should take good care of their technical equipment and economize in the use of materials.

It is often the practice of our officials to handle state property without care, instead of regarding it as their own and taking good care of it. No matter how much technical equipment and materials the state may supply, it will be like pouring water into a bottomless jar if they are not looked after properly and used economically. Therefore, the ideological education of Party members and other working people should be strengthened so that they learn to value state property.

In addition, coal mines must establish a system of registering equipment and small tools such as shovels, pickaxes, axes, saws and files before they are used. If a tool is damaged, it must be withdrawn and replaced once the cause of the damage has been ascertained.

Any materials, spare parts, tools and the like that have been taken

home by the workers must be recovered.

In the agricultural sector this year, the groups that investigated how the preparations for farming were progressing visited the rural communities to make an inventory of farm tools, in the process of which, they recovered the hoes, shovels and other cooperative property which the farmers had taken home, and this was by no means a small amount. I am told that one farmer at a cooperative farm in Kaechon County returned more than 30 hoes which he had taken and kept at his home.

More equipment can be recovered by conducting efficient political work.

It is reported that recently North and South Phyongan Provinces held meetings for tractor driver activists and conducted good political work amongst them, with the result that the drivers handed back a lot of tractor spare parts. A housewife in Nampho offered three lorry tyres to the state which she had kept after they had fallen off the back of lorries.

There may also be people at the coal mines who have taken home mine property such as axes, saws, shovels and files.

The senior officials at the coal mines must give the workers a reasonable explanation of why they should return all the mine's property which they have taken home. Those people who return the mine's property which they have used at home should not be criticized and branded as selfish. If this were to happen, people may not reveal the mine's property they possess. When the farmer who returned 30 hoes was asked why he had taken so many, he replied that he used to hide a hoe whenever he took it home because he was worried about being criticized as selfish, so I am told. We should not criticize those who return state property, but rather praise them for their action so that anyone who has taken state property will return it without hesitation.

The coal mines should launch a forceful campaign to discover and bring back into service all the scattered or hoarded equipment, spare parts and tools.

We should improve the repair shops at the coal mines in the

Tokchon area. In this way, any broken equipment can be repaired promptly.

The Ministry of the Machine Industry should help in the effort to improve these repair shops and in the work to refit lorries.

Some 600 more workers should be sent to the coal mines in the Tokchon area. These 600 men should be selected from amongst those who will be discharged from military service in April this year. Coal mining runs smoothly when discharged soldiers are working at the mines.

Accurate work norms must be fixed.

This alone will enable the workers to know how much work must be done in a day and to strive towards the goal, and will also make it possible to apply the socialist principle of distribution thoroughly so as to build up their enthusiasm to increase production.

Because it is very important to fix accurate work norms, when I was Premier I ensured that the Cabinet examined and approved the work norms of the different sectors of the national economy every year.

The coal mining sector must fix accurate work norms for all production processes, particularly tunnelling and coal cutting.

All the sectors involved should guarantee that the conditions are favourable for mining in the Tokchon area and fix accurate work norms. Recently, I talked to the workers at these coal mines and they told me that if only enough equipment and materials were provided, a tunnelling platoon could dig as far as 100 or 120 metres a month.

Work norms should be fixed by taking the average of skilful and less skilful workers.

This was the method we used when deciding the work norms for the construction sector in the days of postwar reconstruction. In the case of brick laying, we first calculated how many bricks a highly-skilled worker and less able one could lay, and then took the average to fix the work norm. On the assumption that a highly-skilled worker could lay 1,500 bricks a day and a less able one 700, we averaged these figures out and fixed the work norm at 1,100 bricks.

Once the work norms have been settled, they must not be

considered unchangeable, but renewed ceaselessly in line with the development of science and technology and with the improvement in the expertise of the workers. It would be a good idea for the work norms to be renewed every two or three years. Work norms in special sectors may be fixed every year.

The supply services for the workers at the coal mines in the Tokchon area must be improved.

Whenever I was giving personal guidance in the Tokchon area, I used to stress that, in order to improve the supply of consumer goods, the supply centres should be improved, and I would ensure that the necessary steps were taken. As a result, in Tokchon County, vegetable fields have been prepared well and egg and meat production centres generally improved. Now there is as much as 700 hectares of vegetable fields in this county which are irrigated by sprinklers, as well as large chicken and duck plants. Until a few years ago the county did not know how to grow spinach, so we sent specialists and experts in vegetable growing from Pyongyang.

If it makes effective use of the supply centres that have already been built, Tokchon County will be able to improve the diet of the workers a great deal.

The workers must be provided with sufficient vegetables.

To this end, it is necessary to increase the per-hectare yield of vegetable fields radically.

Tokchon County will have to produce 200 tons of vegetables per hectare as is done in Pyongyang. If the county reaches this goal, 500 hectares of vegetable fields, not 700 hectares, will be enough to supply the workers in the Tokchon area with sufficient vegetables. If vegetables are planted in 500 out of the 700 hectares of the fields, the remaining 200 hectares may be used for other crops.

If we are to increase the per-hectare yield, we should make strenuous efforts to improve the vegetable fields. Tokchon County should mobilize workers and office employees to spread new soil on the vegetable fields on Fridays or Sundays as long as it does not interfere with production.

The workers should be provided with sufficient eggs and meat, too.

Although large chicken and duck plants have been built in Tokchon County, they are not supplying eggs and meat on a regular basis because feed is in short supply. A feed factory must be built in this county. Since farm animals should be fed on a great deal of protein feed, the sources of protein feed should be developed. Tokchon County must build them up so that the chicken and duck plants can produce plenty of eggs and meat for the workers.

Steps should also be taken to supply the workers in the Tokchon area with sufficient cooking oil.

When I visited the Tokchon area recently, I discovered that the supply of cooking oil to the miners was unsatisfactory. So I instructed the Commission of Public Welfare to send seven months' supply of cooking oil to the workers in this area.

South Phyongan Province must sort out the problems at the Pukchang Cornstarch Factory as soon as possible so that it can process 100,000 tons of maize a year. If this factory is operated properly, it will produce sufficient cooking oil to supply the workers in the Tokchon area.

More houses should be built for the workers in the Tokchon area. Soon, 600 discharged soldiers will be sent to work at the coal mines there and each of them must be provided with a house. This is essential if they are to settle down to work.

The Tokchon Area Construction Company should undertake the construction of houses for the workers in the Tokchon area. The company should build these houses before anything else, although it will mean withdrawing from its current undertaking. The Administration Council must guarantee the supply of materials needed for this housing construction.

We must ensure that the conditions are favourable for the workers in the Tokchon area to lead a comfortable life.

There are coal miners, car workers, the builders working on the construction of the Taedonggang Power Station and many other workers who are engaged in heavy labour living in Tokchon County.

However, proper entertainment facilities have not been prepared in this county, which means that the workers' life is very monotonous. Coal miners must be provided with entertainment after their day's work, if they are to relieve their fatigue and enjoy a pleasant life, something which they cannot do at present. Because there is no theatre in the county, the workers cannot even enjoy revolutionary opera. There are not enough TV sets, so only a few people watch television. This is because the officials of the South Phyongan Provincial Party Committee and other officials concerned are indifferent to the entertainment of the workers in the Tokchon area.

The provincial Party committee and the relevant sectors must provide facilities for Tokchon County so that the workers have the benefit of entertainment after their daily work, in order for them to relieve their fatigue and enjoy a pleasant and optimistic life.

The theatre which is now under construction in Tokchon County should be completed at the earliest possible date.

When I visited the Sungni General Motor Works in 1974, I assigned Tokchon County the task of building a modern theatre. Afterwards, the county began to build a theatre bigger than the one in Anju, but has not yet completed it. Because there are large numbers of workers living in this county, there must be a good theatre.

The Economy Commission of the Central People's Committee and South Phyongan Province must concentrate on the construction of the Tokchon theatre, so that it is completed this year.

The Ministry of Culture and Art and the Tokchon Area Coal Mining Complex must offer active assistance to the construction of the theatre. We shall ensure that all the equipment and materials needed to complete the theatre are provided.

Once the Tokchon theatre is completed, central art troupes and the South Phyongan Provincial Art Troupe must be sent there to give performances for all the workers in the Tokchon area. A bus service should be provided for the workers who live a long way from the theatre to take them to the performances. In this way, the workers' life will become happier.

I have been told that the old people in Anju are delighted that a theatre has been built there and that the South Phyongan Provincial Art Troupe puts on performances.

When the Tokchon theatre is finished and begins to put on performances, I will pay it a visit.

A lot of TV sets should be produced and supplied to the workers in the Tokchon area.

Since the Taedonggang Communications Equipment Factory is situated in South Phyongan Province, the workers in the Tokchon area can be provided with as many TV sets as they want if careful arrangements are made. The province must encourage the workers at this factory to produce extra TV sets for the workers in the Tokchon area.

In future, we shall send TV sets to the coal mines as a reward for successful work.

Effective measures should be taken to transport the coal produced by the collieries in the Tokchon area to the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant.

If this plant is to run at full capacity, it must be provided with six million tons of coal annually and, when more generators are installed, it will need more coal.

However, no effective measures have yet been taken to transport coal to the plant. If we fail to carry it, the coal produced by the collieries in the Tokchon area will be useless, no matter how much is mined.

In order to carry the coal needed by the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant promptly, it is imperative to use the railways in a rational way. Because the distance between Tokchon and Pukchang is not so great, it will be fully possible to transport the required amount of coal to the power plant by rail alone, if careful arrangements are made.

The Ministry of Railways must ensure that a larger quantity of coal is carried to this plant by organizing its transportation properly.

It would be best if the railway between Tokchon and Pukchang was electrified.

The Pukchang Thermal Power Plant must be provided with a

domestically produced wagon-tipper. We could import it, but we are short of foreign currency and, moreover, it will take too long to order and buy it from abroad. Because we have the blueprints for it, we should make it ourselves. If steel is in short supply in April and May, we must make thorough preparations during those months by examining the blueprints more closely, and start building it later.

In order to ensure a smooth supply of coal to the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant, rail transport alone is not enough. If we rely only on trains, an accident on the railway would be a very serious matter. Relying only on one method is not stable. In addition to rail transport, therefore, other means of transport should be used.

A cableway must be built between the Jenam Coal Mine and the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant.

I assigned this task a few years ago during my tour of personal guidance in the Tokchon area, and the cableway project was undertaken for a while before being abandoned.

Carrying coal by cableway requires neither labour for loading and unloading nor loading equipment, and transportation is easier.

The Ministry of the Power Industry must make immediate preparations for building the cableway between the Jenam Coal Mine and the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant so that the project can be started in two or three months' time and completed within the year. If we were to try and start the project right away, we would find it impossible because first the coal mines in the Tokchon area must be supplied with equipment and materials.

Measures should also be taken to transport coal by road.

Since the distance from these mines to the power plant is not far, a good means of transporting coal is by lorry. Roads should be well laid so that lorries with trailers can carry coal intensively when there are problems with rail and cableway transport.

We should also study the matter of transporting coal by ship.

If either one or two barrages are constructed on the Taedong River between Tokchon and Pukchang, it will become possible to transport coal by ship.

During the war I told the lecturers and students of Kim Il Sung University to draft a plan to build a canal connecting the East and West Seas of our country. They drew up a plan and brought it to me and I found it most satisfactory.

Before this is built, we may construct a canal between Tokchon and Pukchang to test the feasibility of the plan drawn up by the university. A canal between Tokchon and Pukchang will solve one major transportation problem. Canal transport is, in many respects, better than rail or road transport. But a great deal of labour is needed to construct a canal. Transporting the coal produced by the coal mines in the Tokchon area by water to the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant should be set as a long-term objective and studied in greater depth.

The role and functions of the Party committees at factories and enterprises must be improved.

To this end, the tendency of the secretaries to take administrative affairs upon themselves must be eliminated and they must be induced to make greater efforts in Party work.

As for the way in which Party secretaries should work, I explained this fully when I presented the Taean work system. A Party secretary should offer active assistance to a manager by applying Party methods after his Party committee had discussed and decided on the measures that will be taken to carry out the Party's economic policy. In other words, the Party secretaries at factories and enterprises must mobilize the cadres, Party members and other working people in the implementation of this policy through the Party organizations and working people's organizations there.

I have always emphasized most strongly that Party secretaries at factories and enterprises should not do administrative work for others, particularly when I was giving personal guidance in North Hamgyong Province last year.

However, this practice has not yet been eliminated. During my recent visit to the Tokchon area, I found that the Party secretaries at many factories and enterprises were neglecting Party work, work with the people, and instead were taking upon themselves administrative

and economic matters, playing the role of a manager. The way they were acting was so bad that I could not distinguish whether they were Party secretaries or factory managers.

I cannot understand why Party secretaries take administrative matters upon themselves and become engrossed in working as a manager instead of doing Party work.

This is currently the greatest failing in Party work at factories and enterprises. Needless to say, Party work is more difficult than administrative and economic matters because it involves working with people. Even so, Party secretaries must never undertake administrative work for others, instead of conducting work with the people.

At present, because Party secretaries are taking over the administration and running the whole show, administrative and economic personnel are not displaying their creativity, nor are they working with the attitude of being masters. Since they are neglecting to work with the people, Party secretaries are unable to help the officials to rectify their shortcomings. During my recent stay in the Tokchon area an analysis was made of the shortcomings manifested amongst administrative and economic officials, and the results showed me that these could easily have been remedied if the Party secretaries had conducted their work with the people properly. When looking closely at those people who had committed errors, I found that there was no one who had done so intentionally. However, they made mistakes because the Party secretaries failed to correct them, concentrating only on arranging administrative affairs.

We must see to it that this year a strong wind blows amongst Party secretaries to eliminate the practice of taking administrative affairs upon themselves, and this will bring about a fundamental change in Party work at factories and enterprises.

A vigorous ideological campaign must be conducted among the Party secretaries at factories and enterprises to counter the practices of abusing the Party's authority and performing the functions of administrative officials.

Any of those Party secretaries who continue to undertake the duties

of administrative personnel instead of doing Party work must be transferred to administrative or economic posts. Those who neglect Party work and prefer to perform administrative and economic tasks are not qualified to be Party officials.

The senior officials at coal and other mines must acquire the revolutionary habit of going down the pits to manage and direct the work.

On my recent tour of coal mines in the Tokchon area I discovered many managers and pit leaders who failed to go down the pits to manage and direct the work. So I examined them. Some were unable to do so because of old age or illness and others kept away from the pits because they were reluctant or timid about entering. Just as an officer who cannot command on the battlefield is useless, so a mine official who cannot manage and direct the work at the pit is not qualified to be an official of a coal mine.

An officer must organize and command his men in battle, mixing with them and sharing life and death and joy and sorrow with them. As for the manager of a coal mine, he must go down a pit every day, by following the routine of visiting this one today and that one tomorrow; at the same time, he must have a general grasp of affairs at the mine. In this way alone can he understand the true situation, and thus give effective guidance and raise the morale of the workers.

An official who used to be the manager of the Aoji Coal Mine made it a routine to make the rounds of a pit either every morning before breakfast or every evening. If he found something dangerous on his way, he would instruct the workers to take certain measures immediately. And after leaving the pit he would organize the work in detail to solve any problems. Because he managed and directed the work after looking round the pits himself, the morale of the workers at this coal mine was high and their work was successful whilst he was there.

When I visited the Aoji Coal Mine, the workers told me that they felt confident after the manager had made his rounds of the pits.

By improving the education of the senior officials at collieries and

other mines, we shall persuade them to establish the revolutionary habit of directing production on site.

Tough young men should be appointed to the mines as senior officials. There are a lot of former soldiers currently working at the mines and we should trust them and not hesitate to give them responsible jobs. There is nothing mysterious about mining coal or iron ore. If former soldiers who have worked in the pits for about three years are appointed to the post of pit leader or manager, they will perform their duties well.

Officials must be encouraged to observe the law strictly.

The strict observance of the law of the land is the duty of every citizen. It is only when all the members of society abide by the law and obey all orders and directives that we can ensure unity of action and achieve success in the revolution and construction. Otherwise, the state itself cannot be maintained, let alone the revolution and construction.

At present, however, in many cases, our officials are violating the law and order of the land. Some officials are failing to implement the state plan and, even when they do implement it, they do so in a very perfunctory manner and even go so far as to tell lies to the Party and the state. Some of our officials do not observe basic discipline, and act at their own discretion.

We must conduct a vigorous ideological campaign amongst our officials so that they establish the rigorous discipline of observing in full state law and order and obeying orders and directives without question.

Recently I visited the coal mines in the Tokchon area to give personal guidance and took a number of measures for increasing the production of coal at these mines.

I made additional labour available to the prospecting team at the coal mines in the Tokchon area, found a solution to the problem of the technical equipment and manpower they were short of and took steps to improve transportation.

Recently we established the Tokchon Area Coal Mining Complex which comprises the collieries which supply the Pukchang Thermal

Power Plant, the geological prospecting teams in the Tokchon area and a factory for repairing coal mining machinery and appointed a manager, chief engineer and chief Party secretary to it.

If the work of this complex is good, the supply of coal to the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant will be smooth. Toksong and Jenam Coal Mines and Sochang Youth Coal Mine, of those which form this complex, can each increase their output of coal to the level of two million tons a year. If they do this, they will be able to provide all the coal the power plant needs. If the coal produced at the Tukjang Coal Mine is added to the amount, there will be no difficulty in the supply of coal to the power plant, even though its capacity may be increased by hundreds of thousands of kilowatts. The Tukjang Coal Mine has reached the level of producing two million tons now. Its officials are working very well.

The Organizational Leadership Department of the Party Central Committee, the South Phyongan Provincial Party Committee, the Mining Industry Commission and other bodies concerned should offer efficient help to the officials at the Tokchon Area Coal Mining Complex so that they settle into their work.

Good work must be done to encourage the whole country to become involved in solving the problems facing the complex, including satisfying its demands for technical equipment and materials. We must make every effort to ensure that the coal production base in the Tokchon area is solid and thus the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant will be able to generate electricity using a stockpile of coal that will last more than a month.

The power plant must check and repair its generating equipment regularly and enhance the responsibility of the machine operators, thereby completely eliminating fluctuations in the output of power.

Eight large gears for a ball mill which will be used to crush coal must be made at the Ryongsong Machine Factory and sent to the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant. The casting shop of the Sungni General Motor Works must continue to mould balls for some time to come.

In the same way that we took certain measures to assist the coal mines in the Tokchon area this time we should concentrate next time on the mines in the Kaechon area that provide coal for the Pyongyang Thermal Power Plant, then on the Anju General Coal Mine which supplies the Chongchongang Thermal Power Plant and then on the coal mines in the Sunchon area. In this way, we shall strengthen one major coal mining area after another by the tactics of finishing-one-thing-at-a-time.

Since it is difficult to solve the problems at every colliery at the same time, we should first provide the coal mines in the Tokchon area with technical equipment and materials and then establish mining complexes and supply them with technical equipment and materials intensively, in the following order, the mines in the Kaechon area, the Anju General Coal Mine and the coal mines in the Sunchon area.

The directing team dispatched to the coal mines in the Kaechon area has begun to study the situation, but the situation there, at the Anju General Coal Mine and at the coal mines in the Sunchon area will differ only slightly from that at the coal mines in the Tokchon area.

Because the mines in the Kaechon area fail to produce and supply coal regularly nowadays, the Pyongyang Thermal Power Plant, too, is operating on a day-to-day or hour-to-hour basis.

If a complex comprising several collieries is established in the Kaechon area and provided with plenty of technical equipment and materials so as to increase the rate of coal production to three million tons annually, the Pyongyang Thermal Power Plant will also be able to generate electricity without difficulty.

We must try to ensure that the thermal power plants are provided with stocks of coal to last a week at first, then 15 days and then one month.

Essentially, to conform with Party policy, reserves of coal sufficient for three months should exist; a month and a half's supply at the production site and a month and a half's where it is consumed. In this way alone will production become stable. However, presently we have many problems, such as finding somewhere to store coal, so it is

difficult to keep three months' coal supply in reserve. For the time being, we should make efforts to establish a month's reserve; ten days' at the production site and 20 days' at the thermal power plants.

Now, I should like to refer briefly to the construction of the Taedonggang Power Station.

Ever since the war I have been thinking about the construction of a power station on the Taedong River.

If this station is built, the city of Pyongyang will be protected from flooding. In the summer of 1967 Pyongyang was flooded because of heavy rainfall and the rising tide in the West Sea. If the Taedonggang Power Station is built, Pyongyang will be protected from flooding, because we will be able to impound a vast quantity of water in the reservoir at the station.

With the construction of the Taedonggang Power Station, more electricity will be generated and, in particular, Pyongyang will be supplied with additional electric power. I have been told that the electric frequency falls in Pyongyang when the factories and other industrial establishments and houses use a great deal of power. When the Taedonggang Power Station is generating electricity, additional electric power will be supplied to Pyongyang regularly so that we shall not only avoid a fall in the frequency, but also be able to use electricity more liberally.

Through building this power station, the problem of cooling water for the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant will also be solved.

With the construction of this station, damage caused by salt water will be avoided and the scenic beauty of Pyongyang will be improved. At present, the bed of the Taedong River is exposed in the dry season and sea water reaches as far as the Okryu Bridge, and this causes both a problem to power production at the Pyongyang Thermal Power Plant and difficulties in farming.

Last year on the Chongsan Cooperative Farm in Kangso County the yield of rice crop was low because of damage caused by salt water.

If the Taedonggang Power Station can control the water in the future so that it flows more regularly, the level of the Taedong River

will rise and this will check the advance of sea water and allow ships to sail normally on the river. The Taedong River, if its level is constantly high, will look very picturesque. We must accelerate the construction of this power station so that it can begin operating at the earliest possible date.

When I visited the station recently, I found that construction was not going smoothly. This is partly because the equipment and materials are not supplied on time, but mainly because a problem has arisen in dealing with underground cavities.

In building the dam for the Taedonggang Power Station it is important that these cavities are dealt with skilfully. Unless this problem is overcome, the solidity and safety of the dam cannot be guaranteed. Since the dam is located in the upper reaches of the river which runs through Pyongyang, it is like someone having a water jar on his head. If one misses one's footing whilst carrying a water jar on the head, one will be showered with water. Likewise, if the dam of the Taedonggang Power Station breaks because it is not constructed properly, Pyongyang will be flooded. Therefore, the dam must be strong enough to resist any effort to break it.

Whatever the circumstances it is difficult to build a dam for a hydroelectric power station, and the construction of the dam at the Taedonggang Power Station is all the more difficult because the site is in a limestone area. Water escapes in a limestone area because of the many caves and cavities.

Since the time when the Taedonggang Power Station was designed, I have been very concerned about the question of how to deal with the cavities. I appointed some scientists to research this matter and sent them abroad to learn the right method of dealing with it.

There is a suggestion that the rock bed on which the dam is to be erected should be drilled to wash the cavities and inject mortar into them. This method, however, will not eliminate the problem of cavities completely. Even if all the cavities are filled in this way, it is still not reliable. We are in no position to guarantee that water will not leak through the cavities in the future when the reservoir at the power

station is full and the hydraulic pressure increases.

I think it would be safe to take the bold step of removing the whole limestone bed where there are cavities. There is a saying that people demolish a mountain to wall off the sea, so we are quite capable of removing the limestone bed, if we set to it with determination.

However, the point is how large an area of the rock bed needs to be removed to eliminate all the cavities which might affect the dam.

There are two estimates; one is to remove the rock bed to a depth of 30 metres and the other to 50 metres. Further discussion is necessary to decide which one is more reasonable. If the rock bed is removed to a depth of 50 metres, the dam will be durable and safe. However, this will require a lot of manpower, materials and time. If the rock bed is removed to a depth of 30 metres, not so much work will be required and the project will not take so long, but the problem is whether the solidity and safety of the dam can be guaranteed.

If all the cavities which may weaken the solidity of the dam can be eliminated by removing the rock bed to a depth of only 30 metres, we should choose this method. So, we must check this method again, to see whether it is really safe.

I think it is advisable to gather scientists, technicians and the officials concerned and hold a debate on the problem of dealing with the cavities and the safety of the dam. In this debate the problem should be raised in such a way that the people attending are encouraged to put their views freely and a good atmosphere created. In the debate senior officials must not hold to their opinions or dictate them to others. If this happens, the other people will not express their own opinions or may follow the senior officials blindly. If this is the case, the debate will fail to achieve its purpose and the dam project at the Taedonggang Power Station will not succeed.

About 10 years ago, a hospital diagnosed an official's illness as gastric cancer and suggested that an operation should be performed on him.

Because I could not believe that he had gastric cancer, I arranged a doctors' consultation to discuss the problem more widely. Many

doctors took part in the consultation and I listened to all their opinions, without saying a word myself. The chief of the medical department of one hospital stated that it was a case of gastric cancer, so most of the others agreed with him. However, only one person offered a different opinion. A roentgenologist from a People's Army hospital stood up and said that he could not regard it as gastric cancer. So I took time to think the matter over again. It was December 31. If that official's disease was really gastric cancer, he had to undergo an operation immediately in the New Year. I felt quite uneasy and thought it over in the car on my way to the provinces. Although only one man had expressed a diverse opinion at the consultation, I could not ignore it. At midnight I rang up the Minister of Foreign Affairs and instructed him to fetch doctors from a particular foreign country. The next day that country sent us several famous doctors by air. According to their diagnosis, the official's disease was not gastric cancer.

If I had not listened carefully to one doctor's views, something terrible would have happened.

During the debate on the problem of dealing with cavities in the construction of the Taedonggang Power Station, we must also listen to all the scientists carefully. Even if one person were to suggest that the dam would not be durable if the rock bed was removed to a depth of 30 metres, we should listen to his opinion. If the argument rings true that the removal of 30 metres of the rock bed would not guarantee the solidity and safety of the dam, we should take out the bed to a depth of 50 metres, not 30 metres.

We should not be concerned about the additional use of tens of thousands of tons of cement or about one or two years' delay in the project. We should choose the safest and most reliable way. The dam of the Taedonggang Power Station must by all means be built, according to a far-sighted plan.

The machines and equipment needed to build the station must be supplied. Ten machine tools, including lathes, must also be supplied to the Youth Power Station Construction Company.

**ON THE GENERAL MOBILIZATION
OF THE PARTY, THE ARMY AND THE PEOPLE
IN A CAMPAIGN TO PREVENT DAMAGE
FROM DROUGHT BROUGHT
ABOUT BY THE COLD FRONT**

**Concluding Speech at the 13th Plenary Meeting
of the Fifth Central Committee
of the Workers' Party of Korea**

April 5, 1977

We are currently experiencing a severe drought brought about by the cold front.

A little rain fell early last autumn, but ever since then it has hardly rained at all for seven or eight months, and little snow has fallen. As a result, the soil is dry to a depth of 10 or 15 centimetres and the water level in the reservoirs is low.

Now that the cold front has brought a long spell of dry weather, if we make no effort to prevent the drought from causing any problems, there will be a severe effect on farming and other industries will also have difficulties. So, this plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee has been discussing a vigorous campaign to prevent the damage that might be caused by the drought under the influence of the cold front, through a general mobilization of the Party, the army and the people.

Many people throughout the world are now suffering because of famine, coupled with a water shortage. According to the foreign press,

1,200 million people around the world do not have enough water to drink, and 25,000 die of thirst every day.

Britain suffered a terrible drought last year. Apparently a capitalist wept, saying that the water in Britain had dried up and nothing but tears remained. The United States, where the irrigation system is said to be good, is also suffering from a drought. It is said that in some American states bottled water is sold at 89 cents per gallon because of the lack of drinking water. The water problem has been so serious in all parts of the world that the United Nations even held a congress on water a short time ago.

The whole world is crying out about the drought. Nevertheless, the people in our country have so far experienced no great problems with water because we completed our irrigation system long ago. But the prolonged spell of dry weather has recently caused a water shortage in some regions of our country, too. When I went to give personal guidance in the Tokchon area, South Phyongan Province, a short time ago, I discovered that on one cooperative farm in the highlands drinking water was scarce and had to be fetched a long way by lorry. I have been told that Jaeryong and Anak Counties, South Hwanghae Province, too, were short of drinking water. So I ensured that water from one reservoir was made available. Apparently, North Hamgyong Province, too, may experience a water shortage in those areas where pumping facilities are inadequate, if the drought continues.

When our country, where a good irrigation system has been built, experiences a water shortage, I think it is no exaggeration to say that tens of thousands of people are dying every day because of a lack of water in those countries where the irrigation is poor.

Data reveals that the abnormal weather conditions brought about by the cold front will probably persist until the year 2000. Meteorologists in the Soviet Union, Japan, the United States, West Germany and France concur.

Since the drought and the abnormal weather conditions are expected to last a long time, the prevention of damage caused by drought and a satisfactory solution to the problem of water are very

serious and important matters that our Party, which is responsible for the fate of the people, cannot afford to neglect.

Since the abnormal weather conditions are expected to last until the year 2000, simply taking short-term measures to deal with the drought is not a complete solution. In addition, we should take far-sighted measures. It is only when we take short-term and long-term measures in conjunction that we will be able to avoid damage and ensure a secure life for the people, even though the cold front may stay with us for a long time.

At the moment the whole world is making a big fuss about solving the water problem—digging wells, using waste water and adjusting waterways. However, our officials are taking this problem lightly, showing no serious concern for the dry weather. Roughly speaking, their attitude is that no drought will catch them out because even if the sky were to fall there would be a hole somewhere through which they could escape.

I am informed that recently the Information and Publicity Department of the Party Central Committee had arranged lectures, newspaper articles and radio and television broadcasts on the serious famine and water shortage that many countries are facing due to the influence of the cold front, but that there was no response from officials or the masses. If they were informed, they would naturally realize that the cold front may also affect our country and they would take the initiative in a drive to resist its influence. However, neither the leading officials nor the masses have an understanding of the need to take positive measures against drought, and are failing to put any great effort into dealing with the dry weather.

It is because they know nothing about the cold front and have not suffered from drought that our workers are not participating willingly in the struggle against the drought.

More than 30 years have passed since liberation and in that time not one person has ever died for want of food or water in our country. Before liberation our peasants had many problems with water. Immediately after liberation we went to Yoltusamcholli Plain where

we saw peasants nibbling young rice plants because there was no water. We soon ensured that a major irrigation project was started and after forming agricultural cooperations, we set irrigation as the first task of the rural technical revolution and pushed it forward. As a result, our country has had a comprehensive irrigation system for a long time and, thanks to this, our people have so far lived with no cares about water and free from damage brought about by a drought.

The children of the rich are not aware of what death by starvation means because they have never experienced hunger and in the same way our workers are unwilling to believe that around the world tens of thousands of people are dying every day for lack of drinking water, because they have never experienced any problems with water. Many of our workers do not believe that people could be dying for lack of drinking water, however severe the drought may be. This misguided view about the cold front is an obstacle in the fight against the drought.

On no account should you underestimate the severity of the cold front or neglect the fight to overcome it. As I said at the recent joint session of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee, the Central People's Committee and the Administration Council, when you draw up farming plans or organize any work pertaining to agriculture, you should begin by considering the cold front and emphasize the need to overcome the drought, flooding and frost it may cause.

In recent years, the cold front has brought abrupt climatic changes and abnormal weather conditions which could not have been forecast even by meteorological observation. The year before last, snow fell in May in America and in August around Moscow. Last year drought, unprecedented in its severity, affected France and many other European countries. These abnormal weather conditions have caused considerable harm in many countries.

The cold front is exerting an influence on the climate in our country, too. The alternation of three cold days and four warm days, a major characteristic of the weather here, ceased and last winter there was a long spell of very cold weather. Since the weather is now very

changeable, no one can be sure that it will not snow in our country in June or even in August, nor can we be certain that the dry season will not last until August or September. You should not simply consider it someone else's problem that the whole world is suffering from drought and a water shortage. Bearing in mind that our country may also be affected, you should take firm measures in advance to avert any possible damage.

Firstly, all officials and working people should have a clear understanding of the nature of the cold front and be mobilized to join the campaign willingly to prevent the abnormal weather conditions causing any harm.

The media should continue to remind people of the fact that there is a food crisis and water shortage worldwide, and leading officials should go among the masses to give lectures and explanations. Thus, the whole Party and army and all the people shall turn out together in the campaign to overcome the influence of the cold front and make adequate preparations to cope with a severe drought.

In order to prevent any damage from drought, we should complete the comprehensive irrigation of our dry fields.

At the 12th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Party last year, we put forward the five-point policy for harnessing nature and took the decision to launch a mass campaign to undertake dry-field irrigation projects. All the Party members and other working people, upholding this decision, have worked hard and completed projects to irrigate 100,000 hectares of dry fields in a little over five months.

True, the target of irrigating 150,000 hectares set at the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee could not be fully met, because last winter the weather was unusually bitter and the earth was frozen to a depth of 1.5-2 metres. However, never before have we completed projects to irrigate 100,000 hectares of dry fields in a single winter in order to prevent damage from a drought; it is a success we can be proud of. It has been proved in practice that our Party's policy was absolutely sound.

With a view to overcoming the influence of the cold front and reaching the target of producing 8.5 million tons of grain this year and, further, the target of 10 million tons ahead of schedule, we should maintain the offensive to establish comprehensive dry-field irrigation, based on the success we have already achieved.

There are still 300,000 hectares of dry fields to be irrigated in our country. For the absolute prevention of damage from drought, it is essential to complete the irrigation of these 300,000 hectares.

In order to make a success of irrigation and overcome any severe drought, it is essential to launch a powerful campaign to tap groundwater.

Although many major irrigation projects have been undertaken in our country, few attempts have been made to pump water from underground. Of course, major irrigation is important, but on its own it is not enough to deal with a prolonged drought. In a situation where the drought persists, as is happening now, and we do not know when the next rainfall will come, the only way to deal with the drought is to make use of groundwater.

Whilst stepping up the current dry-field irrigation projects so that they are completed by the end of April, we should launch a major campaign to make use of groundwater.

Although water cannot be found above ground level when the weather is very dry, there is a great deal below. I have been told that wherever we try, by digging down just 30 metres, water can be found. In South Hwanghae Province, I hear, water can be found anywhere at a depth of between five and eight metres. Our country has plenty of groundwater because we have many rivers and the rainfall is heavy, so that a lot of water sinks into the soil. Therefore, if we make better use of groundwater we shall readily survive any drought.

Quite a few countries are using a great deal of groundwater. Apparently, one country has sunk as many as 140,000 wells. Some countries find 30 per cent of their water for irrigation underground.

We should take a decisive step in the direction of using larger quantities of groundwater. A long time ago I suggested digging wells

and sinking pointed pipes. However, our workers have not made any great effort to use groundwater because they have never been particularly short of water.

The whole Party, army and all the people should work hard to sink wells and pipes. All the dry fields where there is no ready access to reservoirs should be irrigated in this way. The 12th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Party set the task of irrigating 400,000 hectares of dry fields; half to be irrigated from reservoirs, the remainder from water drawn from below the ground.

Digging wells and sinking pipes requires only a few materials and a little money. Stone, a little cement and pipes are all that is needed. If we make use of groundwater by digging wells and sinking pipes, we shall save a lot more money and materials than if we build large irrigation systems. According to data from abroad, to draw on and use water from below the ground takes only a tenth of the money and materials required by large irrigation projects. Moreover, groundwater is used where it is obtained, so there will be neither evaporation nor loss through seepage.

Before anything else, many wells must be sunk.

Wells will provide us with a lot of water, require little effort and will solve the pressing water problem. When we visited Onchon County, South Phyongan Province, a few years ago, the officials there told us that there was a shortage of drinking water, so we instructed them to use groundwater. So they sank wells and completely solved their problem of drinking water.

Sinking a well is not a difficult matter. All that is needed are spades, picks and labour.

All the people should be enlisted in a mass movement to dig wells.

As an immediate measure, every farm workteam should launch a drive right now to dig two or three wells, or more if possible. If 10,000 workteams in every part of the country, excluding those areas where there is plenty of water, dig two wells each, this will mean that 20,000 wells are sunk in all.

It is best to make the wells as wide and as deep as possible. If the

wells are deep and between 1 and 2 metres across, plenty of water can be obtained and a single well can water three hectares without difficulty. A well should be sunk at every place where water can be obtained within a depth of 30 metres. I have been told that this is what is done in other countries.

The materials needed for the wells should be obtained extensively from local sources. You should not intend simply to use materials supplied by the state. The walls of the wells should be built with stone where there is any, otherwise cement or earthen pipes should be used. In the mountainous areas wooden pipes can be used. In this way many wells can be made quickly without the need for the state to supply materials.

In addition to digging many wells, you should sink a lot of pipes.

At present Thoejo County in South Hamgyong Province, Anak County in South Hwanghae Province, Uiju County in North Phyongan Province and some other areas are using water that has been obtained through pipes that have been driven into the ground. I have heard that in Anak County 74 pipes were driven to a depth of between six and seven metres to water 300 hectares of paddy fields. In Uiju County too, the quantity of water that has been made available through pipes driven to a depth of seven to ten metres is by no means small and a single pipe irrigates half a hectare of dry field.

An energetic campaign should be conducted in all regions to sink pipes.

Ten thousand pipes should be sunk in the next few months. The 400 boring machines that belong to the geological prospecting sector should be enlisted for sinking pipes. Since a boring machine can drill six holes for pipes in a month, 400 boring machines, enlisted for a month, can drill 2,400 holes, and in three months, 7,200. Careful organization and hard work should make it possible to insert 10,000 pipes in three months or so, starting from April.

The pipes should reach down to a considerable depth. Wells should be dug to a depth of 30 metres and pipes should be driven down to between 30 and 150 metres.

The pipes should be made of various materials. Although, of course, you do need seamless tubes when boring, once the boring has been completed, cement or earthen and wooden pipes can be inserted. So you should not simply demand cast iron pipes or seamless tubes, but introduce cement or earthen and wooden pipes wherever possible. It is also recommended to use pipes made from scrap P.V.C.

Resources should be tapped and creative initiative used throughout the country to suit the local conditions so that wells can be dug and pipes driven in everywhere. Of course, there is no need to set a uniform number of wells and pipes for all teams. In those areas where water is scarce, the workteams will have a little more to do, but less elsewhere, depending on the situation. Anyhow, wells or pipes should be sunk in every dry field that could suffer in a drought. In order to water all the terraced fields in the mountainous areas, wells or pipes should be sunk nearby. In this way you should ensure that not the smallest part of a field will be harmed in a drought.

Even though they are completely irrigated, the paddy fields in such areas as Ryongchon and Yomju Counties in North Phyongan Province and Jungsan and Onchon Counties and Nampho in South Phyongan Province which rely on the reservoir at the far end of the canals or are a long way from the sources of water, will also experience a water shortage if the resources are depleted. Therefore, wells and pipes should be sunk at the edges of the paddy fields to cover for any water shortage.

In Songchon or Kaechon County, South Phyongan Province, where the paddy fields contain a lot of sand, wells should be dug or pipes sunk at the edges of the fields, thus keeping them safe in a drought.

The provincial rural economy committees and the county cooperative farm management committees should draw up a plan for digging wells and sinking pipes after making a detailed study of individual fields and then advance this work rapidly.

Once wells have been dug and pipes sunk, it is not difficult to draw on groundwater. A 2-4 inch pump and a small engine will do the job.

If you obtain plenty of water through an intensive campaign to dig

wells and sink pipes, you will be able to water a large area of dry fields and bring about a marked increase in grain production. Assuming that 20,000 wells are dug around the country, they will water 60,000 hectares of fields, given that each one can water three hectares. And, if 10,000 pipes are sunk, a further 30,000 hectares will be watered. If we add to this the area of dry fields watered by pools, we will be able to supply water to over 100,000 hectares. Therefore, the 100,000 hectares that have already been irrigated and the fields which will be watered from the wells, pipes and pools will together mean that 200,000 hectares of dry fields are irrigated. Two hundred thousand hectares of irrigated fields alone will mean a great increase in grain production. When maize fields are watered, eight tons per hectare can be yielded without difficulty. So, 200,000 hectares of irrigated dry fields will provide us with 1.6 million tons of maize. This is marvellous.

We should make every effort to reach the goal of irrigating 200,000 hectares of dry fields by the summer. Of course, we should continue the campaign to sink wells and pipes in the future; the longer we do so, the better.

A drive should also be launched to use groundwater for drinking and for industry.

The Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex, the Nampho Smeltery and other industrial establishments should use groundwater in addition to what they already use in production. If you employ only reservoir or river water in industry, you will not find a complete solution to the problem of industrial water.

In cities, county towns and workers' districts, groundwater should be used widely for drinking.

In the People's Army, too, an effort should be made to use groundwater for drinking. This will be quite possible on the plains, though somewhat difficult at the top of hills.

In order to launch an energetic campaign to exploit groundwater as a movement of all the people, it is important to provide everything needed in good time.

The geological surveyors should spend two months on a thorough

geophysical examination of the land according to a good plan in order to decide the position of each well. Fixing the site of a well needs no specifications. All that is required is to mark where we will find water and how far down.

The Administration Council should provide 400 tractors for the geological surveyors for their boring machines.

The Administration Council should also take steps to mass-produce the new *Chollima*-model boring machines made at the Jangnim Prospecting Machine Factory. This boring machine is made as a trailer for the *Chollima* tractor and uses power from its engine, and it can, I am told, bore to a depth of 50 metres. The *Chollima*-model boring machines can be made easily with only a small amount of materials. The Administration Council should provide the design and materials for the Ministry of the Machine Industry, the Agricultural Commission, the provincial rural economy committees and the county cooperative farm management committees so that these boring machines can be produced and see to it that the cogwheels they need are cut.

The Administration Council should also take steps to supply the small pumps and engines which draw the water. With sufficient materials, every farm machine station can make two, three or four-inch pumps. Our country is now producing large quantities of various kinds of large and small engines, so the small engines needed for pumping water can readily be supplied. And once the rice seedlings and humus-grown maize seedlings have been bedded out, you can make use of the rice-transplanting machines and some tractors, too, for drawing groundwater.

Whilst making vigorous efforts to use subsurface water, you should push ahead with projects to build reservoirs.

The construction of the Jaeryonggang and other reservoirs should be completed quickly, and the construction of large reservoirs under a long-term plan should also be promoted.

From now on, the system should be changed so that the water from large reservoirs is used chiefly to irrigate the tidelands that are to be

reclaimed and the dry fields in inland regions should use groundwater.

With an eye to preventing the drought causing damage, it is important to find and make use of new water resources and, at the same time, make economies in our use of water as much as possible.

At the moment the agricultural sector is using water without any control, and a lot is being wasted, instead of being valued.

The water for irrigation used in our farm villages is very valuable, because it is electricity that is used to pump up most of it. The cost of 10,000 cubic metres of water lifted by electricity is 143 *won*. Therefore, it can be said that the water for irrigation in our country is electricity and therefore gold. The waste of water is tantamount to a waste of electricity, or throwing away good money.

Because of the drought caused by the cold front, electricity is not being generated properly, so that the power situation in our country is very serious at the moment. As a result, even the factories which produce essential consumer goods are not being supplied with sufficient electric power. Despite the extremely difficult power situation, the Party and the state ensure electricity supplies to the rural communities to the utmost so that the reservoirs are filled. Agricultural workers should naturally endeavour to save every drop of water, but some cooperative farms are not dredging their waterways or lining them with clay, and so a great deal of water is wasted.

Although the cooperative farms are wasting water, no one is making any effort to control it.

The gates of the reservoirs are left open in the farming season to allow water to flow through without restriction and there are not even any figures of how much water the cooperative farms have consumed. In capitalist society the amount of water is carefully measured before being supplied and water rates are received, so the consumers work hard to use it economically so as to save money. At present, however, our workers supply and use water without control, because they lack a proprietary attitude towards state and communal property. That is why our water consumption per hectare of the paddy fields is higher than in other countries. Last year 10,700 cubic metres of water was used per

hectare of paddy fields and even 20,000 cubic metres in some parts of the country.

Many wasteful practices concerning water are manifested in other economic branches, including industry.

In the past the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex solved the problem of industrial water by using water from the Taedong River. Since Lake Yonthan was built, however, they have been using irrigation water in an unrestricted, wasteful way with the result that their water consumption is now much higher, out of proportion to the steel output.

In Nampho, too, they are careless about using irrigation water. A long time ago we assigned the officials there the task of constructing a barrage on the river flowing by the city in order to harness its water for industrial use, instead of using water from Lake Thaesong. But even though they set up the barrage, they are not using the river water, but continue to draw their industrial water from Lake Thaesong.

At cooperative farms, factories and all other establishments a strong ideological campaign should be conducted against the wastage of water.

In order to economize in and make effective use of water, it is particularly important to establish a strict system of directing water supply.

When we were short of food in the days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle, we established the quantity of iron rations remaining and fixed the portion for each meal and then controlled the consumption accordingly. Even though the food situation was difficult, in this way our guerrillas did not starve.

Because of the influence of the cold front, we cannot forecast how long the dry spell may continue this year, either. Water should be supplied on a planned basis and consumption strictly controlled so that we can hold out with the water we have now, even if there is no rain before August.

When I visited North and South Hwanghae Provinces last June, the officials there had taken no measures to obtain and save water, even

though the reservoirs were drying up because of the drought; they believed that it must surely rain around July 20. Because of the severity of the situation, immediately upon my return to Pyongyang I called a meeting of the Political Committee and raised the question of saving water and stressed its urgency, and saw to it that the provincial Party chief secretaries themselves set up and operated a system of directing water supply and controlled the use of water. As a result, even though it did not rain until the end of July, no harm was done to farming. If we had failed to establish this system in good time and to control its use, the effect on the crops would have been severe and a lot lost. You should not use water from the reservoirs carelessly, on the assumption that it will definitely rain in July, as it did last year.

Just as everything on the railways and in the army works according to a chain of command, so in agriculture, too, a system of directing water supply should be set up and discipline and order strengthened in its supply.

If water is supplied according to a plan under the directing system and control over its use is tightened, this year's farming will be secure with the water now available.

In addition, the waterways should be kept in a good state of repair so that water is not wasted. You can prevent seepage by using clay or cement, or simply by cleaning the waterways.

An important factor in the economic use of water is to introduce extensively the method of irrigating by use of ditches dug along the ridges between paddy fields.

For a long time we have been emphasizing that this method should be employed widely. However, many cooperative farms waste a lot of water because they let the water flow all over the fields at once, instead of digging storage ditches.

If you dig a ditch at the edge of a paddy field and store water there and then provide as much water as required for the field, you will save a lot of water. Moreover, this method is favourable for the growth of the rice plants because it raises the temperature of the water in the paddy fields. All cooperative farms should introduce this method this

year and so save a great deal of water.

In order to save water, supervision and control over its supply and use should be tightened. The workers who control water should play a more significant role and the three-revolution teams should be brought into action to supervise and check whether the system of directing water supply has been thoroughly established or not and whether the method of irrigating by the storage ditches inside the fields has been applied.

Agricultural workers should conduct an energetic campaign to save water by various means and thus reduce the water consumption per hectare of the paddy fields to a maximum of 7,000 cubic metres this year.

Alongside the campaign to save water, there should be a vigorous drive to keep and store escaping water.

If, after ploughing, you keep the paddy fields filled with water drawn from the ditches, you will need less water from the reservoirs when planting the rice. All cooperative farms should lift the river water in their area and store it in the paddy fields, without allowing a single drop to flow wastefully away.

One important factor in combatting the cold front is to distribute the varieties of seeds correctly.

In recent years the influence of the cold front has meant that the cumulative temperature has fallen and the growing season become shorter. Therefore, to combat the cold front and make farming more secure, suitable varieties of seeds should be used. However, some workers do not reckon with the climatic changes and they take into account neither the cumulative temperature nor the time needed for the crops to grow, and they plant any variety with the result that the crops do not ripen. This demonstrates that our workers still talk a great deal about the need for putting farming on a scientific basis in order to deal with the cold front, but in reality they do nothing about it. We should put an end to this practice once and for all and distribute the varieties of seeds properly, based on scientific calculations.

The strains of rice should be selected carefully.

As far as is possible you should plant varieties of rice that can withstand the changes in the climate and ripen quickly, for then the rice will ripen in good time, and will not be affected so much even when the temperature drops. *Pyongyang-8* is a good variety. It can resist the cold better than *Ryongsong-25* and it also ripens early. *Yomju-14*, too, is a good variety. It ripens early and its yield is high. This year these seeds should be selected carefully so that *Pyongyang-8* and *Yomju-14* can be planted extensively in North and South Phyongan Provinces from next year onwards. When *Pyongyang-8* has spread throughout South Phyongan Province at some time in the future, *Ryongsong-25* should no longer be planted in the province.

Yonan-12 will also be good if the weather is fine in autumn. It ripens a little later than *Ryongsong-25* but can resist the cold and wind better. Last year *Yonan-12* was cultivated by the third workteam of the Jangsuwon Cooperative Farm, Samsok District, Pyongyang. At first rice plants of this variety did not seem to ripen properly because they developed ears late, but they ripened fairly well thanks to the fine autumn weather. There has been a suggestion that this variety should be cultivated in North Hwanghae Province on an experimental basis. It is a good idea to plant several hectares with this variety in North and South Hwanghae Provinces since the autumn weather in this part of the country is mild.

In order to combat the influence of the cold front you should not only select good varieties of rice, but also bed out the seedlings as early as possible. This year because of the cold front the summer is expected to last about a week less than normal, so if the seedlings are not bedded out early, the rice plants may not mature on time.

If the young rice plants grow strong in cold-beds in the dry fields, early transplantation will be possible. Previously in Ripsok-ri, Mundok County, South Phyongan Province, the rice seedlings were transplanted on April 18, and no harm was done. In Ryongchon County, North Phyongan Province, the seedlings were bedded out at the end of April and shortly afterwards there was a frost, but they did not perish from the cold, because there was water in the paddy fields.

The early transplantation of rice accords with scientific principles. If the paddy fields are watered after they have been planted, rising steam forms a kind of screen; so if there is a frost, the rice plants are not rimed and do not perish from the cold. So there is no reason to bed out the rice seedlings after May 1. Since rice seedlings are grown in cold-beds in dry fields, it is preferable to bed them out as early as possible.

This year, rice transplanting should be started in early May and finished by May 20. This is the safest way. The transplanting period cannot be fixed indiscriminately, but the rice seedlings of the *Ryongsong-25* strain should be transplanted before May 20.

The varieties of maize should also be properly distributed.

Under the severe effects of the cold front, early-ripening varieties of maize should be planted on a large scale, without fail. A period of 140 days is too long. So it is better to sow the 130-day strain. However, we have not yet developed good varieties of maize. Our scientists and farmers should work hard at this.

The maize must be planted at the right time.

Some people assert that since the summer is expected to become shorter, maize, too, should be planted early. However, if this is done, the crop may be damaged by spring frost. Unlike the rice seedlings transplanted in the paddy fields, maize seedlings bedded out in dry fields cannot withstand a frost. The claim that maize seedlings can survive a frost is unscientific; it is based on chance. The maize crop must always be planted at the right time.

Maize seedlings can be bedded out 20 days after the seeds have been sown in nurseries, so it is well to stagger the sowing of the seeds so that humus-grown maize seedlings can be transplanted before the end of May.

The fact that the maize seedlings are bedded out step by step does not mean that you should work slowly. Last year one province took until mid-June to transplant the seedlings on the pretext of gradual transplantation, with the result that the plants had only a short time to grow and a lot of maize did not ripen. Formerly the maize seedlings

bedded out by mid-June could still yield, but now that the effects of the cold front are so severe, this will not produce a proper harvest.

Maize should be sown by stages to suit the local conditions, in such a way that all the humus-grown seedlings are bedded out by the end of May.

Furthermore, the production of fertilizer must be stepped up and a proper fertilizing system established.

Despite the difficult power situation, the production of fertilizer is now comparatively stable. By maintaining the vigorous effort to continue the steady production of fertilizer, the factories should produce 1.2 million tons of nitrogen fertilizer and one million tons of phosphate fertilizer as planned, within the current fertilizing year.

Not only should the production of fertilizer be stepped up, but also it must be supplied in good time.

A large quantity of fertilizer is currently stockpiled at the factories. Since the fertilizer produced is not delivered promptly, the fertilizer factories are experiencing considerable difficulties with production. The agriculture and other industries concerned should take measures to carry away the fertilizer quickly.

The fertilizer should not be transported only by train. A lot can be transported by road as well. The provinces and cooperative farms on the west coast should use lorries to transport urea fertilizer from the Youth General Chemical Works. The Ministry of Public Security should see to it that fertilizer is transported by road.

Steps should be taken in the rural communities to build many fertilizer storehouses to keep it on hand and in good condition.

In order to maximize its effect, fertilizer should be applied according to the Juche farming method.

This year 1.2 million tons of nitrogen fertilizer will be supplied to the rural areas; this will make it possible to apply 600 kg per hectare or 120 kg in terms of plant nutrients content for both rice and maize fields. Even in developed capitalist countries, the amount of nitrogen fertilizer used per hectare is only some 90 kg in terms of plant nutrients content. The amount of fertilizer applied per hectare in our country is

by no means small. The real question is whether the fertilizer is applied scientifically or not. As we have said time and again, fertilizer should be applied regularly in small amounts, according to the development of the plant.

Experience has shown us that several applications of fertilizer are highly effective. Last year this method was introduced according to how much the plant had grown, with the result that the stems of the rice grew thicker and it did not grow as high, so that it stood up to the rain and wind well, and the number of grains per ear increased and the grains ripened nicely. Maize ears, too, bore grains to the tip of the cobs and all the grains ripened well.

By drawing on last year's experience, all the cooperative farms should make the most of the fertilizer by applying it several times.

Large quantities of humus should be produced.

Since the temperature is falling and the growing season for the crops is becoming shorter because of the cold front, it is important to prepare plenty of humus. Because it gives off heat, if humus is spread in cold-bed rice nurseries before they are covered with sheets, heat is emitted and the cold is kept out, so that the rice seedlings grow faster. I am told that this year 30 kg of humus will be spread in each *phyong* of a cold-bed rice nursery, and this will keep the temperature of the nurseries high and help the seedlings to grow well.

In order to ensure the production of humus, humus factories should be built to produce it industrially.

There may be a variety of methods for producing humus industrially. The humus factories could do the following: cut and chop up acacias, shrubs or the like and mix them with slaked lime or fertilizer so that it rots, decompose maize stalks or rice straw and cut and process peat. Sawdust from sawmills can also be used for the same purpose. The best way of producing humus is to dig and process peat. The west coast area still has large deposits of peat, enough to last for several years. If they are put to good use, plenty of good-quality humus can be produced.

Immediately after completing the work of digging wells and

sinking pipes to overcome this year's drought, the Administration Council and the provincial rural economy committees should draw up plans and then busy themselves with the construction of humus factories.

Further, the work of assisting the rural communities should be undertaken enthusiastically.

Unless this work is done better, the influence of the cold front cannot be nullified. If we are to dig wells, sink pipes and bed out all the rice and humus-grown maize seedlings at the right time, there must be a general mobilization of the Party, the army and the people to actively support the rural communities.

The rural manpower situation is very strained at present. In particular, there is a shortage of young and middle-aged men.

In order to ensure that the work of assisting the rural communities is successful this year, the actual manpower needed must be calculated accurately.

This year industry cannot spare as much labour for the farms as last year. Last year the work at factories was interrupted because of the power shortage, so they were able to spare a lot of labour. However this year, since the thermal power stations can be operated at full capacity to supply sufficient electricity to the factories and enterprises, industry is able to make less manpower available to the rural areas. In such circumstances, it is very important to make sure that the calculations are accurate.

At present some leading agricultural officials are asking for a large labour force quite indiscriminately, without making an accurate estimate. This year more weed killer and rice-transplanting machinery were provided for the rural areas than last year, yet there is little difference in the amount of help requested. This year it will be impossible to allocate one able-bodied man for each hectare of paddy or dry field.

Agricultural officials should study every cooperative farm carefully to ascertain the size of its labour force, the amount of weed killer supplied and the number of rice-transplanting machines it has, and ask

how much manpower each one needs. In this way alone will the work of assisting the rural communities be organized fairly and any wastage of labour eliminated.

Provincial manpower must first be enlisted to help the rural communities. Industrial workers should also be mobilized for this work.

In light industry, everyone should be mobilized with the exception of those who work at the factories that make essential consumer goods.

In principle, miners should not be mobilized. Now that hydroelectric power stations are not fully operational because of the lack of water, thermal power stations should be supplied with plenty of coal to keep their generators running at capacity. For this to happen, the miners must continue to produce coal. Workers at the Musan, Tokhyon and other metal mines should not be mobilized either. Other mining workers should help on the cooperative farms in their neighbourhood if they are unable to work properly because of a power shortage. But those miners who can continue with their own work should not be mobilized.

In the metal industry, in those cases where a two-shift work force is working only one shift, the labour from one shift should be mobilized to help the cooperative farms nearby.

In short, the work of mobilizing industrial workers this year should depend on the power situation.

This year Pyongyang must offer manpower support to the cooperative farms within its municipal jurisdiction and yet produce enough vegetables for the citizens, so it must not continue the reckless practice of sending manpower to other provinces.

Since industry will not be able to mobilize many workers for the rural communities this year, manpower support as a whole should start early and the period of mobilization should be extended a little.

Some provinces would like help early, so support should be sent out from mid-April. The best idea is to mobilize the manpower support for about three months from mid-April to mid-July. Three months should be enough to do all the essential work on the farms this year and to take

steps to prevent damage in the event of a drought.

The people helping the rural communities should go on time to the workteams or sub-workteams at the cooperative farms to assist the preparations for farming and work hard in the fight against drought. If they go to the countryside a little earlier and start with a drive to dig wells, they should be able to build plenty of wells before the rice is transplanted.

The Administration Council, provincial rural economy committees and county cooperative farm management committees should take the measures that are needed in advance so that those helping the rural communities can start digging wells as soon as they arrive.

At this plenary meeting we have discussed the extremely pressing and important fighting tasks that are currently confronting our Party.

All the officials here present should understand the spirit of this meeting and tell the Party members and other working people about it when they return home.

I am confident that by giving precedence to political work among Party members and other working people, organizing the work carefully and in this way mobilizing the masses in an energetic campaign to implement the decisions of this plenary meeting, all the officials will endeavour to prevent any damage that might result from a drought brought about by the cold front and to achieve another shining success in farming this year.

ON MAKING FRESH INNOVATIONS IN TRANSPORT

**Concluding Speech at the 13th Plenary Meeting
of the Fifth Central Committee
of the Workers' Party of Korea**

April 6, 1977

I am going to speak today about some problems which arise in the development of transport.

Industry in our country is making rapid progress, but transport is failing to keep pace with it. This is currently the major obstacle to economic progress here. Without removing this imbalance between industry and transport, it will be impossible to ensure the rapid overall development of the national economy.

Some officials complain that there is a shortage of steel or electricity for economic construction, but, in fact, that is not the problem. Certainly, the steel and power situations are serious, but the major problem is inefficiency in transport. In the final analysis, this inefficiency is also responsible for the shortage of steel and electricity. As matters stand at present, even iron ore and coal are not carried away promptly once they have been mined, so that iron works are unable to produce steel properly and thermal power stations cannot operate on a steady basis. If the strain on transport is eased, the satisfactory production of steel, electricity and everything else will be assured.

The present strain is not due to any shortcoming in Party policy for developing transport. Party transport policy is sound. In the last few

years alone we have taken a number of important steps towards solving the acute problems with transport and have set specific tasks. In spite of this, members of the Party Central Committee and officials of the Party organizations and administrative and economic bodies at different levels have shown scant concern for this matter and neglected to make any effort to implement the Party's transport policy.

In the first place, the Party's policy on setting up the unit train transport system has not been implemented on the railways.

As pointed out in the report made at this meeting, when we were giving on-the-spot guidance in North Hamgyong Province in June 1974, we set out the policy of establishing the system of unit train services to ease the strain on transport and explained in detail how to put it into practice. The plenary meeting of the Administration Council held in July of the same year discussed the matter of establishing unit train service stations so that this system could be set up and gave the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council specific assignments so that each one could establish several of such stations. Three years have passed since then, but as yet few of them have carried out these assignments.

Neither special equipment nor a great deal of materials are needed to develop unit train service stations. All that should be done is to fix the site for these stations, build warehouses and install cranes for loading and unloading. The task has not been carried out because the commissions and ministries under the Administration Council have neglected to organize it. If they had organized the work carefully, each of them could have built one or two stations a year and carried out all their assignments by now.

According to this system of unit train transport, industrial railways should be provided with facilities for loading and unloading goods quickly and with general-purpose warehouses. However, those factories and other industrial establishments which have their own lines have not prepared these things. Worse still, some of them do not unload the goods promptly when the trains arrive, but use the waggons for storage and damage them by unloading carelessly. Using the

waggons in this manner will get you nowhere however many are produced.

Since the unit train service stations and industrial lines have not been developed, the concentrated transportation of goods on the railways is impossible. Work is still being done in an outdated, haphazard fashion, with waggons being coupled and uncoupled at every station. This is why no innovations are being made in rail transport.

The policy for coordinated rail and road transport has not been carried out, either. A system of road transport from the unit train service stations to the consumers has not been established, and the task of increasing the volume of traffic by increasing the rate of operation of lorries has been neglected. There are tens of thousands of lorries in our country. If we produce trailers to be attached to all the lorries we have, we can double the volume of goods carried by lorry. This will ease the strain on transport to a considerable extent. However, this is not being organized by the officials concerned. Therefore, only a small volume of goods is being carried by trailers attached to lorries.

Container transport is also being neglected. A long time ago we set the task of introducing container transport and explained in detail how it should be done. In 1973 we even organized a demonstration lecture at Ryongsong Station on the various specifications of container which had been produced by the commissions and ministries under the Administration Council. Most of the senior officials of these organizations attended. Nearly four years have elapsed since then, but the commissions and ministries under the Administration Council, including the Ministry of Railways, have not yet made good containers nor have they made proper use even of the small number of containers that had been made. I have been told that some of them have actually been broken and others are used as dustbins.

These shortcomings in the implementation of the Party's transport policy have been manifested because the ideological point of view of officials is unsound. They can never claim that the failure to produce cranes for the unit train service stations, trailers for lorries, containers

and other similar things is due to a shortage of materials. There is simply no excuse for it. Frankly speaking, the present situation in our country is such that these things could be made by any factory. The fact is that our officials lack the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance.

During the period of postwar reconstruction, when the situation in our country was very difficult, our workers made whatever they needed themselves. If we told them to make something, they would make it without fail and with no complaint.

When the reconstruction of Pyongyang was at its height, I used to inspect the construction sites early every morning. There I would see a number of pieces of simple building equipment which the builders had made during the previous night. In those days tower cranes were not produced in our country, so the builders of Pyongyang made wooden derricks for themselves. Using these wooden derricks they built three- or four-storey blocks of flats and such large buildings as the offices of the Ministry of the People's Armed Forces and the International Hotel.

Other countries are now using container transport widely. As early as the time of postwar reconstruction our workers were making containers and using them to carry bricks. During my visit to the Kangnam Ceramics Factory in 1954, I was told that 40 to 50 per cent of the bricks were being broken while being transported by ship. So I told them to make and use containers. In those days there was no steel available for this purpose. So wooden boxes were made and used to carry bricks. This completely eliminated the breaking of bricks in transit.

During the period of postwar reconstruction, trailers were used widely in road transport and helped a great deal in solving the transport problem. Although the roads were no better than they are now, a large number of lorries carried goods by trailer.

The ideological preparedness of our officials today is not as high as that of the officials who were working in the days of postwar reconstruction. They lack the spirit of self-reliance. They are in the habit of complaining about the conditions before they start work and do not know how to overcome any difficulties by themselves, just like

the sons and daughters of a rich man. We must rectify this ideological defect of the officials as soon as possible and so radically improve transport.

If we are to ease the strain on transport and bring about fresh innovations in this field, we must carry out the three-point policy of unit train transport, coordinated transport and container transport.

This is not a new policy that we are proposing today; we proposed it a long time ago, but it has not been implemented, so that transport has become a “drag” on the economy. The only way to solve this problem is to implement the policy. This is the best and most reasonable policy for easing the strain on transport and for developing transport quickly overall.

This policy of our Party is also in step with worldwide trends in the development of transport. The developed countries are approaching a solution to their transport problems through making effective use of existing capacity by the wide-scale introduction of unit train transport, coordinated transport and container transport, rather than by constructing new railways.

We must carry out this policy and radically improve transport so as to meet the increasing demands on transport made by the various branches of the national economy.

First of all, the unit train transport system must be fully established on the railways.

It is, of course, necessary to electrify and modernize the railways so as to ease the strain on rail transport. But it is more important to establish a complete unit train transport system.

This is a transport system which stipulates direct transport as far as the destination without loading and unloading goods on the way. For example, if coal is to be carried to the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex, a train of waggons loaded with coal should be organized and sent straight to the complex without loading and unloading at stations on the way. This is exactly what the unit train transport system is.

Bulk items such as coal, cement, ore, timber and marine products should not be consigned in the same way as small items; they should be

transported by unit trains. If we transport goods of large volume in this way, we shall be able to reduce the turnaround of waggons, increase the freight capacity of the railways and transport considerably more goods than at present. Therefore, the strain on rail transport can only be eased once the unit train transport system has been established.

In order to establish this system we must build unit train service stations.

To this end it is important to determine the best site for each unit train service station. They must always be located at places advantageous to carrying goods by road to the consumers. If a unit train service station is to be established in a province so that fertilizer can be transported, it must be located where it is convenient to carry fertilizer by lorry to all the counties in the province, even though the load might have to double back to reach some counties.

After fixing the sites of these stations, you must install cranes and various other equipment for loading and unloading and also build warehouses. You must also establish a system by which lorries can carry the goods to the consumers promptly. As the assignments for the development of unit train service stations have been given, the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council should implement them as soon as possible. These stations must be established within this year, without fail.

In addition, industrial railway lines for factories and other industrial establishments must be developed. The commissions and ministries of the Administration Council and industrial establishments must produce and install a large number of cranes, improve the loading and unloading equipment and build good general-purpose warehouses so that goods can be loaded and unloaded quickly. Since the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex and the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex have repair and power supply shops and produce steel, they are perfectly able to make cranes and other loading and unloading equipment for themselves. What is important, though, is the ideological viewpoint and work attitude of the officials. The senior management at factories and other industrial establishments must

apply itself to the work of developing industrial railways by adopting the attitude of masters.

Coal and ore mines should build good coal bins. They are not difficult to build. Neither special skills nor designs are needed. All that is needed to build a coal bin is to erect some pillars by the railway track and set a hopper on top so that the coal can pour down into the waggons. Coal bins will last a long time if they are made of cement. If there is no cement available, wood will do. If the bins are built on the side of a mountain, pillars will not be needed.

In order to ensure the efficiency of unit train transport, shunting tracks must be extended. In the past a locomotive would pull a train of about 15 waggons, but now that the railways have been electrified and an engine can pull 30 to 40 waggons, the goods trains are very long. Therefore, if the shunting tracks are not extended, goods trains cannot stop at stations.

The provincial Party committees and the economic commissions of the provincial people's committees must shoulder the responsibility and work hard to extend the shunting tracks at the stations in their provinces. Since manpower support will probably be given to the rural areas from April to June, they should prepare the tracks and other necessary materials during this period and, after the period of manpower support has come to an end, they should organize a wide-scale campaign to extend the shunting tracks.

Since there are so many stations it is impossible to extend the shunting tracks at all the railway stations in the country at once. Therefore, this year we should extend the shunting tracks at those stations where unit trains stop, and extend the remainder next year.

Something that is important in establishing the unit train transport system is to strengthen the tracks. This will make it possible for goods trains with heavy loads to travel quickly.

Light-duty tracks on the electrified lines in the section of unit train transport should be replaced with heavy-duty tracks.

In order to increase the strength of the tracks, good sleepers should be used. Oak serves the purpose better than larch. The Ministry of the

Building-Materials Industry must produce not only larch sleepers but also a large number of oak sleepers, and supply cement to make concrete sleepers. The Ministry of the Metal Industry must supply steel for these concrete sleepers.

The production of rolling stock must be stepped up. The capacity for producing waggons is now 250 a month, but not as many waggons as planned are being produced because the supply of steel is inefficient. The strain on steel will be eased a little from April. Therefore, 10,000 tons of steel should be supplied every month so that 2,500 waggons are produced by the end of the year.

We must produce a lot of locomotive engines.

The Kim Jong Thae Electric Locomotive Factory should produce all the electric locomotive engines that have been planned for this year. The nonferrous metal industry must increase the production of copper for electric machinery factories, and the machine industry must produce and promptly supply motors, generators and various other electric machines which are needed in the production of electric locomotive engines.

You say that a new 2,500-hp diesel locomotive has been produced. It should be tested for efficiency. An 800-hp diesel locomotive must also be produced as planned. If the generators needed for the production of diesel locomotives are not available, we must take prompt measures to ensure that they are manufactured.

Reliable repair centres for locomotive engines and waggons should be developed. The Ministry of the Machine Industry should supply the machine tools that are needed in building repair centres.

We must modernize communication on the railways and improve the organization and control of transport.

Because the system of railway communication has not been modernized, regular contacts between dispatchers and engine drivers and between engine drivers and assistant station-masters are not being maintained, and the dispatchers at their posts are unable to control the movements of the trains constantly and organize and direct transport properly. The railways should be provided with radio sets so that

transportation can be directed by radio communication.

The work of equipping the railways with a radio communication system should be done gradually, beginning with each main line in turn. This year we should provide the section of railway between Pyongyang and Chongjin with radio sets. Some people say that when trains pass through mountainous areas or tunnels, it is impossible to maintain communication with them by VHF radio. If the radio sets are equipped with amplifiers and if you are trained in their use, you will be perfectly able to direct rail transport by VHF radio. The sector concerned must produce and supply the radio sets that are needed for the modernization of railway communication between Pyongyang and Chongjin.

Revolutionary discipline must be established on the railways.

At the moment, discipline on the railways is very lax. This is due largely to the fact that the railways fail to observe laws and regulations. There are security organs, a prosecutor's office and a court of justice in the railway sector, but they are not playing their role properly. In future, legal control over the railway sector must be tightened and the strict observance of laws and regulations must be established.

For this to be done, it is necessary to put into force the socialist railway protection law, the railway disciplinary regulations and other railway rules and regulations. The socialist railway protection law should deal with the various problems that arise in the protection and management of the railways and establish a legal framework for calling those who damage the railways to account.

The committees for guidance in socialist law observance must tighten legal control according to the socialist railway protection law and other railway laws and regulations. In particular, the committees for guidance in socialist law observance of the provincial people's committees should tighten legal control over rail services in the provinces and guide everyone to observe railway laws fully. At the same time they must hold regular discussions on how railway laws are being observed and call anyone who violates them to legal account.

In order to establish strict revolutionary discipline on the railways,

it is also necessary to strengthen Party control and the ideological struggle.

It is true that legal control is needed to establish discipline, but on its own this cannot provide a complete solution to the problem. Fining the industrial establishments and senior management that violate railway regulations will not eliminate the violation of rules and regulations. For these violations to be eliminated it is necessary to motivate the managers to feel qualms of conscience as Party members rather than feel their purses. In other words, we must tighten Party control and intensify the ideological struggle so that they feel qualms of Party conscience, revolutionary conscience and realize that the violation of rules and regulations displays a lack of Party loyalty, and that it is a very shameful act.

In the past, Party control over the railways has not been efficient, nor has the ideological struggle been carried out forcefully. In particular, provincial Party committees have not given effective guidance to the Party organizations in the railway sector in the provinces. Provincial Party committees have not paid attention to work on the railways on the excuse that railway Party organizations were under the Political Bureau of the Ministry of Railways, nor have they organized an ideological struggle among rail workers. The provincial Party committees were wrong not to guide the Party organizations in the railway sector.

We must see that Party organizations in the railway sector are subordinate both to the Political Bureau of the Ministry of Railways and to the provincial Party committees and that the provincial Party committees give responsible guidance to the railway Party organizations. In future provincial Party committees must further intensify their guidance and control over the railway Party organizations in their provinces and step up the ideological struggle amongst rail workers.

In addition there should be more coordinated operations between rail, road and marine transport services.

Improving coordinated transport operations is of great importance

in establishing the unit train transport system on the railways and in finding an overall solution to the transport problem.

The most important thing in these coordinated operations is to improve road transport.

Improving road transport will reduce the burden on the railways and ensure that the unit train service system proves effective. Unit train transport which is not combined with road transport is a white elephant. The problem of transport can be solved only when the goods transported by unit train services are relayed promptly to the points of consumption through efficient road transport. Therefore, not only must a unit train transport system be established, but also road transport must be improved.

If we are to improve road transport, we must increase the production and supply of lorries.

We must re-equip and improve lorry production centres, ensure that the number of *Sungni-58* lorries envisaged in this year's plan is produced and double or treble the output of *Thaebaeksan*, *Jaju* and *Konsol* lorries. In addition, motor works should make great improvements to the quality of the lorries through technical innovation.

Not only must the output of lorries be increased, but also that of trailers.

For the present, it would be better to develop road transport by producing trailers rather than lorries. It is difficult to double lorry production immediately, but if we produce and use trailers we can double the road transport capacity with the lorries we have at present. And in this case there will be no need to increase the number of drivers and a great deal of petrol will be saved.

It is easy to make trailers. The production of lorries requires engines and a great deal of steel, but trailers can be made anywhere if tyres, wheels, steel for the axles and wood for the body are available. If the farm machinery factories in the provinces are supplied with the materials, they will be perfectly able to produce trailers.

A wide-scale campaign to manufacture trailers should be developed and all the lorries should work with a trailer. The People's Army

should use trailers with its lorries, and the Ministry of Public Security should do the same, and in this way all the sectors and units which have lorries should introduce trailers.

If we are to produce a large number of trailers, we must organize the work properly.

The senior officials of the Administration Council and the State Planning Commission and some other state commissions and ministries are organizing this work in a very perfunctory manner. The State Planning Commission has set only small quotas for factories and other industrial establishments that have a large capacity to produce trailers so that they rest idle for a time, yet it has assigned large quotas to those factories and other enterprises that have a small production capacity, with the result that they do not fulfil their quotas. This is a harmful practice which makes it impossible to carry out the Party's policy on producing a large number of trailers.

The Administration Council, the State Planning Commission and the Ministry of Land and Marine Transport have never discussed the matter of trailer production with the management of industrial establishments; they have not made detailed calculations concerning how many trailers can be produced; they have not made practical arrangements for producing trailers, but simply issued a written plan. This is not the way to ensure that trailer production is successful.

They should convene consultative meetings of the managers, chief engineers and Party secretaries at the factories and other industrial establishments which have been given the task of producing trailers; they should visit the factories and other industrial establishments and hold discussions with the people making the trailers so that they take the proper steps to carry out this task. In this way they will ensure that trailer production is increased. For the present, they must ensure that the trailer production quotas under this year's plan are carried out without fail.

If we are to produce a large number of trailers, we must increase tyre production.

With regard to trailer production, there is presently no problem

about wheels and steel, but we are short of tyres. The Amnokgang Tyre Factory does not produce enough tyres to meet the needs for the manufacture of trailers; its output is just sufficient to meet the needs for the production of lorries and tractors.

Each province should build a tyre factory. We have long since set the task of building a tyre reclamation factory or a tyre factory in each province; this must be done quickly. Building a tyre factory is not very difficult. Such a factory needs rubber working machines and tyre moulding machines. You should not think that it is impossible to build a tyre factory.

The chairmen of the provincial people's committees and the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees must take the responsibility to improve tyre reclamation factories and build new tyre factories by conducting the let-one-machine-tool-make-another movement. In this way they will produce the tyres that are needed by their own provinces. Jagang Province can use the tyres produced by the Amnokgang Tyre Factory, so there is no need to build a tyre factory there.

The Administration Council should import a little more rubber which is needed to produce tyres and take steps to produce a large amount of cut vinalon fibre.

In addition to producing a large number of new tyres, efforts should be made to recycle old ones. There are presently many lorries standing idle because they do not have tyres. The tyre reclamation factories should be run properly so that all worn-out tyres can be recycled.

In order to improve road transport, motor vehicle repair centres must be improved.

The number of lorries is growing rapidly, but there are few motor vehicle spare parts factories and repair shops. As the production of *Sungni-58*, *Kaengsaeng* and various other motor vehicles continues, their number will be greatly increased. So we have to build these factories and repair shops throughout the country.

Each province must develop a motor vehicle spare parts factory and meet its own needs for them. The Mining Industry Commission, the

Ministry of the Metal Industry and other organizations which have a large number of lorries should take measures to produce motor vehicle spare parts for themselves.

Motor works must set up spare parts workshops to produce spare parts. In addition, the Sungni General Motor Works should produce the spare parts which other factories cannot make.

We have to launch a campaign to recycle worn-out machine parts for motor vehicles. According to our information other countries have a simple way of recycling spare parts.

Motor vehicle repair factories should also be fully equipped. The production of a lot of lorries is pointless unless they are repaired promptly. As matters stand at present, a lot of new lorries are kept standing idle after they have been used for a short time because they cannot be repaired. Repair centres should be developed so that lorries can be repaired as soon as they break down. We cannot use only new lorries all the time, can we? Existing motor vehicle repair factories in the provinces should be improved and strengthened, and a new one will have to be built in the western region.

If we are to develop these repair centres, we have to produce more machine tools.

Machine tools are necessary not only for the development of these repair centres but also for the extension of motor works and machine factories. Machine tools are now needed everywhere. In order to meet this year's demand, we shall have to produce more machine tools than originally planned.

The Administration Council and the Ministry of the Machine Industry should supply additional steel to the April 3 Factory and the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory and see that they manufacture 3,000 machine tools over and above this year's production quota. If an extra 3,000 machine tools are produced, we will cover the acute shortage for the time being. Once machine tools are produced in great quantities, they must be supplied first to the motor vehicle repair centres that are to be built. The Ministry of the Metal Industry must supply all the steel that is needed to produce machine tools.

The management of lorries must be unified and well organized.

The collective, unified management of lorries is superior to separate management by individual organizations and other enterprises. If individual organizations and other industrial establishments keep lorries, they can neither use them effectively nor repair them promptly on their own. However, if they are placed under a unified system of management, lorries can be run every day without standing idle and they can be repaired promptly and kept in good order all the time.

Although there are advantages in placing lorries under a unified system of management, these advantages are not being exploited to the full at present because the officials are not managing affairs efficiently.

The unified management of lorries has not proved effective because the lorries have been grouped in a mechanical way. The Administration Council and the Ministry of Land and Marine Transport should have placed under unified management the lorries of those units which would benefit from it. But they have grouped lorries in a mechanical way even when there is no benefit. As a result, some organizations and enterprises began to ask for the return of their lorries from the day after the lorries were placed under unified management.

The failure to display the effectiveness of unified management is also due to the fact that road transport companies do not carry consignments from factories and other enterprises on time. If unified management is to be effective, priority must be given to the transportation of raw materials and other essentials needed by factories and other industrial establishments. But these goods are not being delivered on time. Road transport companies do not readily comply with the requests of industrial establishments for the delivery of coal and other raw materials, and even when they do, they are late. This creates problems for the management and the arrangement of production at factories and other enterprises.

It is true that a greater volume of goods is being transported now that lorries have been placed under unified management. But there is little point in increasing the volume of goods transported by carrying

rubbish and similar things, without carrying the goods that factories and other industrial establishments request.

However good Party policy may be, it will not prove its worth if the officials who implement it do not adopt the attitude of masters in their organization of the work, but deal with it in a slipshod manner.

Work should be organized carefully for the unified management of lorries to prove its worth. If we organize the work carefully, even the number of lorries we have at present can work very efficiently. The road transport companies must carry the goods consigned by factories and other enterprises promptly so that these industrial establishments will be free from any inconvenience just as they were when they had lorries at their disposal, and in this way the system will demonstrate its advantages in practice.

The drivers' shifts should be organized rationally so that the rate of operation of the lorries is increased.

A driver cannot work all day without a rest. If he keeps driving for too long, he will feel a pain in his back and get tired beyond endurance. Two shifts should be organized for driving and each driver should work eight hours a day. Then, the driver will not get tired, and the rate of operation of the lorries will be increased.

A two shift system for operating lorries requires a great many drivers. Since a large number of young men are away serving in the People's Army, women should also be trained to work as drivers.

Motor vehicles need not necessarily be driven by men. Women are perfectly able to drive lorries. Women drive tractors, so there is no reason why they cannot drive lorries. In the women anti-aircraft machine-gun units of the People's Army, women soldiers drive all the lorries.

We should teach healthy women how to drive lorries to increase the number of drivers. In addition, women drivers who have been discharged from the People's Army should all be given jobs as drivers. It would be excellent if they were to marry male drivers and then the couple could take charge of a lorry and drive it in turn.

The drivers must be given good education.

Everyone else in our country receives a lot of education, collectively and individually, but lorry and tractor drivers are not educated properly. The car drivers who brought you to this meeting are simply whiling away their time outside. They have nothing to do except chat in groups to kill time. In those places where many drivers gather, an information worker should be appointed to organize reading sessions and read revolutionary novels for them. But this work has not been organized.

As matters stand at present, no one educates drivers in a responsible manner. I ask myself whether provinces and counties have ever summoned drivers to a meeting with an educational purpose, but they have never done it. Drivers who are Party members receive criticism from time to time at Party meetings; other drivers receive no education in particular. Because their education is neglected, drivers become involved in various kinds of unsound practice.

In future work with drivers should be done everywhere—in provinces, counties, institutions and enterprises. Places where drivers can be educated should be provided. A long time ago a plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee adopted a decision to build a house of culture for drivers in Pyongyang, but this has not yet been done. It must be built as soon as possible, so that the drivers can meet, study and hear lectures.

The movement of empty lorries must be supervised and controlled strictly.

To this end, the role of the organizations which supervise motor vehicles must be enhanced. These institutions oversee whether lorries are being used properly or not.

These institutions have been organized by drawing on the experience gained in the Fatherland Liberation War. During the war the People's Army did not use its lorries properly, so the Supreme Headquarters established a system of supervision of the lorries. After that the lorries were used much more effectively. Later the Cabinet also set up an organization to supervise the use of lorries. At present, however, this supervisory organization is not doing its job properly. If

it is to play its proper role, it must keep itself informed of the distribution of lorries—where they are and how many of them. But it does not do this.

The supervisory organizations must become more effective and thus increase the rate of use of motor vehicles.

They must supervise and control the movement of empty lorries strictly. In addition, links between consigners and consignees should be strengthened so that goods are transported both ways and no lorries travel without a load.

If institutions and enterprises have to operate empty lorries for some unavoidable reason, they must obtain the approval of the authorities concerned. At present the supervisory organizations are confiscating lorries which run without a load. So, even if one has goods to fetch urgently from somewhere, one cannot do so because there is no load to deliver. If empty running is forbidden out of hand, difficulties may arise. Therefore, when an empty run is unavoidable, the authorities concerned should allow it.

Building good roads is an important aspect of improving road transport.

A lorry can carry twice the volume of goods if it has a trailer attached.

So, two-ton lorries will carry four tons and five-ton lorries, ten tons. But at present the strength of the roads is not great enough. So, bridges and other road structures should be strengthened to allow heavy lorries to use them. This is a colossal task which cannot be done all at once, so improvement work must be done in stages.

Drivers must not damage road structures by driving lorries carelessly, giving no consideration for their capacity. I have been told that some drivers damage the roads by driving vehicles carelessly without due regard to the weight which road structures can bear. If you drive a lorry with a ten-ton load over a road which can bear six tons, the structure will be damaged. Therefore, drivers should operate lorries within the limits indicated on the road structures.

The Ministry of Public Security and the organizations in charge of

road construction should not only strengthen the road structures, but also build good, new roads under a long-term plan.

In addition to improving road transport, we must develop water transport.

In order to find an overall solution to the transport problem, it is important to develop water transport. However, it may be difficult to make any innovations in water transport this year because our efforts are being concentrated on rail transport.

This year the marine transport sector must improve ship maintenance and repair and make optimum use of the ships it has. Furthermore, we must ensure that the cargo ships planned for this year are built without fail.

In order to develop water transport we must draw up a long-term plan to open waterways on the Taedong and other rivers.

The development of waterways on the Taedong River is of great economic importance. During the Fatherland Liberation War I visited Kim Il Sung University which was then situated in Paeksong-ri, Sunchon County, and gave the lecturers and students the task of designing a canal which would connect the eastern and western regions of our country. They produced an excellent design. They walked a great deal and went to a lot of trouble to design it. The design envisages the construction of several barrages across the section of the Taedong River between Nampho and Tokchon and the installation of generators on the barrages. These will not only make the river navigable, but also create a generating capacity of 250,000 kW of electricity, so I have been told.

The people of South Phyongan Province suggest opening first a waterway between Tokchon and Pukchang for the transportation of coal to the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant. But that is now unnecessary. The current demand of the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant for coal is 6,000,000 tons a year. This amount can be carried as it is done now. Even when the power station increases its generating capacity and needs 7,000,000 or 8,000,000 tons of coal annually, the need for transporting the coal can be met by electrifying the railway

and introducing cableways, because the distance between Tokchon and Pukchang is short. Water transport is effective where the distance is comparatively long. Where the distance is short, the time needed for loading and unloading is longer than the time for carrying the load.

If we are to open waterways on the Taedong River, it is more important to open them first between Nampho and Sunchon rather than between Tokchon and Pukchang. If we develop a navigable route between Nampho and Sunchon we shall be able to ship coal for export to China and cement produced by the Sunchon Cement Factory as far as Nampho. Therefore, it would be very interesting and lucrative to open a waterway between Nampho and Sunchon. But this is no easy task; it is a great project of transforming nature which will need a vast investment. A great number of people will have to be mobilized to dredge the riverbed, build stone facing on the embankments, and create woods to improve the scenic beauty and build good houses on the banks of the river. Therefore, we should study this problem further and take it into account when we draw up the next long-term plan.

To proceed. The container transport policy should be thoroughly implemented.

The wide use of container transport is very important in revolutionizing transportation. Container transport is a very good method of transport: it can save labour and packing materials, prevent the loss of goods during packing and in transit, mechanize loading and unloading, raise the rate of use of the means of transport, promote cultured practices in transport and free the working people from hard labour.

A large number of containers must be produced for the development of the container system.

The commissions and ministries under the Administration Council should define the size and form of the containers according to their specific use and produce them to meet their own needs. The Ministry of Railways should make general-purpose, fairly large containers; and the state commissions and other ministries should make containers to suit the specific features of the products.

Containers should not be too large.

I have been told that in other countries 30-ton and 50-ton containers are made. But we should not make such large ones. We are not yet in a position to produce many heavy-duty cranes and lorries. So we should make small containers of 400 kg, 500 kg, one ton, two tons and three tons capacity and then produce larger ones in the future.

The state commissions and ministries must design their own containers. At present the officials of some commissions and ministries are complaining that they cannot make containers because the Ministry of Railways does not supply a design; this is nothing more than an excuse and an attitude of shifting responsibility onto others. Designing a container is simply designing a box. How can they ask others for something so simple? Containers will be perfectly good if they are made so that they do not break open when being lifted by cranes and are convenient for loading and unloading. Any commission and any ministry has the ability to design such containers.

Every commission and ministry must ensure that large numbers of containers are produced for transporting major items such as ore concentrate, cement, chemical fertilizer, grain, fruit and so on.

In order to implement the container transport policy we must produce cranes and build warehouses in addition to mass-producing containers.

As soon as container goods arrive at the points of consumption, they must be unloaded and the containers returned promptly. But if the containers are left piled up with the goods inside, it will be impossible to avoid a shortage of them, however many may be produced. Container goods should be loaded and unloaded by cranes. If this work is done manually, it will involve more work and take much more time than if containers were not used. Therefore, warehouses and cranes must be provided for container transport.

If the container system is to prove worthwhile, three problems—making containers, building warehouses and producing cranes—must all be solved at the same time. All the commissions and ministries are now in a position to perform these tasks. They must

press ahead with these three tasks simultaneously.

Next, we must develop transport by using cableways, conveyer-belts, and pipelines in every way possible.

We set out the policy of developing these systems of transport a long time ago. But as matters now stand, no one is showing any interest in this matter or controlling and directing it properly. As a result, the policy is not being implemented successfully.

If we are to ease the strain on transport and radically improve it, we must develop cableway, conveyer-belt and pipeline transport on a wide scale. Industrial establishments in particular must adopt these methods widely.

Factories and other enterprises must finish quickly those transport systems that are currently being constructed. Many of these projects have been started, but have not yet been finished. The laying of cableways between the Phungnyon Mine and Sakju Station was begun a long time ago, but it has not yet been completed. It is not far from Phungnyon Mine to Sakju Station. So it is better to carry the apatite produced by this mine by cableway rather than by lorry. The Phungnyon Mine must finish laying the cableway quickly and use it to transport apatite to Sakju Station. When I was giving on-the-spot guidance to the Tokchon area a short time ago, I found that the cableway project from the Jenam Coal Mine to the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant had been left unfinished. That, too, must be finished.

The Administration Council must ensure that the wire ropes, cableway carriers and pipes which are needed in the construction of these transport systems are produced in time.

While finishing these projects quickly, factories and other enterprises must take steps to put those systems into operation which have already been established.

We identified this year as a year for improving transportation. Therefore, the whole Party, the whole nation and all the people must work hard to revolutionize transportation and bring about a great change in it. I am of the opinion that we must launch a 200-day battle to revolutionize transport, starting from May. The sector concerned must

make a detailed plan and press on with the battle.

Furthermore, the transport sector must improve the recruitment of men and the training of its cadres.

It is particularly important to improve the recruitment of railway workers. The present labour administration section of the Ministry of Railways must be strengthened so that it can take charge of recruitment. The labour administration section must not only deal with paying wages and with the men who are working or absent from work, but explore labour resources systematically, train skilled workers and increase the labour force on the railways in a responsible manner.

The cadre-training organizations and scientific research institutes in the rail and road transport sectors should be improved and a large number of technicians should be trained.

In particular, the cadres of the marine transport sector should be trained well.

The marine transport sector is very important. Cargo ships travel to capitalist countries, some of which are hostile to us; they go everywhere in the world. The workers in this sector visit many countries all over the world; they enter the capitalist market and come into contact with our enemies. This is why the labour force in this sector should be made up of good people.

Marine transport workers must be courteous. On no account should any of them drink alcohol abroad and behave like rascals. They must live up to our Party's principles and know how to keep to their working-class stand even in capitalist countries.

In order to improve the composition of the personnel in the marine transport sector, the cadre-training organizations in this sector must select and train fine people. When they admit new students, they must examine them closely and decide whether they will qualify for service in the marine transport sector after graduation, and enrol only those who are sure to qualify.

In the past the cadre-training institutions in the marine transport sector enrolled students without due attention and trained them. This was because the officials of the provincial Party committees, the responsible

commissions and ministries of the Administration Council and the educational sector showed no interest in marine transport cadre training.

In the past cadre training has been inefficient not only in the marine transport sector, but in other sectors too.

It is over 30 years since we set up our first university and began to train our national cadres. During this period our universities and colleges have educated a large number of graduates. However, we still experience a shortage of cadres because education has been given to students who should not have been admitted.

We must, on no account, deal carelessly with the work of training cadres.

Our country has not yet been reunified and our political situation is very complicated. Our country is in direct confrontation with US imperialism, the ringleader of world imperialism, and is surrounded by large countries. All kinds of reactionaries have gathered and entrenched themselves in south Korea, and even among us there are still those who are conspiring with hostile classes with the aim of reviving the capitalist system.

The overthrown exploiting classes have not abandoned their dream of restoring the old system. This is why the class struggle is bound to be drawn out. We must continue the class struggle and the ideological revolution until communism has emerged victorious throughout the world.

From the point of view of the class struggle we must develop and consolidate the ranks of cadres and, to this end, we must improve the quality of cadre training.

The training of national cadres is conducted at university. Universities must admit good people and train them well, even though the numbers may be small. The University of Sea Transport and the merchant marine colleges in particular must admit and train good people. This is the way to build up the ranks of cadres in the marine transport and fishing sectors.

Next, I shall speak briefly about how to strengthen labour administration.

This year the 300,000 senior middle-school leavers will be the only source of labour. Of these, some will join the army, some will remain in the rural communities and the rest will go to work in factories and other enterprises. Therefore, the labour situation will still be serious this year.

In order to ease the strain on manpower, we must allocate labour rationally.

As matters stand at present, the allocation of labour is not efficient. Women should be appointed to jobs which suit them, and men to posts which need men. But this principle is not being observed. In spite of the acute shortage of male labour, there are many cases of men being appointed to jobs that could be performed by women. Claiming that the more male labour the better, the managers of some factories and enterprises even allocate men to work which could be done by women. On the other hand, many women are working in coal mines and in similar jobs to which women are not supposed to be appointed. Certainly, women can drive mine cars. But mining coal down a pit is hard, so women should not be appointed to do this.

Labour administration and factories and other industrial establishments should, as far as possible, give women work that suits them and assign men to heavy labour. This will make up for the shortage of young and able-bodied men for heavy work to a considerable extent.

An important factor in labour administration is to fix proper work norms.

In the years immediately following liberation and after the armistice we used to examine work norms and renew them every year. In the period of postwar reconstruction we ensured that even norms for brick-laying were fixed correctly by measuring the number of bricks a man laid every day. At the time we did not fix work norms only once; we renewed them every year in keeping with the rise in the level of mechanization. A major factor that contributed to the rapid growth in production during postwar reconstruction was that accurate work norms were set and men were encouraged to fulfil them.

At present, however, the assessment of work norms is not done fairly, nor have accurate work norms been set. This is the case in the transport sector and the metal, coal, and machine industries. Such being the case, an accurate labour plan cannot be drawn up, and when they are told to increase production, they simply request more manpower.

In building socialism it is very important to assess work norms accurately. The labour administration must set accurate work norms and renew them continually with the development of technology.

The socialist principle of distribution must be observed.

Because we have no accurate work norms, the socialist principle of distribution is not being implemented properly. There is no tangible difference in the distribution between those who have done a great deal of work and those who have worked a little. In socialist society we cannot afford to provide completely equal distribution for everyone regardless of the results of his work.

In communist society people will work according to their ability and receive distribution according to their needs. In socialist society, however, we are in no position to apply the communist principle of distribution. In this society the levels of ideological consciousness of the working people and the productive forces are not sufficiently high to permit the application of the communist principle of distribution. So, if equal living conditions are provided both for those who have worked a great deal and those who have done only a little work, it would be impossible to stimulate the working people's enthusiasm for production and, therefore, impossible to build socialism successfully.

Of course, it is important to strengthen ideological education in increasing the productive enthusiasm of the working people. But ideological education alone is not enough to increase it to the maximum. To this end, material stimuli must be given at the same time as strengthening ideological education. Material incentives must not be ignored in socialist society.

In socialist society distribution must be made according to the amount and quality of the work done. In other words, one should

receive distribution in proportion to how much one has worked. All the sectors of the national economy must assess the implementation of work norms properly and strictly observe the principle of distribution according to the work done.

Labour discipline must be tightened.

At present factories and other industrial establishments do not observe the eight-hour day discipline strictly. Outwardly workers seem to be working for a long time, but, in fact, they are not. Machines stand idle for a long time because of a shortage of materials and a lot of time is wasted by workers who wander here and there away from their work.

The eight-hour day is a labour discipline stipulated by law. A sufficient amount of materials must be supplied and work organized rationally so that the workers can work eight hours precisely and then go home. In this way the workers will adhere to the principle of an eight-hour day, eight-hour study and eight-hour rest.

**LET US IMPLEMENT TO THE FULL
THE DECISION OF THE PLENARY
MEETING OF THE PARTY CENTRAL
COMMITTEE ON PREVENTING
DAMAGE FROM THE DROUGHT**

**Speech at the Consultative Meeting of Officials
from the Party, Government, Administrative
and Economic Organizations of the Provinces,
Cities and Counties in the Western Region**

April 13, 1977

I am going to speak about some problems that have arisen in implementing the decision of the 13th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee on measures for preventing damage from the drought.

I have called you to this meeting at short notice so that the shortcomings revealed in carrying out the decision can be rectified.

It seems to me that you do not have a correct understanding of the decision adopted by the recent plenary meeting. The work of some comrades is misdirected and they think that they can carry out the decision of the plenary meeting by finishing just the major irrigation projects which have already been started. During the plenary meeting, the chief secretaries of the provincial and county Party committees did not give their provinces and counties the task of surveying the sites for wells, nor did they take any measures to sink pipes into the grounds

and draw on groundwater. On hearing of the decision of the plenary meeting, the farmers of Pobu-ri, Kaechon County, South Phyongan Province, launched a campaign to dig wells of their own accord. This shows that cadres are lagging behind the farmers. Ten days have passed since the plenary meeting, but as yet the cadres have taken no action.

As I said at the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee, the whole world is in the grip of a severe drought. France, Britain and many other countries have suffered greatly from it. Many people around the world are crying out for water and dying of thirst.

We, too, have experienced a long spell of dry weather. It has been dry here for the past eight months. We had little snow last winter and have had no rain this spring. As a result, the soil is dry to a depth of between 10 and 15 centimetres. Sowing is impossible in such conditions.

At the last plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee it was decided that the Party, the army and the people should all fight to prevent damage from the drought. The plenary meeting set the important tasks of ensuring ample sources of water by digging wells and striking pipes into the ground and of using water more economically by digging ditches just inside the edges of rice fields and controlling the use of water properly, in order to prevent the drought having any serious effects.

However, none of these tasks is being implemented properly.

Because of the great importance it attaches to the prevention of damage from the drought, the Party Central Committee called the plenary meeting to discuss this matter and allowed the provincial officials to return to their provinces as soon as the meeting had closed so that they would waste no time in trying to combat the drought. Yet no serious efforts are being made. During the plenary meeting in Pyongyang you did not arrange for anything to be done and even back home after the meeting you have been dillydallying without getting down to the job.

The Agricultural Commission is not taking effective measures and

the provincial rural economy committees are not tackling the task. It is several days since the chairmen of these committees returned to their provinces, but still they have taken no action. The chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees have taken no measures and the same is true of the chief secretaries of the county Party committees. The chief secretary of the Anju County Party Committee returned there yesterday, but as yet he has not come up with any ideas. Once he realized that his return was to be delayed he should have organized the work by telephone. But he did not do so, and since his return home he has not conceived of anything that might combat the drought. Meanwhile, the chairmen of the provincial people's committees have taken no action because they have only recently been appointed.

These officials have not fully accepted the decision of the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee; their attitude towards the intention of the Party is not good. They have still not rid themselves of the outdated habit of doing nothing once decisions have been adopted at meetings by a show of hands and by acclamation.

The Party Central Committee has declared a state of emergency to prevent any damage from the drought and ordered a general mobilization of the people, but you are telling everyone to stay calm. That is why you have not yet made any move in spite of the policy adopted at the plenary meeting for preventing drought damage.

While this period of severe drought continues, you will be able to survive only if you solve the problem of water. The struggle to solve the problem of water is a struggle for survival. The Party treated this as a vital matter, but to you it is no more than the merest trifle.

It is a matter of the utmost urgency to solve the problem of water; a single day's delay will be disastrous. The Party is showing great anxiety and impatience, but our officials are quite indifferent to the problem.

Some of them are only talking about making plans, designs, drills and so on, and their attitude is that it can be put off till later; they seem to be waiting for somebody to come and do it for them. If you wait for someone to come and draw up a design for you and supply you with

drills so that you can start pumping up water from underground, this year's farming will fail. If you intend to begin the project only after obtaining a design and drills, you will not ensure that water is supplied for sowing in spring. Even if water is made available, it will be enough for no more than 100,000 hectares. If you irrigate only 100,000 hectares of maize fields, the crop in the other fields will wither.

Some officials are showing no interest in pumping up water from underground, hoping that the drought will not be so disastrous and waiting for the rain to come. This attitude, too, is wrong.

Probably, it will rain. If it does rain, it will be a good thing. But if it does not, what can we do? Our officials have not yet stirred themselves because they have never suffered for want of water.

The drought is likely to continue under the influence of the cold front. The weather forecast always says that it will rain. But no rain has come. Yesterday, too, rain was forecast, but it did not rain. For it to rain the warm and cold air currents should meet. But the pressure of the cold front from the north is so high that the warm air current from the Pacific Ocean cannot reach our country. No one knows how long this phenomenon will last.

We must, therefore, launch a powerful mass campaign to overcome the effects of the drought, instead of sitting and waiting for the rain to come.

The most important task facing us at the moment is to dig as many wells as possible.

We must dig wells in every part of the country and ensure that sowing is done in the spring. What we must do right now is take emergency measures to ensure that sowing is successful by digging a large number of wells immediately, rather than setting up large irrigation systems. Certainly, we have to set up large-scale irrigation systems and it is true that building many of them will prove of great benefit. But if we are to undertake major irrigation projects we need a lot of water pumps, transformers, pipes and other types of equipment and materials as well as a great deal of labour and plenty of time. The best emergency measure for preventing drought damage is to dig wells.

If we are to set up large irrigation systems we shall have to dig a great many canals. It will take longer to build these canals than to dig all the wells we need. We must, therefore, direct our main efforts at present to digging wells, although major irrigation projects must be undertaken on a long-term basis. We must create a clear distinction between immediate and long-term projects, decide where the priority lies and organize the work properly.

The way to solve the problem of watering the crops is to dig wells at the edges of fields. If we can water one hectare of non-paddy fields by digging a well, it amounts to obtaining one hectare of non-paddy fields. We must realize the importance of obtaining one more hectare. On its own, rice farming cannot solve our country's food problem. It is difficult to produce more than three million tons of grain by growing only rice. Three million tons is too small an amount to ensure sufficient food for the people and enough meat and cooking oil for the miners and other working people and the soldiers of the People's Army. So, in addition to growing rice efficiently, we must use our non-paddy fields well and produce a large amount of maize.

In order to ensure that the yield from non-paddy fields is high in a dry year like this, it is imperative to irrigate the fields by digging wells. If we take no measures to overcome the drought now, the maize yield this year may well be lower than that of last year. Without water it is impossible to transplant humus-cake maize seedlings and keep them alive. If the maize seedlings dry up because of a lack of water after they have been transplanted, we shall have to sow the crop again. Then the crop will not ripen properly and the result will be a poor yield. Water is needed not only when seedlings are being transplanted, but also for keeping them alive.

If there are wells at the edges of fields, we shall have no serious worry even in very dry weather. If it rains after the wells have been dug, that will be fine; and if it does not rain, we can irrigate the crop with water from the wells. Even when it rains, it may only be a quick shower, and then we may have another dry spell. So we can use water from the wells whenever the weather is dry, and this will be good. Last

year, for instance, it rained in spring but there was a drought in July and August, the earing season. As a result, the maize yield was considerably reduced. If wells are dug at the edges of fields we shall have a solid basis for raising maize.

It is not difficult to dig a well. Dig anywhere and you will find water. Anyone can dig a well with a shovel and a pickaxe. We must launch a major campaign to dig wells at once, without a single day's delay.

There is no need to fix the number of wells to be sunk at 20,000. The recent plenary meeting set each workteam on the cooperative farms the task of digging two wells, which means 20,000 in all. This should be regarded as a minimum. If we are to successfully prevent any damage from drought, we must dig a lot more wells. Three or four wells per workteam would be very welcome. The more, the better. At least one well should be dug for every 3 hectares of non-paddy field. Wells must also be dug for the paddy fields which are irrigated by the rain. This year we must work hard towards a target of digging approximately 50,000 wells.

Your calculations are very conservative. There are 7,400 hectares of maize fields in Thaechon County, North Phyongan Province. However, this county planned to dig only 326 wells for the 1,600 hectares of non-paddy fields which suffered greatly from last year's drought or which are sandy. This is too small a number. Whether a crop field suffered drought damage last year or not cannot be a criterion for determining the area to be irrigated. Nor can we say that fields which are not sandy are immune to damage from the drought. You must dig wells for all the fields in which no irrigation system has yet been established.

If no water appears when you have dug to a depth of 5 metres, you must go on digging to a depth of 10 metres. If there is still none, you must carry on digging until you find water—to a depth of 20 or even 30 metres.

The size of the wells need not be uniform, but should vary according to the local conditions. You must not waste manpower by

digging large wells indiscriminately. You should dig wells of different sizes, taking into consideration the amount of water and manpower available. In places where large wells can water a wide area, it would be a good idea to concentrate your efforts and dig large ones.

Wells should be dug at the edges of fields as far as possible. This will make it easy to water the fields and will require little manpower and materials. The optimum site for a well is where it can supply water to the three or four hectares of non-paddy field that surround it. If there is no source of water at the edge of the field or if it is inadvisable to sink a well at that particular spot for whatever reason, you may dig the well in a more suitable place and draw the water from it.

You should not expect the state to supply the materials needed for the wells, but obtain them yourselves locally. The walls of the wells should be faced with stone in those areas where stone is available, with wood where wood is available or with concrete where stone and wood are not readily available. In a stony place like Nyongbyon County in North Phyongan Province it would be better to use stone. In North and South Hwanghae Provinces, where there is little stone and wood, concrete pipes will have to be made for the facing. Those places with no timber should be provided with some by the state.

The concrete facing must not be too thick. A thick facing will take a large amount of cement. A facing approximately eight centimetre thick would seem to be suitable.

In order to raise water from the wells you must have motors. There are many 4-hp and 8-hp motors in the rural communities. All these should be used for the wells as soon as rice transplanting is over.

Water pumps are also needed to raise water from the wells. A large number of different-sized water pumps must be produced, including 2-inch ones. The counties should obtain the design for 2-inch water pumps and produce them for themselves. I have been told that making one water pump of this size requires 30 kg of iron. This is not a large amount. The Administration Council must supply the amount of iron needed without delay.

Provinces should, if necessary, produce large water pumps to meet

their own needs. The state must supply the steel needed for the production of these water pumps.

Hoses will also have to be supplied. In order to raise water from wells, sufficient vinalon hose, which can withstand high water pressure, is required. Even if it has to suspend production of other goods for a while, the Ministry of Light Industry must ensure that approximately one million metres of vinalon hose is produced within the next two months until mid-June. Meanwhile, the Ministry of the Chemical Industry must produce about 50,000 metres of suction hose.

In order to dig a lot of wells within a short period, you must mobilize manpower efficiently.

At the moment the counties are having to run the campaign to dig wells by mobilizing the local population, and they should continue the task with the supporting labour when these people are there. The supporting labour should transplant rice seedlings and humus-cake maize seedlings on the one hand and on the other dig wells. In addition, every institution, factory and other industrial establishment must be assigned a few wells to dig, so that factory and office workers go to cooperative farms and dig wells for a few hours after work. Since there is a factory in every part of the country, many wells can be dug in this way.

Digging a well does not require a great deal of labour. I have been told that in Pobu-ri, Kaecheon County, it cost 30 man-days of labour to dig one well. You should organize the work properly, in such a way that some factories operate in the morning and then mobilize the work force to dig wells in the afternoon and some factories dig wells in the morning and operate in the afternoon. By organizing things in this way, both production and the digging of wells can be ensured and also the strain on power can be eased because power is used more evenly throughout the day.

Since students are to be mobilized in support of the rural communities anyway, educational institutions must not be assigned to digging wells.

Farmers have no time to dig wells because they have to make

preparations for farming. Their only task should be to choose the sites of the wells that are to be dug.

The Party, the army and the people must all turn out to dig wells, and finish the project quickly.

The provinces must not delay the work by holding plenary meetings of the provincial Party committees. Because the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee was held only a few days ago, it will be better for the officials to visit each *ri*, convey in person the decision of the plenary meeting to the masses and organize the work, instead of holding plenary meetings of the provincial Party committees. You should ensure that the decision of the plenary meeting is fully implemented by organizing the work properly and improving your examination of it.

Ideological motivation for carrying out the decision of the 13th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Party is not being done properly. You must intensify the ideological motivation of Party members and other working people. You cannot motivate them simply by holding meetings. Cadres must educate the masses, travelling from place to place to set them an example to follow. They must visit their subordinate units, talk to the farmers and join them in digging wells.

Not only must you dig the wells, but you must also drive pipes into the ground to raise water as part of the scheme.

Pipes should only be used in areas where they would have to be sunk to a depth of 30 metres or more. There is no need to use pipes where you can get to the water without drilling so deep. Digging wells is better in these places.

Drilling requires steel pipes, but it is doubtful whether the steel needed for this work can be supplied in time. Steel production at the moment is not smooth because of the power shortage. These days I am kept informed of the daily output of steel, and I know that production is not up to the planned level because of the power shortage. This is having a serious effect on production and construction in other sectors of industry. The Administration Council and the Ministry of the Metal

Industry say that they will supply the steel needed for the pipes, but I find this hard to believe.

If you wait for steel, and then find it is not supplied, the consequences will be disastrous. So you must not simply rely on receiving supplies from the state for sinking pipes, but work hard to dig wells. Even where you can only get to the water at a depth of 30 metres you should sink a well if at all possible, instead of trying to sink pipes. Digging wells is more dependable. In some countries they dig wells to a depth of 30 metres and sink pipes only when the water is deeper than that.

The decision of the recent plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee on sinking 10,000 pipes should be implemented. The Administration Council and the other sectors concerned must supply all the steel needed and also make 400 drills available for the purpose.

In this way we will dig 50,000 wells and sink 10,000 pipes as the first stage this year.

For the present we must make every effort to overcome the spring drought and then, on a long-term basis, take thorough measures to prevent any damage from drought.

In order to combat any drought in the future and to complete the project of irrigating 400,000 hectares of non-paddy fields as decided by the 12th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Party, we must continue to press on with the work of securing lasting sources of water by drawing on groundwater.

Of course, we must accelerate the construction of the reservoirs that are presently being built in order to increase our water storage capacity. But it will be impossible to irrigate all 400,000 hectares of non-paddy fields if we depend only on large-scale irrigation systems, even if we continue to build them over many years. Therefore, we must continue to search for new sources of groundwater by concentrating the prospecting forces on this work and digging wells and sinking pipes throughout the country, while at the same time accelerating the construction of large-scale irrigation systems.

If we are to obtain plenty of groundwater we have to produce drills

and other types of equipment. The Administration Council must first take measures to produce 500 tractor-operated drills and then more, if necessary, in the future.

A large number of mobile water pumps must also be produced. You must not think of borrowing tractors from the cooperative farms to raise water. These tractors must be used for ploughing and haulage. Using them to lift water will delay other farm work.

Mobile water pumps should be equipped with the 4-hp or 8-hp motors that are now in production, not with new ones which are still at the development stage. The 8-hp motor for the *Chungsong* tractor can raise water efficiently. If it is not powerful enough to raise water you can use two for each pump or one of the 16-hp motors designed for the *Jonjin* tractor. A more powerful motor is unnecessary for a mobile water pump.

A long-term solution to the problem of water must be found by the end of next year. We must set ourselves the target of completing all non-paddy field irrigation projects by that time, and make every effort to attain it. If you acquire the knack and accumulate experience in constructing non-paddy field irrigation systems this year, you can complete the scheme by the end of next year.

Steps must also be taken to find alternative methods of irrigation for those paddy fields that already have an irrigation system in case of a long spell of dry weather.

If you take measures to irrigate only maize fields, that will not be enough. If the drought continues, reservoirs may dry up and there will be no water to irrigate the rice fields. If this happens, the rice crop will fail.

There is a danger that the water for irrigating the rice fields in the Onchon, Jungsan and Ryonggang areas of South Phyongan Province will run out. The rice fields in these areas are irrigated by water from Lake Thaesong, but the water there will not last. If the water level of the Taedong River falls, it will not be possible to keep this reservoir full.

The situation is the same in the Sunan District of Pyongyang. If the

Kyonryong Reservoir dries up, it will be impossible to irrigate the rice fields in this district. Last year the reservoir dried up and there was not enough water to irrigate the rice crop there properly. In order to improve the management of the Kyonryong Reservoir, it must be placed under the direct control of the Agricultural Commission.

Some officials give no thought to searching for groundwater to irrigate those rice fields where an irrigation system already exists, rejecting the possibility that the reservoirs may dry up. They are wrong. We must be prepared for the worst. Formerly in our country it used to rain heavily in early July. In recent years, however, it has not rained at that time because of the influence of the cold front. Last year it was not until late July that it rained. At a meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee held last June we took measures to ensure that the water in the reservoirs was used economically, so that they could supply water until the end of July. If we had not taken such measures, we might have suffered a great deal. We must take steps to ensure that the rice can grow even when it does not rain before the end of July. All cooperative farms must dig wells and sink water pipes at the edges of rice fields, so that groundwater can be raised to flood the rice fields if the reservoirs dry up.

It must not be only the rural communities but the whole of the country that tries hard to make use of groundwater. Cities and county towns with limited sources of drinking water or none at all must dig wells and sink water pipes so as to provide sufficient drinking water. The People's Army must do the same in order to solve the problem of drinking water and of irrigating non-paddy fields. The People's Army has expressed its resolve to produce eight tons of grain per hectare of the 10,000 hectares it farms. This will be impossible if no thorough measures are taken to irrigate them.

In order to overcome damage from the drought we must use water more economically at the same time as searching for many new sources of water.

Although the recent plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee placed particular emphasis on the need to use water very

sparingly, you are not making any effort to do so. If you are to use water economically you should repair ditches before water is allowed to run through them. At present, however, water is being released from Lake Yonphung and other big reservoirs without the canals and ditches being repaired first. If the people concerned were doing a good job they should have repaired them all last autumn. But they did not do so. It is too late to repair the major canals now. In order to repair them the water supply has to be cut. But this is impossible because now is the main time for filling the rice fields with water. Although we may not be able to repair the major canals which are now supplying water, we must quickly repair the other canals and ditches which are not yet being used. In addition, ditches should be dug just inside many of the rice fields so that water can be carried into the fields along them.

On your return home you must launch a powerful mass campaign to dig wells and sink water pipes in order to prevent any damage from the spring drought, remembering the spirit of today's consultative meeting, and take thorough measures to overcome any drought that may occur in the future. What I have said at this consultative meeting must be conveyed to the officials in the eastern region so that they can take all the necessary steps to prevent damage from the drought. I have been told that there is plenty of groundwater in North and South Hamgyong and Kangwon Provinces. If they make every effort to raise and use it the people in the eastern region, too, will be able to overcome the drought.

**TALK WITH EXECUTIVE MANAGING
EDITOR OF JAPANESE
YOMIURI SHIMBUN AND HIS GROUP**

April 23, 1977

I received the kind letter of congratulations and the valuable gift you sent me on my birthday. Thank you. Now you have come to see me here and personally offered me your congratulations. I am most grateful.

I received from Chongryon Chairman, Han Tok Su, a letter of introduction asking me to make you feel welcome when you come to our country. I thank you once again for your valuable contribution to the activities of Chongryon in defending the democratic national rights.

I should have met you sooner. But I only came back to Pyongyang yesterday from my trip outside the city so our meeting is somewhat belated. Of course, I could have met you somewhere else but I decided to wait until Saturday and meet you in Pyongyang. I am conscious of the active contribution you are making to our work. Therefore I thought it only right to delay our meeting until I could set aside a few hours to answer your questions as fully as I can. This is why we are late in meeting you. I hope you will understand. Today we have time at our disposal. Please feel free to be quite open and ask me anything you like.

Although this is our first meeting I feel as if I were seeing old friends.

I heard you were rather surprised when you learned that I was working out in the provinces even on my birthday. I usually do not celebrate my birthday. This year, too, I instructed that no celebrations should be organized for the occasion. However, the young people would not listen to me, but held some functions among themselves. On my 60th birthday Sihanouk came and refused to let go of me. So I became a “captive” and was obliged to spend that day in Pyongyang.

Everyone has a birthday. It would be a bit of problem if everyone were to indulge in birthday celebrations, wouldn't it?

Of course, it is a good thing to share some merriment with a few friends on one's birthday. We are not against this. What we do oppose is pompous birthday celebration.

I am pleased to hear that you have been deeply impressed by the upbringing and education of our children and many other aspects of life in our country.

Our Party, the Government of the Republic, and our people regard the upbringing and education of children and students as a very important undertaking.

Our country now has large numbers of children and students who are looked after at state expense. The number of babies and children growing up in the nurseries and kindergartens is 3.5 million. The number of pupils and students attending schools at all levels from primary school to university is 5.1 million. Altogether, their number is far in excess of eight million. It accounts for nearly half our population. Our state is responsible for bringing up and educating all of them.

Needless to say, it is a heavy commitment to raise and educate half the population under the charge of the state. But in spite of the difficulties involved we are meeting that commitment to the rising generation because it is essential to secure the future.

The younger generation are our future. The future of the country and the progress of society depends on them. Therefore, it is extremely important to bring up the rising generation, the future master, properly.

We lived a hard life of humiliation in the past. We should ensure that the rising generation live in comfort, free from oppression and

humiliation. For this, the rising generation should be brought up to be cheerful and vivacious and equipped with a wealth of knowledge, robust health and high moral standards.

Now we are putting a lot of effective effort into the education of the rising generation. When we first started this work, the prospects looked bleak but we have become convinced through years of experience that it is not beyond our capability.

I leave it to you to form your own evaluation of our industry and agriculture. If you have the chance to see more of what is happening in these fields during your stay in our country, I think you will be able to draw your own conclusions.

Ours is a still developing country. It needs some time for our country to catch up with the developed countries. Our past experience convinces us that though there may be difficulties on the road ahead, we will be able to raise our country to the level of the developed countries. Our confidence is based on the fact that we have an independent national economy.

We have already established a solid independent national economy. From this base our country will advance more rapidly in the future. Ours is not a dependent economy subordinated to other countries. Therefore, no other country can dictate the development of our economy. It is we who will make the decisions that determine how our economy will develop.

You asked me about the prospects for our country's economic construction. I will say a few words about this.

In our country the Six-Year Plan was successfully fulfilled in August 1975, one year and four months ahead of schedule, in terms of gross industrial output value. But at that time, two targets were not fully reached. One was steel and the other cement.

Last year we completed the Six-Year Plan assignments for steel and cement production which had not been fulfilled. During my recent local inspection tour, I heard that the newly built cement factory was operating well and that it could be utilizing its full production capacity by the end of the year. This year the steel industry has also started to

operate at full normal production capacity.

We defined this year as a year of readjustment. In doing so we aimed at making further preparations for a year before embarking on a new long-term plan.

There is some strain on the transport system in our present phase of economic construction. Many new industrial establishments were built during the Six-Year Plan and our transport system is failing to keep pace with our industrial growth. We, therefore, decided that this year transport should be improved. We are working hard to ease the strain on the system.

In order to improve the efficiency of our transport, we are trying to further accelerate the electrification of the railways, rapidly expand our shipping capacity and mass-produce heavy-duty trucks to develop road haulage on a large scale.

Next year our country will embark on a new plan for the development of the national economy. This will be the Second Seven-Year Plan. Our past experience has shown that in our country six or seven years are more appropriate than four or five as the term of a plan for the development of the national economy. Our Second Seven-Year Plan now under preparation will cover the period from 1978 to 1984.

We are in the process of drawing up this plan. Though I cannot tell you specific indices of this new long-term plan since it is still in the making, we intend to double the output of major manufactured goods during its term.

The most important elements in the nation's economic development are steel, electric power, cement and coal. These are the main factors in industry. A few years ago, we set the long-term goal for the steel industry as the attainment of an annual production of 12 million tons of steel. We intend to bring the annual steel output up to the seven to eight million ton mark during the projected Seven-Year Plan. We plan to increase coal output to 70 to 80 million tons, electricity to 60,000 million kWh, and cement to 12 to 13 million tons. So the new Seven-Year Plan envisages a doubling in output of major

manufactured goods in general. We are confident that we will attain the goals of the new long-term plan by the year 1984.

We consider it important that in fulfilling the Second Seven-Year Plan, we exploit and utilize our own indigenous resources on the principle of self-reliance, without resorting to the introduction of foreign capital. Of course, we will introduce some advanced technology from other countries. But in general we will solve our problems on our own by relying on the solid independent national economy already created in our country and without introducing foreign capital.

When we develop heavy industry we do not do so for its own sake. We develop heavy industry which serves the production and supply of goods necessary for light industry, agriculture, construction and other fields of the national economy.

Next, you asked me how I evaluate the Carter administration. I think this is a very interesting question.

We have never commented on the Carter administration yet. But now I would like to talk to you about it.

In his campaign pledges, Carter said he would withdraw US troops from south Korea and would denounce any regime that tramples on human rights. Recently he announced the lifting of the ban on travel to some countries, including the Democratic People's Republic of Korea. All this can be interpreted as a favourable attitude towards our country. The problem is, what he said in his campaign pledges differs from what he has done since.

Of course, we have to wait and see how Carter fulfils his pledges. It is only a few months since he took office. But the remarks of certain people now about the withdrawal of the US troops from south Korea contradict Carter's election commitments on many points.

There is currently talk in the United States that the withdrawal of the US troops from south Korea will be effected gradually over a period of four to five years. The US President's tenure of office is four years. So I think this talk about the gradual withdrawal of the US troops from south Korea over a period of four to five years suggests

that the US military presence in south Korea will not end while he is in office.

There is also a rumour that even if they actually did pull out the US troops from south Korea, there would not be a complete military evacuation because the air force would stay on. This is a far cry from Carter's pledge to withdraw US troops from south Korea completely. The air force is also a military force.

They say that the US troop withdrawal from south Korea will be made with the full understanding and consent of the south Korean authorities and the Japanese government. The south Korean authorities are opposed to the withdrawal of the US troops. The Japanese government is also against it on the whole. So it is hard to guess what the United States means when it says it will withdraw its troops from south Korea with the consent of the south Korean authorities and the Japanese government—whether it means that it will do so by talking round those opposed to it or that it cannot do so because of these dissenters.

Of course, Carter himself has made no statement about this particular issue. Mostly his subordinates, among them Vice-President Mondale, have made such statements. These people have passed many remarks in one context or another. If these remarks express the position of the Carter administration, then he is renegeing on his campaign pledges. If they do not represent Carter's will but the opinion of his subordinates, I think further study is needed as to his administration. It is for this reason that we have not yet passed any critical comment about the Carter administration. As regards its attitude, we will have to wait and see. It is only three months since Carter assumed office and there is yet time for him to honour his campaign pledges.

But, in one respect, the Carter administration is blatantly renegeing on the campaign pledges.

The Carter administration threatens other countries by declaring that it will not support any regime which suppresses human rights. Yet it continues to give military aid to the south Korean authorities and stages joint war exercises with them.

The US forces and the south Korean puppet army persist in joint war exercises. This spring “B-52” strategic bombers of the US air force frequently flew to south Korea from Okinawa and carried out bombing exercises. More recently, a large-scale war manoeuvre was carried out. I think you already know all about this.

The US forces have bombing exercise grounds all over the place. Why then do they come to south Korea for bombing practice? It is more to threaten and blackmail the south Korean people than to frighten us, and to encourage south Korea’s reactionary rulers to intensify suppression of the people. That is why we consider that this runs counter to Carter’s campaign pledge that he would not support any regime which suppressed human rights.

Though we were favourably impressed with Carter’s campaign pledges, we will be interested to see how he honours them. It would be premature to give a definite opinion about the Carter administration now.

Now, I would like to speak about the question of Korea’s reunification.

You asked me whether the prospects for reunification, including the question of dialogue, are bright or gloomy. The possibility of Korean reunification can never be regarded as hopeless. For us nothing is hopeless. We cannot live if we have no hope. All our people live in hope that one day the country will be reunified.

At the present juncture, the solution of the Korean issue depends on the Koreans themselves. If the question of Korean reunification is to be resolved, it is necessary, first of all, for the south Korean people to arouse themselves and rise up to bring about the democratization of south Korean society.

It cannot be said that the struggle of the south Korean people for democracy has been totally squashed. The south Korean people continue to struggle in the hope of freeing themselves from the fascist suppression of the enemy and his tyranny. On March 1 last year south Korean democrats published a “Declaration for Democracy and National Salvation” against the dictatorial fascist “regime”. This year

students issued a “Declaration”. Even religious groups in south Korea hold “prayer meetings” and struggle against the fascist “regime”. This proves that the demand for democracy is growing among the south Korean people.

The south Korean rulers have resorted to imposing a most unscrupulous fascist rule. But such a fascist suppression cannot succeed. The lessons of history show that a tyranny can never survive for long. There is as yet no recorded instance in the history of any nation of any tyrant who lasted for long. There is no such instance in our time, either. In the past the dynasties of feudal society and the rulers of capitalist society tried to consolidate their position by repression. But all of them met their doom in the face of the resistance of the masses. Therefore, we think that if the south Korean people awaken and the entire people in north and south Korea fight in unity, Korea can surely be reunified independently.

Korea must be reunified on the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity, as we already made clear in the July 4 North-South Joint Statement. No matter how the situation may change in the future, the question of Korean reunification cannot be solved apart from these basic principles.

As for dialogue between the north and the south, we consider that we cannot engage in it with the south Korean authorities while they continue to pursue their current policy of fascist suppression. But if they give up the “anti-communist” slogan, renounce the policy of suppression against the south Korean democrats, discard the “two Koreas” plot, sincerely want reunification, cease augmenting their military forces, abandon the policy of detaining foreign troops in south Korea and stop increasing tension there, we can have a dialogue with the Democratic Republican Party, too. We have already talked about this many times and re-emphasized it at a joint meeting of political parties and public organizations some time ago.

We are confident that whatever course the situation may take, Korea will certainly be reunified, if the Koreans themselves strive to solve the question of Korean reunification and if the people of the

world raise their voices against the unjust policy which aims at splitting the Korean nation and in support of its reunification.

Next, you asked me how the recent change of leaders in the United States, China and Japan would influence the relations between Korea and these countries. Let me speak about this.

As I have already discussed the Carter administration of the United States, I will say no more about it.

In China, Comrade Hua Guofeng has become Chairman of the Party. China is our neighbour and a fraternal country. The peoples of Korea and China are old comrades-in-arms, so relations between Korea and China are very good.

As for the Fukuda Cabinet of Japan, we hardly know it yet. It will take some time for us to form a judgment about it.

The question of relations between Korea and Japan largely depends on whether the present government of Japan takes an independent road or follows the policy of the United States. In our opinion, therefore, there will be no great progress in relations between Korea and Japan until relations between our country and the United States are improved.

Previously the Japanese government was at the beck and call of the United States, toeing its line. If the new government of Japan acts with independence there may be some change in its policy towards our country. But it is hard to imagine any significant improvement in its relations with our country because the new government of Japan is also closely associated with the reactionary ruling circles of south Korea. We do not consider it likely that the Japanese government will go much further in promoting closer relations with our country than exist at present before our country is reunified.

There will be no major shift in Japanese government policy regarding relations with our country. But we think, since the United States declared that it would lift the ban on travel to Korea, that the Japanese government will take this as a cue to try to have more personal and cultural exchange with our country. It is no bad thing to have free personal visits between the two countries. We expect nothing more from the present Japanese government.

Frequent personal visits between the two countries will help the Japanese people understand our people better and vice versa. We believe that enhancing mutual understanding between the two peoples in this way will be very gratifying.

We will not make unreasonable demands that the Japanese government should have ties only with us and sever its links with the south Korean authorities. We need not make this sort of demand, and to do so would be merely to invite refusal. If such a demand were put forward when our country is not yet reunified, it would put the Japanese government in an awkward situation. We, therefore, do not entertain great hopes of the Japanese government regarding the question of Korea-Japan relations.

What we would expect from the Japanese government is that it refrain from acts which are detrimental to the reunification of our country. We would regard it as a step in the right direction if the Japanese government pursued a policy which was not obstructive to the reunification of Korea. Such a policy would entail that the Japanese government does not ask for the permanent presence of the US forces in south Korea like the reactionaries of south Korea, discontinues acts in support of the suppression of human rights in south Korea and refrains from helping the reactionary rulers of south Korea to feather their own nests. This would be highly conducive to Korean reunification.

This alone will be enough to make us believe the Japanese government is friendly towards us. We advance this very moderate request to the Japanese government.

You also asked me whether a liaison office can be set up for the development of trade between Korea and Japan and whether a fishery agreement can be concluded between the two countries. I think this is feasible.

It is a question of whether the Japanese government will agree or not. The question is whether the Japanese government can ignore the pressure from the United States, since the Japanese government is intimidated by it. We will not oppose the idea if the Japanese

government agrees to it. The crucial element is the attitude of the Japanese government.

As for the question of concluding a fishery agreement between Korea and Japan, we have made our position clear on several occasions. We will not oppose it, if the Japanese government is not against it. We stated as much to a delegation of the Japan Socialist Party and also to a Japan-Korea amity and friendship fishery delegation when they visited our country. This question, too, depends upon the attitude of the Japanese government.

Lastly, you asked me for our opinion of the *Yomiuri Shimbun's* desire for wide cultural exchange with our country. We are in full support of this.

It is in the best interests of the peoples of both Korea and Japan to expand cultural exchange between them.

The *Yomiuri Shimbun* deserves hearty congratulations for taking this kind of initiative to improve the Japanese people's acquaintance with Korea and extend their knowledge of the country. I am grateful to you.

The development of cultural exchange between Korea and Japan is beneficial for both the Japanese people and the Korean people. It also benefits the cause of Korean reunification. We, therefore, fully support your initiative and will actively respond to it.

I hope that you will have a detailed discussion on this question with our appropriate officials.

It has been a great pleasure to have had this opportunity to talk to you today and answer your various questions.

**LET US IMPLEMENT LOCAL BUDGETS
CORRECTLY SO AS TO IMPROVE
THE STANDARD OF LIVING
OF THE PEOPLE**

**Speech at the Seventh Session of the Fifth
Supreme People's Assembly of the Democratic
People's Republic of Korea**

April 27, 1977

Every county should follow the example of Kangso County, South Phyongan Province, in developing local industry. Kangso County has now set an example for the whole country to follow in the management of local industry. Last year it did very well in implementing its budget by operating local industry efficiently and also contributed a large sum of money to the state treasury. In addition, it produced large quantities of daily necessities and processed food and thus made a great contribution to the welfare of the people.

Last year Jagang Province also made considerable progress in improving local industry and implementing its local budget.

Last year all our counties implemented their local budgets properly and balanced their books. This is a great success.

Quite a few counties, however, only barely managed to cover expenditure with income and they failed to make any contribution to the state treasury and could not exploit every potential in the local area.

In local districts there is a great deal of potential for developing local industry and implementing the local budget better. If the

by-products from centrally-run industry and other materials which can be obtained locally are processed into a variety of daily necessities for the market, a large sum of money will be earned. If you develop service facilities and improve services for the working people, you will earn a sizable amount of money.

Ever since we started the programme of postwar reconstruction we have located factories in different parts of the country, instead of concentrating them in major cities. As a result, there are now centrally-run factories in almost every town and county. Take South Phyongan Province for instance. There are such factories in Tokchon County, Anju County, Sunchon County, Songchon County, Kangdong County, Onchon County, Nampho and so on. There is no big factory in Jungsan County, but there is a fishing station there. If the counties strengthen ties between the centrally-run industry in their area and local factories under their jurisdiction and see that the former helps the latter in every way possible, they will be in a position to solve many of their own problems. Since centrally-run industry has technical expertise and discharges different kinds of by-products in large quantities during the production process, local industry can receive technical assistance and these by-products from them. By processing them well, they will be able to produce large quantities of daily necessities and foodstuffs. This will increase the income of the counties.

Kangso County is running its local industry efficiently by making effective use of materials that are available locally. It has strengthened ties with such centrally-run industry in the area as the Kangson Steel Complex, the Kum Song Tractor Plant, the Kangso Knitwear Factory, so as to obtain technical assistance, and by-products it has received from them have been processed well. If other counties follow the example of Kangso County and organize their work carefully, exploring every opportunity in detail, they will also be able to develop local industry quickly and implement the local budget better.

Potential sources can be found everywhere. Jagang Province, Ryanggang Province and North Hamgyong Province have plenty. There is more centrally-run industry in North Hamgyong Province

than in any other. But the officials have failed to organize the work, so they do not develop local industry as they should and are not producing large quantities of the consumer goods needed by the people. At the moment daily necessities are more scarce in North Hamgyong Province than in any other province.

In implementing the local budget, counties must no longer rest content with balancing their own income and expenditure. They must not only balance their own budgets, but also earn plenty of money for the state and meet the needs of their own people by increasing the production of daily necessities and processed food. In implementing the local budgets, counties must not confine their efforts to earning large sums of money; they must consider their major objective to be the production of sufficient consumer goods to meet the needs of their own people. The senior officials in each local district must think carefully about how to develop local industry, how to operate the local budget better and how to considerably improve the standard of living of the people in the county.

The deputies and officials who are attending this Supreme People's Assembly are in duty bound to think carefully and work hard to raise the standard of living of the people. The people have elected you comrades to the Supreme People's Assembly and to the people's assemblies at different levels in the hope that you will be their faithful servants who work hard to improve their livelihood. Some officials, however, are still lacking the proper spirit of serving the people faithfully and the attitude of working heart and soul for an improvement in their standard of living.

This session of the Supreme People's Assembly is being attended by the chairmen of many county people's committees and county administrative committees. They must make a critical analysis of their work at the section meetings and discuss fully ways of increasing the production of daily necessities, improving the processing of non-staple foodstuffs in order to bring about a radical change in the food industry and improving services for the working people. In this way they will be putting their work on the right lines this year.

In the first place, they must further develop local industry.

The development of local industry will help to ensure that the local budget can be implemented properly and that the standard of living of the people is improved.

Counties must exploit every potential in their area and increase the production of daily necessities and processed food. Where wood is available, wood products must be made; and where there are metalworks, their by-products must be processed into different kinds of hardware. In addition, food processing must be developed so that the production of a variety of good food is increased.

They must build factories for producing caustic soda and carbonate of soda.

The demands of centrally-run industry for caustic soda and carbonate of soda are increasing all the time. So it is impossible to supply these items in large quantities to local industry when they are produced by centrally-run industry. Counties must, therefore, build medium- and small-sized factories to produce these items to meet local needs.

Local industry must make strenuous efforts to use materials more economically and lower production costs.

In my New Year Address this year I set the task of lowering planned production costs by at least two per cent. All sectors must make every effort to achieve this goal.

In order to reduce production costs it is essential to stop wasting coal and electricity. According to the report from the Administration Council, Kangso County in South Phyongan Province is using coal very economically. However, in some other areas the efforts being made to use coal more economically are inadequate, so that large quantities are being wasted. If coal is wasted, a reduction in production costs and a solution to the problem of generating electric power become impossible to achieve. Hydroelectric power stations are currently not working at full capacity because of the water shortage caused by the cold front. So we are operating thermal power stations at full capacity and they require large amounts of coal. We must increase coal production and, at the same time, make sure that all sectors use it

economically. This is the way to ensure that sufficient coal is supplied to the thermal power stations and that enough power is generated.

Every county must increase production of daily necessities and foodstuffs, try harder to economize and thus fully implement this year's local budget and ensure that revenue exceeds what was forecast.

We must improve services for the working people.

At present the service industries are not keeping up with other sectors. The recent meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee discussed the matter of making great efforts to improve services this year. Everyone should become involved in this to ensure success.

In fact, there is no reason why we cannot improve services. Once a lot of fruit syrup is produced, for instance, the people who buy it will enjoy it. So, why can we not do so? Our country produces fruit in large quantities. The amount of fruit produced by our orchards is large and the same is true of fruit trees growing wild. If officials were to pay just a little attention to this matter, they would be able to produce as much fruit syrup for the market as was needed.

Mineral water can also be bottled for sale.

There are mineral springs in almost every area of our country—in Kangso, South Phyongan Province, Jonchon and Sijung, Jagang Province, and in many other places in other provinces. By building simple bottling plants at these springs you will be able to produce refreshing mineral water to sell to the people.

We have built a modern mineral water bottling plant in Kangso County. This serves as an example for the rest of the country to follow. But other districts have not built proper bottling plants. They are simple to build. If the chief secretaries of city and county Party committees and the chairmen of city and county people's committees and administrative committees show just a little interest in this matter and organize the work, and if large factories and other industrial establishments in the vicinity help them a little, they will be able to build fine mineral water bottling plants.

We must solve the problem of cooking oil.

It is impossible to solve this problem satisfactorily by cultivating sunflower, rape and perilla alone. Nor can we import the materials to make the oil. No country wants to sell them because agriculture is suffering throughout the world due to the cold front. We have to make every possible effort to produce cooking oil ourselves.

If cornstarch factories and riced corn flour mills are equipped with maize germ separators, and if the germs are separated and oil is extracted from them, the problem of cooking oil can be solved.

Our country now treats two million tons of maize annually. If we gather all the germs from this amount and press them, we shall produce 60,000 tons of oil. In the future we shall be processing approximately three million tons of maize, then we shall be able to produce nearly 100,000 tons of oil.

Producing 100,000 tons of oil from soya beans would need a large area of land. If we suppose that between 1.5 and 2 tons of beans are produced per hectare, then, since beans yield 13 percent oil, 400,000 hectares of land would be required to produce 100,000 tons of oil. Our country has a limited area of farmland, so we cannot afford to devote 400,000 hectares to cultivating soya beans. This is why every cornstarch factory and every riced corn flour mill in every province, every city and every county must be equipped with maize germ separators so that the problem of cooking oil can be solved by processing maize germs.

Almost every one of these urban and rural districts has a cornstarch factory, a riced corn flour mill or an oil pressing mill. So, if these mills are equipped with germ separators, maize oil can be produced in every part of the country.

If we produce 100,000 tons of oil from maize germs, we shall have sufficient to supply to the people. If enough maize oil is produced, other types of oil can be used in industry.

Maize oil tastes good and doctors say that it is very good for the health. Nevertheless, some of our officials are failing to ensure that maize germs are collected so that oil can be extracted from them. They are allowing such a good source of oil to be thrown away. Some plants in the

livestock farming sector are feeding the maize, germs and all to their animals, and some housewives are washing the germs down the sink. This shows that our people still have a careless attitude towards matters of economy. If we continue in this way, we shall never be prosperous.

We must increase fish production.

As I said at the recent Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the West Coast, we seem unable to catch large quantities of fish although they are teeming in our seas, so we cannot supply sufficient to the people.

The West Sea is teeming with anchovy, sand eel and other small fish as well as prawns, planktonic shrimps and shellfish. I have been told that in some areas of the sea planktonic shrimps are moving about in a shoal one metre in depth. But the officials in charge of fishing in the West Sea are unwilling to catch such small fish as anchovy, sand eel and prawns and planktonic shrimps; they are just concentrating on catching large fish. As a result, the supply of fish to the shops is inadequate and only small amounts of pickled shellfish and pickled prawns and pickled planktonic shrimps, all of which people like to eat, are in stock.

The small catch of fish in the West Sea is due entirely to the failure of officials to organize the work properly in order to increase fish production.

Some time ago I met a few fishermen working in the west coast region. They said that it took them four or five hours to sail from the Nampho Fishing Station to the waters off Onchon for a day's fishing. To make matters worse, there is a great difference in the sea level between high and low tides, and at low tide the fishing boats cannot reach the wharf. So, in fact, fishermen have to spend half their working day sailing to and from the fishing grounds. If you build a simple pier on the shore near the fishing grounds to allow the fishing boats to unload there, they will have considerably more time available for fishing.

Members of the fishermen's cooperative in Songnim have said that it takes a boat with no motor more time to sail to the fishing grounds off Nampho and back than hours available for fishing. If fishing boats are motorized, they will be able to sail quickly to and from the fishing

grounds, but a lot of time is wasted because they are not motorized. The Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex, a large industrial establishment, is in Songnim. So there should be no problem in providing motors for a few fishing boats. A fishing boat can be motorized simply by fitting it with a tractor engine. Our officials are now talking a great deal about mechanization in agriculture, but they are still paying scant attention to mechanization in the fishing industry.

Lacking the proper spirit of serving the people, the officials make no effort to try and understand the problems of the fishing industry, nor do they take any measures to solve them. So I criticized them for these shortcomings at the Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the West Coast and told them to improve fishing in the West Sea. The fishing industry there must carry out the tasks it has been given at the meeting.

They must first motorize fishing boats and develop fishing bases near the fishing grounds. Once these tasks have been implemented, they will be able to increase the catch using only the fishing vessels they have at present.

Fishing bases can be developed by building piers for the fishing boats, fuel tanks, warehouses and other buildings such as modern rural houses where the fishermen can relax.

The fish must be processed properly.

There are still a large number of housewives who have no job. By forming them into fish-processing workteams for instance, this job will be done well. If these workteams process a large amount of fish, the people will be supplied with an adequate amount and a large variety of delicious and nutritious processed fish, and both family incomes and state revenue will be increased.

We still have a great deal of work to do to improve the standard of living of the people and increase state revenue. All local government organizations and officials must further develop local industry and exploit every potential and possibility in every way so that local budgets are operated better, and in this way the standard of living of the people will be raised and local and national budget revenues will be increased.

ON THE LAND LAW

**Speech Delivered at the Seventh Session
of the Fifth Supreme People's Assembly
of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea**

April 29, 1977

At this session of the Supreme People's Assembly we are going to adopt a definitive Land Law. Yesterday a report was made recommending that this law be adopted and a draft of it was read.

Up until now our country has never had a definitive land law. The only important law concerning the land that we have is the Agrarian Reform Law that was introduced immediately after liberation, and this stipulates that the land belongs to the peasants who till it. In addition to this, some aspects of the question of land are dealt with in the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country* and in the Socialist Constitution. The Socialist Constitution states that the land and all other means of production belong to the state and to the cooperative organizations. As you know, questions of principle concerning land and land ownership have been expressly laid out for each stage of the revolution. But there is as yet no land law which covers land development, land conservation and land administration comprehensively.

Of course, no confusion or serious problem has as yet arisen due to the lack of such a law. Because we have the Rules of the Cooperative Farm and a series of other regulations governing the use and administration of land, cooperative farms, state enterprises and civil service establishments use and administer land under the control of the

state and society. But on its own this is not enough.

Land is an important factor of production, a precious asset that is vital to the development of the economy and the life of the people. Therefore, we should conserve and administer the land carefully and develop it more efficiently so as to make the most effective use possible of our land for building the economy and improving the lives of the people. That is why we need this law.

The state is the ruling machinery, and the law is an essential means by which it rules. The law is a set of rules that is binding on all citizens. As long as the state exists, there must be the law; without laws there is no state and social order. If everybody simply did just what they wanted, instead of acting in an orderly manner, abiding by the law, society could never develop.

The basic law that governs all state and social activity in our country is the Socialist Constitution. In order to enhance the functions of our socialist state and consolidate and develop our socialist society, we need specific laws for the different spheres of life based on the Socialist Constitution. Ever since the Socialist Constitution came into force, we have been preparing various important laws such as the Land Law, the Socialist Law on Property and the Socialist Law on Labour. The Land Law is the first to be drafted and will be presented to this session of the Supreme People's Assembly.

The Land Law that has been drafted pays due regard to the real needs of our socialist society. In our country socialist agricultural cooperation has been established and many state farms set up, and subsequently socialist agriculture has been making rapid progress; this demands that land ownership and the specific problems concerning land conservation, administration and utilization be codified as soon as possible. Therefore, the new Land Law sets out in detail how in socialist society land ownership should be organized, how the land should be developed and how it should be conserved and administered. The Land Law offers a broad definition of land. Only cultivated land springs to mind when one speaks of land, but the Land Law introduces a new concept of land that includes rivers, forests, roads and tidelands.

Land conservation, administration and development figure prominently in the Land Law. The definition of land ownership is comparatively simple at present. If the law was concerned with nothing more than the ownership of land, it could cover this in a few short paragraphs. However, while offering a clear definition of land ownership, the draft Land Law gives prominence to planned land development under a master plan for land development, proper land conservation and administration on a nationwide scale and as a state undertaking, to an improvement of the soil in arable land, methodical land realignment, and to the development of all the land in our country to make it more beautiful, productive and useful. Therefore, in a way this law is a set of theses on land and a programme for land development.

What is important about the Land Law is that first of all it demands that a comprehensive plan for land development should be drawn up so that all land development can be carried out.

It is only by developing land and exploiting natural resources according to a comprehensive plan for land development that we can use our land rationally, avoid doing the wrong jobs first and having to start all over again, and thus prevent a waste of money and materials.

At present we are suffering some undesirable effects of our earlier failure to develop land according to a comprehensive plan.

A motorway between Pyongyang and Wonsan is being built without reference to such a plan, with the result that the work is not progressing as intended. People involved in road construction think of nothing else except building roads when they draw up their plans and people in the power industry think only about power stations when they design their dams. As a result, the plans conflict with each other, and work has to stop and the road construction plan has to be revised.

The people of Jaeryong Mine built a road without thinking ahead and wasted a lot. An accurate estimate of the location and size of the ore field should have been made and the road built so that it would not hinder the development of the mine. But they showed no foresight with the result that only a short time later they had to build another road several kilometres long along a different route, and it is by no means easy to

divert a road. It may involve building new bridges, resurfacing the road and encroaching on a large area of cultivated land. Any mistake made in road building wastes an enormous amount of labour and materials.

The same sort of thing was seen in the construction of the Jaeryonggang Reservoir. Because we had no comprehensive plan for land development, many houses and other buildings had been erected where the reservoir was to be sited, and it became necessary to remove railway lines and demolish many houses and rebuild them elsewhere. If a master plan for land development that included this reservoir had been drawn up beforehand and a regional plan based on it had been worked out, all this trouble would have been avoided.

If the state is to exercise unified control over land development and manage it properly, then we must draw up a comprehensive plan for the development of the land.

This plan should include everything—where to build villages, as well as where to build cities, factories, canals and railways.

During the Fatherland Liberation War, I gave the lecturers and students of Kim Il Sung University the task of designing a canal to link the East and West Seas of our country. They put a great deal of effort into it and drew up a very creditable design, although it did take rather a long time. Their plan envisages not only building a canal by adjusting the Taedong River between Nampho and Tokchon, but also making the riverside more beautiful, keeping the river full of water at all times and producing a lot of electricity by making use of the barrages on the canal. This is an excellent plan for land development, a great plan for harnessing nature.

The Political Committee of the Party Central Committee examined the design drawn up by the lecturers and students of the university and acknowledged that it was fully practicable. This design should be included in the master plan for land development.

Now that a canal from the Taedong River is included in the master plan for land development, all public works on the shores of the river must be dovetailed with it.

The master plan must take the prevention of pollution into account.

Some officials have shown little consideration of this matter in their choice of residential districts and factory sites.

The city of Chongjin is an example of this.

A few factories were built in Chongjin by the Japanese imperialists before liberation. The only concern of those villains was to squeeze as much as possible out of our working class and our people; they did not care a hoot if our people died because of pollution. So they built factories in residential districts and did a great deal of harm to our people. Nevertheless, even after the war many more houses were built near these Japanese-built factories in Chongjin. When we heard of this, we criticized the Chongjin reconstruction plan most severely and gave instructions that new houses should not be built near the factories in the city, but in the Ranam district away from the factory chimneys.

Of course, factories may sometimes have to be built in residential districts for a variety of reasons, such as access to railways, electricity and raw materials. If this cannot be avoided, then the workers should be housed elsewhere.

It is very important to devise a comprehensive plan for land development, but it is just as important to carry it out properly.

However good the master plan may be, it is useless if it is not carried out properly. Today building in Pyongyang is done according to a general plan for urban construction. But previously, some institutions and enterprises, looking only to their own interests, hampered construction in the city by building for themselves where and how they pleased, quite independent of the urban plan. If buildings not included in the plan are constructed randomly, they will inevitably have to be pulled down some time later. Recently, this practice has been eliminated and, bit by bit, discipline has begun to be established.

Once the Land Law comes into force, rigid discipline will have to be established in all spheres so that building is only undertaken strictly in accordance with the master plan for land development.

Present here are all the senior officials of the ministries and commissions of the Administration Council, local Party and government bodies and economic organizations. Whether land development is

successful and in accordance with the Land Law depends on your ability to cope with the task. In future all officials should work responsibly to develop the land, adopting a proprietary attitude in compliance with the requirements of the Land Law.

Another important aspect of the Land Law is the proper undertaking of land conservation and administration.

The conservation of the various types of land, such as farmland, forests and rivers, is closely interlinked. In order to conserve cultivated land, good forests should be established on the mountains and the rivers controlled properly. Planting forests on the mountains is also necessary for the protection of rivers.

During their occupation of our country, the Japanese imperialists recklessly stripped our mountains of all their timber and left them bare of trees. After liberation we put a great deal of effort into establishing forests on the mountains, with the result that hills near the cities have become thick with trees. Remote places in the depths of the mountains, too, are densely wooded. But there are still few trees on the hills around mining villages and on those in the intermediate zones. So, when it rains, crop fields are flooded, land is washed away by the flood water and this silts up the river beds.

Take the Taedong River for instance. Because good forests have not been established on the mountains in Songchon, Yangdok and other areas in its upper reaches, each time it rains, the land is washed away and the river bed is silted up. Measurements taken of the bed of the Taedong River in Pyongyang over the past ten years or so reveal that every year an enormous amount of sand is deposited. During the rainy season in particular, a large amount of sand is washed down to accumulate at the bottom of the river. The same is the case with other rivers, and the Songchon River in Hamhung and the Susong River in Chongjin are no exceptions.

The Taedonggang Construction Company and other building enterprises engaged in river-improvement work are now constantly dredging the rivers and building up the banks. But if forests are not established on the mountains in their upper reaches, this is useless

because sand will always be carried down. You cannot keep building up the river banks as the river bed becomes higher. If you simply go on piling up the embankments, the towns built by the riverside may eventually appear to be sited in a well.

Slag from the mines also contributes to silting up the river-beds. Since slag is being dumped carelessly, it is washed away and carried into the rivers after heavy rainfall. Since open-cast mining was introduced at the Joyang Coal Mine, the bed of the Chongchon River has been rising continuously. This is because slag is washed down into the river.

All the tasks of land conservation are closely linked in this way, so they can never be successful if undertaken only by the peasants or the few workers concerned. Land conservation will be successful only when state establishments and enterprises, social and cooperative organizations and all other units treat it as important and apply themselves to it together. Land conservation is the common duty of the whole Party, the state and the people.

For land to be conserved effectively, it is necessary to create dense forests in the upper reaches of the rivers.

Although in recent years our country has been suffering from a severe drought because of the cold front, normally it is a country where the rainfall is heavy. Our annual precipitation averages as much as 1,000-1,200 millimetres, and the rain is often torrential in July and August. Sometimes up to 400 millimetres of rain fall in a single day. This makes it all the more important that the mountains in the upper reaches of our rivers are heavily forested to hold the rain water and release it gradually. If there are dense forests up the rivers, however heavy the rain may be, there will be no flooding and the river-beds will not rise.

Dredging the rivers and building up the embankments should be continued. Since the mountains up the rivers are not yet thickly forested, we should conduct a vigorous campaign to plant trees at the same time as pushing on with dredging and building up embankments. This is indispensable for the prevention of flooding and the protection of the land.

In order to protect our farmland we should plant many willows and

build stone walls along the edges of those fields that are liable to be washed away by the rain.

At the mines, measures should be taken to prevent ore residues and slag being washed into rivers by rain water. It is not particularly difficult to prevent slag being washed into rivers. All you need do is build a dyke across a ravine near your mine with a water outlet at its base, and then dump the waste there. At the ore mines ore-residue settling basins should also be built.

In conjunction with conserving the land properly, it should also be well looked after. People from every walk of life should treat the land as their own and strictly observe the regulations for its use.

Yet another important aspect of the Land Law is the proper development of the land.

Efficient land development is particularly important in our country where the area of arable land is limited.

The population of our country is large, but there are only 2,000,000 hectares of arable land here. Of these 2,000,000 hectares, the area for normal crops is no more than 1,500,000 hectares, once orchards, mulberry plantations and fields on steep hillsides are excluded. If the people are to live on this limited land, it must be developed efficiently to get the most out of it.

Efficient land development is essential also for mechanizing farm work and freeing the peasants from the need to do hard labour.

Without proper land realignment, it is impossible to mechanize farming and to free the peasants completely from hard labour. It is only when the land is well laid out and farm work mechanized on a large scale that the peasants can be freed from heavy work and only then will there be no need to mobilize the blue and white-collar workers, soldiers and students of the whole country to lend a helping hand to the rural areas in the rice-transplanting season every year.

If the land is laid out properly and farm work mechanized, grain output will be markedly increased. When rice seedlings are bedded out by hand, the required number of bunches per *phyong* cannot be ensured however skilled the planter may be. Last year we failed to grow strong

rice seedlings because the spring weather was cold, and so the rice was planted mainly by hand because the machines could not be used. As a result, the number of bunches per *phyong* fell short of the norm, which resulted in a considerable loss to the grain harvest. According to the regulations issued by the Agricultural Commission, at least 100 bunches should be provided per *phyong*, but it was only possible to plant 85 to 90 bunches by hand. One bunch short loses us nearly 1,000 grains per *phyong*, assuming that one bunch of seedlings issues 13 stems and each ear bears 70 grains. The weight of 1,000 grains of rice is 25 grammes, so one bunch short per *phyong* means a loss of 75 kg of rice per hectare, and if ten bunches per *phyong* fail, 750 kg per hectare are lost. At present it is a frequent occurrence for the number of bunches to fall short of the optimum, resulting in a loss of one or two tons of grain per hectare. The mechanization of farming, therefore, is of great importance in increasing grain output.

Effective land development is also necessary to prevent any damage from the cold front and to continue to raise crops without worry.

These days crop farming is being frustrated by the cold front all over the world, and many countries are suffering a food shortage. Even with enough money, food cannot be bought anywhere.

The cold front has produced abnormal climatic conditions in our country, too, and the situation may get worse in the future. It is possible that one day in the not-too-distant future it may snow on a summer's day.

As we are subject to the influence of the cold front, we should anticipate that the weather may display a thousand different, abnormal characteristics and we should carry out land development so well that we can raise crops safely with the caprices of our climate having only a minimal effect.

In order to push on with and make a success of land development, all industries and all units must give active support to the rural areas, and the Party, the army and all the people should come forward and become involved in the work of developing the land.

First of all, dry-field irrigation projects should be accelerated.

Considerable success has already been achieved in this undertaking.

Upholding the five-point policy for harnessing nature set out by the Party at the 12th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee, our agricultural workers and the whole population have worked hard on dry-field irrigation, completing the systems for watering 100,000 hectares of fields in just over five months. Following the 13th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Party held a short time ago which urged them to make another leap forward, they have dug 42,000 wells and pools and driven pipes into the ground to obtain water within a matter of 20 days or so, irrigating a further 100,000 hectares of field. This enormous achievement is most encouraging. Once organized, the strength of our people is truly impressive.

These admirable results in the struggle to implement the decisions of the plenary meetings of the Party Central Committee are striking evidence that our people are solidly united around the Party and have the indomitable revolutionary spirit to carry out Party decisions through fire and water, and that when all our people turn out in response to the Party's call, they are quite capable of levelling mountains and filling in the sea. It is a source of great pride to our Party that we have such people and such organization.

Without lowering the soaring morale of the people, we must continue the struggle to prevent damage from drought.

We should not stop sinking wells and striking pipes just because it is raining at the moment. Although there is a little rain at the present, it may be dry in June and July. Last year many people said it would rain in early July, but no rain came until the end of the month, after a long spell of dry weather. The drought was so severe that more than 200 reservoirs came close to drying up. This year, too, no one can say for certain when it will rain. So, we must on no account abandon the projects designed to extract water from below the ground just because there is a little rain falling at the moment. Needless to say, in the rice-transplanting season, all our energies should be concentrated on transplanting rice. But when that is finished, we must carry on with tapping groundwater. The work to obtain water from below the ground should be carried on in autumn and winter.

If we work on in the same spirit as now, I believe we will be able to finish nearly all the work for irrigating 400,000 hectares of dry fields by this autumn or next spring in accordance with the decision of the 12th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Party.

Then, wide areas of sloping fields must be terraced.

In our country there are nearly 200,000 hectares of fields on hillsides with a gradient of 16 degrees or steeper. We cannot ignore such a large area of land; it should all be terraced. These fields on hillsides will be good when they have been terraced and the per-hectare grain yield from them will be increased several times.

In Kangdong County, South Phyongan Province, fields with a gradient of 30 degrees and steeper have been terraced, and last year they yielded an average of six tons of grain per hectare. Before that, the per-hectare grain yield was only 600-800 kg. So the per-hectare yield has been increased tenfold since terracing.

Terracing requires far less manpower and funds than tideland reclamation and it does not take very long. If we terrace some tens of thousands of hectares a year, we will have terraced all 200,000 hectares of sloping fields without too much difficulty within the next few years.

At the same time as terracing all these fields, we should make all our paddy and dry fields a standard size.

The Chongsan Cooperative Farm, Kangso County, South Phyongan Province, the Migok Cooperative Farm in Sariwon, North Hwanghae Province, and nearly all the other farms on the plains have realigned their fields rationally. But the cooperative farms in the intermediate and mountainous regions have not done so as yet. The farms that have not yet completed land realignment should remove the ridges between dry fields and between paddy fields, lay out the plots methodically and realign paddy fields that are on a slope to form a spiral so that tractors can enter and work them easily.

The work of readjusting the land should not be done too hastily. In summer the fields have to bear crops and in winter the earth is frozen, so the time available for this work is very limited. Some of the work can be done in autumn when the crop has been harvested and some the

following spring. In practice only some two months of the year are available for this work. So, land realignment cannot be completed in just a year or two; it will be some time before it is finished.

If land realignment is to be completed at an early date, ways of doing this work in winter too must be found. If that were possible, land realignment could be completed earlier.

Tideland development is another job that has to be done.

Tideland reclamation is a long-term undertaking. Damming tidal marshes requires large ships and a variety of equipment and involves a lot of manpower and enormous investment. Therefore, tideland development must be planned after every detail has been carefully considered, so at the moment, our major efforts should be directed towards irrigation and field terracing projects.

Projects for perfecting the irrigation system should be stepped up; the work of terracing all sloping fields must be advanced rapidly; and the fields need to be properly realigned to increase the area that can be sown. In this way grain production will be much greater and the target of producing ten million tons of grain annually will soon be reached. Five million tons of cereals are enough to feed our people. And when we can produce ten million tons of grain a year, our people will live more prosperously, with their rice bins filled to the brim.

Another important aspect of land development is efficient engineering on the rivers.

Along with the development of agricultural land, this will make it possible to use the land for many different purposes.

All the rivers of our country should be looked after well and particular emphasis should be placed on improving the major rivers which are of great importance to the economy.

Our country has many rivers that could be converted into navigable waterways. A navigable channel between Nampho and Tokchon can be cut on the Taedong River in accordance with the plan drawn up by the lecturers and students of Kim Il Sung University, and others could be built on such rivers as the Chongchon, Amnok and Jaeryong.

It is essential that today the major rivers should be navigable. For

example, if the Suncheon Cement Factory was to produce steadily, its output would be three million tons of cement annually, which is by no means a small load to transport. Though the capacity of the railways could be expanded to carry the cement, this is not all that has to be transported—transport of the raw materials for the cement, and coal from the Suncheon area is also needed, so the railways alone cannot meet all the region's needs. To solve this problem, a channel should be built quickly on the Taedong River so that river transport can augment rail transport.

At present some countries cut canals through gullies where there is no convenient river. By contrast, our country has many rivers which can be made navigable by the construction of a few barrages. Why should we not take advantage of such favourable conditions? We must work hard to make our rivers navigable and make a great deal of use of them according to the comprehensive plan for land development.

When engineering work on the rivers is done properly, a great deal of electric power can be generated and water can be obtained more easily for irrigation, as well as river transport being improved.

The comprehensive plan for land development outlined in the Land Law must be drawn up properly and, on this basis, we must conserve, manage and develop our land properly, and so make our country still more beautiful and rich.

Our main objective in bringing in the Land Law at this session of the Supreme People's Assembly is not to govern the people by force of law; it is to set out a programme for land development, thereby bringing about a great change in the development, conservation and management of the land. All deputies and officials attending this session should understand the aim and significance of the Land Law correctly, and when they go home, they should explain the law to all the working people. This will encourage all the workers and all the people to observe the Land Law willingly.

It is my firm belief that all the comrades present here and all the working people will accept the Land Law that is now before this session of the Supreme People's Assembly, treating it as an important programme for land development and work together to implement it.

THE LAND LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF KOREA

**Adopted at the Seventh Session of the Fifth
Supreme People's Assembly of the Democratic
People's Republic of Korea**

April 29, 1977

CHAPTER I. THE LAND OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF KOREA IS A PRECIOUS GAIN OF THE REVOLUTION

Article 1. In the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, the land is a precious gain of the revolution that was won by all the peasants under the wise leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea and the people's government through the democratic revolution in pursuance of the great Agrarian Reform Law enforced according to the principle "Farmland to the tillers".

Article 2. In the Democratic People's Republic of Korea agrarian reform and the policy of agricultural cooperation have been carried out fully. As a result, feudal land ownership and all forms of exploitation have been eliminated in the rural areas once and for all and socialist land ownership has been fully established.

The State shall endeavour to consolidate and develop the successes achieved by agrarian reform and agricultural cooperation in the northern half of the country and to complete the agricultural

revolution throughout the whole nation.

Article 3. The land of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea is saturated with the blood of our revolutionary forerunners who laid down their lives for agrarian reform and it is bound up with the revolutionary spirit of the people who fought heroically in defence of the country from the imperialist invaders.

The State shall defend the land, the gain of the revolution, against the encroachment of all enemies from within and without.

Article 4. The State shall take the necessary steps to confirm, consolidate and develop by law the success of agrarian reform and socialist land ownership and to protect and exploit the land for the joint use of the State and society so that the material and technical foundations of socialism are further strengthened and the socialist construction of the country is accelerated to the utmost.

Article 5. The State shall organize and carry out on a long-term basis the work of land conservation, land development and other projects for transforming the land and harnessing nature, according to the master plan for land development.

Article 6. The State shall promote scientific research on exploiting the land, industrializing and modernizing agriculture and, in particular, on improving the land and making better use of it by relying on the foundations of the independent national economy built in our country, and shall train skilled personnel for the purpose under a long-term plan.

Article 7. The State shall classify the land according to its uses as agricultural land, inhabited land, woodland, industrial land, aquatic land and special land and manage them accordingly.

Supervision and control of the administration and exploitation of land shall be exercised on a coordinated basis by the land administration offices under the guidance of the people's committees at all levels, the Administration Council and the administrative committees.

Article 8. The land is a precious asset of our people that ensures their livelihood and it is a source of wealth for the country that will

ensure its lasting prosperity.

The State shall inculcate socialist patriotism in agricultural workers, officials of state organs and other people so that they protect and manage the land properly and take good care of it.

CHAPTER II. LAND OWNERSHIP

Article 9. In the Democratic People's Republic of Korea the land belongs to the State and to cooperative organizations.

All land in the country is the common property of the people, and cannot be sold, bought or appropriated.

Article 10. The land of the State belongs to the entire people.

The State may own land without limit.

Article 11. The land of the cooperative organizations is the collective property of the working people engaged in the cooperative economy.

The State shall protect the land of the cooperative organizations by law.

Article 12. The State shall strengthen and develop the cooperative economic system of socialism, and may, with the development of the agricultural economy, gradually place the land of cooperative organizations under the ownership of the entire people according to the voluntary will of the entire membership of the cooperative organizations.

Article 13. The land of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea may be controlled only by the State and used in various ways by the cooperative farms, organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens in the interests and for the welfare of the people.

The household vegetable plot of each cooperative farmer shall be between 20 and 30 *pyong* as set out in the Rules of the Cooperative Farm.

CHAPTER III. THE MASTER PLAN FOR LAND DEVELOPMENT

Article 14. The master plan for land development is a coordinated, comprehensive, long-term programme for properly developing, using, realigning and enhancing the beauty of the land in accordance with the aims of advancing the national economy and promoting the well-being of the people and for managing the economic life of the nation as a whole on a long-term basis and in a planned way.

The State shall draw up and carry out an ambitious and dynamic master plan for land development to make the country prosperous and to raise the standard of living of the people.

Article 15. The principles that shall be adhered to in drawing up the master plan for land development are as follows:

1. In land development and in the exploitation of resources, arable land shall not be encroached upon, but shall be valued and protected in every way possible;

2. Cities shall not be too large in size; many small cities shall be built;

3. The climatic and physical features of the different areas of the country shall be taken into consideration;

4. The master plan shall be a scientific one that conforms to the direction of development of the national economy and to the prospects for economic development in different areas of the country.

Article 16. The master plan for land development shall cover a period of between 30 and 50 years.

This period may be shortened depending on circumstances.

Article 17. The master plan for land development shall include:

1. Measures to improve and preserve old revolutionary battle sites and places associated with the revolutionary history of the country;

2. The orientation of the realignment, improvement and conservation of the land, of the acquisition of new land and the reclamation of tideland and the measures to be taken accordingly;

3. The orientation of afforestation and measures to preserve and use the forests and to protect all useful animals and plants;

4. The orientation of the construction and readjustment of rivers, lakes and reservoirs, the distribution of installations for preventing flooding, and measures for the various ways in which water is used;

5. The proper distribution of transport, power and communication networks and their facilities;

6. The areas identified for tapping mineral resources and the location and size of industrial and agricultural enterprises;

7. The location and size of towns, villages, recreation centres and sanatoria, and measures to preserve beauty spots, natural monuments, cultural relics and remains;

8. The orientation of the comprehensive development and exploitation of coastal areas and territorial waters, and measures to enhance the beauty of coastal areas and protect marine resources;

9. Measures to prevent pollution.

Article 18. The master plans for the development of the land in the country as a whole and in the major regions shall be approved by the Supreme People's Assembly or by the Central People's Committee, and local plans for land development, by the provincial people's assemblies or by the provincial people's committees.

CHAPTER IV. LAND CONSERVATION

Article 19. The State shall carry out land conservation projects including river improvement and afforestation work to prevent the loss of land, increase the material wealth of the country and promote the well-being of the people.

The land administration offices, agricultural guidance institutions and land exploitation agencies should be responsible for organizing and undertaking land conservation work according to the master plan for land development.

Article 20. River improvement projects are important for protecting the cultivated land and other valuable assets of the country from flooding and for changing the appearance of the land.

The State shall conduct construction work on rivers simultaneously with irrigation projects, in keeping with the natural and geographical conditions and features of the areas concerned, and at the same time continue to improve the major rivers as well as lesser waterways.

Article 21. The land administration offices and agricultural guidance institutions should organize and carry out river improvement projects in a planned way and on a long-term basis according to designs.

The improvement and administration of major and important rivers shall be undertaken by the land administration offices, and the improvement of lesser waterways by the institutions, enterprises and cooperative farms concerned.

River improvement should be undertaken by concentrating efforts primarily on the major industrial areas and residential districts that suffer greatly from flooding, and on areas with large tracts of arable land to be protected.

Article 22. The land administration offices, local government organs and the institutions, enterprises and cooperative farms concerned should investigate and register in detail any changes in the rivers under their supervision, the condition of the dykes and installations on them over the period designated by the State every year and take any measures they deem appropriate.

Article 23. The land administration offices should establish a coordinated system of repairing and administering the rivers, and increase the role of the enterprises that specialize in the repair and administration of them in order to put this work onto a professional and scientific basis.

The public security organs should regularly inspect the technical condition of the rivers and dykes and take any measures they deem appropriate.

Article 24. The land administration offices and the institutions, enterprises and cooperative farms concerned should carry out the dredging of river-beds, the readjustment of river courses, dyke construction projects, work to protect the riverbanks, revetment and the anti-erosion works so that land will not be washed away by heavy rain.

Article 25. The land administration offices shall set up conservation areas where necessary, in order to protect the rivers, lakes, reservoirs, dykes and other structures.

In these areas such acts as damaging river dykes and other structures or hindering their conservation and management are prohibited.

Article 26. It is prohibited to let unpurified sewage flow into rivers, lakes and reservoirs, or to empty uncleansed toxic materials and dirt into them.

Article 27. The land administration offices, agricultural guidance institutions and local administrative organs should draw up plans for the comprehensive exploitation of the rivers and see to it that diverse and effective use is made of water for irrigation, generating electricity, for industry, drinking, river transport, breeding freshwater fish, rafting and other purposes for the benefit of the national economy and for the cultural recreation of the working people.

Article 28. The agricultural guidance institutions and the enterprises concerned should make drainage facilities as good as possible in the areas where fields are liable to be submerged in water, and regularly organize and conduct the work of repairing and maintaining them.

Article 29. The state and cooperative farms should plant willows or build stone walls at the edges of riverside fields and dig channelling ditches around dry fields on mountain slopes in order to prevent the loss of land.

Article 30. Afforestation is a great and far-sighted project for harnessing nature to conserve the land, make the country rich and

powerful and ensure prosperity for generations to come.

The State shall arrange and carry out afforestation on a long-term basis to prevent the loss of land and to increase the natural resources of the country.

Article 31. The land administration offices and the institutions, enterprises and organizations concerned should change the nature of the forests by planting wood-pulp trees, oil-bearing trees, fibre-giving trees, fruit trees and trees for firewood according to the plans in keeping with the natural and economic conditions of the given areas, and should increase the productivity of forests by planting fast-growing and useful species and planting them closely and by creating mixed forests of coniferous and broad-leaved trees. The forestry planning organizations should draw up plans for this.

Article 32. The land administration offices shall mark out definite areas for the institutions, enterprises, schools and organizations to tend, in order to make the masses as a whole responsible for afforestation and forest conservation work.

The institutions, enterprises, schools, organizations and citizens should take an active part in spring and autumn tree planting, conserve the forests properly and take good care of them and turn the mountains throughout the country into a paradise of greenery.

Article 33. The State shall mark out forests for the timber industry and forests in the charge of institutions and enterprises in order to build up reliable timber production bases and meet the needs of the institutions and enterprises for timber. The institutions and enterprises concerned should build up forests in these areas according to a plan, take good care of them and establish solid timber production bases.

Article 34. The State shall mark out forests in the charge of cooperative farms as well as groves of firewood in order to surround the farm villages with densely wooded hills and to meet the needs of the cooperative farms for timber and firewood. The cooperative farms shall establish forests in these areas, conserve and look after them, while making free use of them.

Article 35. The land administration offices and other institutions,

enterprises and organizations shall set up tree nurseries and give priority to growing saplings in compliance with the long-term plans for afforestation.

The tree nurseries should produce a large quantity of fast-growing saplings which are of great value to the national economy.

Article 36. Forests should be used with foresight and in a planned way to meet the requirements of the development of the national economy and the improvement of the standard of living of the people.

In felling mountain trees permission should be obtained from the land administration offices and the authorities concerned beforehand, and then old, fully-grown and damaged trees should be cut down first and thus felling in rotation will be ensured.

Trees should be planted without delay in clearings as well as on the paths along which logs used to be hauled.

Article 37. The State shall set up special forestry reserves in order to conserve the forests in regions where there are revolutionary battle sites and places associated with the revolutionary history of the country.

Nature conservation forestry reserves may be set up for scientific research on forests.

Tree felling is prohibited in special and nature conservation forestry reserves.

Article 38. The land administration offices should organize and conduct the protection of forests against forest fires—strengthening the watch against forest fires, cutting firebreaks where necessary and establishing a system for mobilizing manpower and equipment.

Article 39. The land administration offices should organize and conduct any work that is necessary such as treating the forests promptly and protecting and multiplying animals that eat harmful insects, so as to prevent damage to the forests by disease, pine caterpillars and other harmful insects.

Article 40. The land administration offices, agricultural guidance institutions and other organs and enterprises concerned should protect the land against natural disaster and enhance the beauty of the country

by creating shelter belts, anti-erosion woods, woods for recreation and scenic beauty and forests to safeguard watersheds and by building anti-erosion and landslide control structures, in keeping with the topographical features of the specific locality.

Article 41. The institutions, enterprises and organizations engaged in the development of mineral resources should first set up waste dumps and ore-residue settling basins to avoid causing damage to the land, including cultivated areas, in the course of exploiting mineral resources, and should take care to prevent cave-ins occasioned by mine workings beneath farmland, buildings or establishments.

Article 42. At coal and ore mines the areas where waste and removed earth have been dumped and where mining excavation has been undertaken should be levelled out quickly so that crops can be raised or trees planted there.

CHAPTER V. LAND DEVELOPMENT

Article 43. The State shall use foresight in organizing and conducting the work of land development to hasten the industrialization and modernization of agriculture, to increase agricultural production and change the appearance of the land.

The land administration offices, agricultural guidance institutions and other organs, enterprises and organizations concerned should carry out land development on a planned basis in accordance with the master plan for land development.

Article 44. In the Democratic People's Republic of Korea the great task of paddy-field irrigation has been carried out successfully.

The State shall complete the non-paddy-field irrigation system while consolidating and developing the paddy-field irrigation system.

Article 45. The land administration offices, agricultural guidance institutions and other organs, enterprises and cooperative farms

concerned should, in accordance with the master plan for land development, build reservoirs and complete and strengthen their dams and take measures to use groundwater so as to secure a better supply of water, and should repair the irrigation apparatus regularly to prevent the loss of water through leakage.

Article 46. Land realignment is an important undertaking for obtaining large tracts of new land, increasing grain production and achieving the comprehensive mechanization of and comprehensive use of chemicals in agriculture.

The agricultural guidance institutions, the state and cooperative farms and other organs, enterprises and organizations concerned should continue with land realignment under annual plans and according to designs.

Article 47. In realigning the land the agricultural guidance institutions, state and cooperative farms and other organs, enterprises and organizations concerned should move buildings and installations to the foot of mountains methodically, remove unnecessary ridges between paddy fields and between non-paddy fields, lay out wide and standard plots, and build irrigation and drainage channels and field paths accordingly.

Article 48. Increasing soil fertility is an important guarantee for increasing grain production.

The county agricultural guidance institutions and the organs, enterprises and organizations including the state and cooperative farms that work on the land, should examine soil regularly, analyse the fertility of the soil at various depths and take samples of each layer of soil and draw up land registers and tables of these analyses for each plot and carry out land improvement on a scientific basis.

Article 49. The construction of terraced fields is an important way of increasing the crop yield.

The cooperative farms and the organs, enterprises and organizations concerned should terrace sloping fields, build irrigation and draining systems there and take positive measures for mechanizing haulage.

Article 50. The State shall direct a major effort towards tideland reclamation which will increase the area of arable land and make a great change to the appearance of the land.

The agricultural guidance institutions and other organs, enterprises and organizations concerned should carry out the intensive reclamation of tideland firstly in those areas where the natural and geographical conditions are favourable and suitable for such work.

In the reclaimed tideland, percolation irrigation, chemical methods and so forth should be introduced, and fresh water supplied, to aid the rapid removal of salt, so that crops can be planted.

Article 51. The agricultural guidance institutions and other organs, enterprises and organizations concerned should build tidewater control dykes along the coasts in keeping with the topographical features of the specific locality and maintain and strengthen them, in order to prevent any possible damage to the cultivated land and salt fields by tidal water.

Article 52. The State shall build modern, well-appointed towns and villages to improve the living conditions of the people.

The local administrative committees, the city management offices and other organs, enterprises and organizations concerned should lay out houses, cultural and welfare establishments and roads in towns and villages to meet the requirements of the modern, socialist way of life, and should build towns and villages in such a way as to narrow the distinction between town and country and make the development of all parts of the country uniform with regard to politics, the economy and culture.

Article 53. The city management offices should build fine parks, pleasure grounds and other cultural recreation areas for the working people in various parts of the cities and their suburbs and plant flowers and trees everywhere to create pleasant surroundings for the population.

The agricultural guidance institutions and cooperative farms should plant fruit, oil-bearing and other kinds of trees in and around the villages to make them more beautiful.

Article 54. The local administrative committees should exercise control to prevent cities and villages becoming littered or polluted.

The organs, enterprises and organizations engaged in the construction of buildings and establishments should clear up the sites on completion of the construction work or of the excavation of building materials.

Article 55. Roads represent one of the important component arteries of the national economy and a main indication of the economic development of a nation.

The State shall build and manage roads on the principle of ensuring smooth political, economic and cultural links between all regions of the country and promoting the well-being of the people.

Article 56. Roads shall be classified into motorways and six other grades according to their scale and usage.

The building of roads and their protection and management shall be undertaken by the land administration offices, city management offices and other organs, enterprises and cooperative farms concerned according to the grade and usage of the road.

Article 57. All the roads in the country should be paved with cement, asphalt or stone to strengthen their surface; the technical condition of all roads should be constantly improved; and the safety and speed of the traffic and the modernity of the roads should be ensured.

Article 58. The road administration offices should put up good warning, indication, prohibition, mileage and other road signs, plant fruit trees and strong, fast-growing useful trees, lay out green verges and flower beds and set up resting places along the roadsides, thereby keeping the roads in good order.

Article 59. The land administration offices, the local administrative committees and the city management offices should accurately survey and ascertain any change in the volume of traffic according to the season, route and section, and regularly repair and adjust the roads, bridges and other structures and installations according to a plan and allot certain sections of each road to organs,

enterprises and organizations as their responsibility to protect and maintain.

Article 60. The organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens are prohibited from taking any measure that is liable to hinder the protection and management of roads such as damaging the roads and their structures and installations or cutting down roadside trees without prior permission.

Article 61. The State shall promote the development of coastal and territorial waters, such as developing and adjusting these waters, building or extending harbours and opening waterways, thus making the country rich and strong and developing water transport.

The administration offices for coastal and territorial waters and other organs, enterprises and organizations concerned should, according to the master plan for land development, organize and conduct the development of coastal and territorial waters on a long-term basis, regularly maintain and repair the installations in coastal and territorial waters and make the seashore more beautiful.

Article 62. The administration offices for coastal and territorial waters and other organs, enterprises and organizations concerned should control and conduct the work of protecting and increasing marine resources in coastal and territorial waters on a long-term basis and in a planned way.

CHAPTER VI. LAND ADMINISTRATION

Article 63. The improvement of land administration is an important requirement for thoroughly protecting the land and using agricultural land effectively as required by the Juche farming method.

Cooperative farms and all the organs, enterprises and organizations that work on the land should strictly adhere to a system and order in using the land.

Article 64. Agricultural land comprises only arable land.

Agricultural land shall be managed by the agricultural guidance institutions and by the cooperative farms, organs, enterprises and organizations that use it.

Article 65. It is prohibited to leave cultivated fields idle or abandoned without prior permission. When wishing to leave them idle or abandon them or use them for purposes other than agricultural production, permission should be obtained from the relevant land administration offices according to the size and specification of the area involved and thereafter the approval of the central agricultural guidance office or the Administration Council.

With regard to this article, the land to make up for the land thus used may be recovered under the state plan.

Article 66. When cultivated fields are to be used for purposes other than agricultural production, permission should be obtained, taking into account the area of land involved in the given year.

When the organs, enterprises and organizations which have been using cultivated fields for purposes other than agricultural production no longer have any need of them, they should prepare them for crop cultivation and return them to the farms concerned before the following sowing season.

Article 67. When an organ, an enterprise or an organization wishes to use cultivated land for sideline production, it should obtain the approval of the Administration Council, and when it wants to change the category of the land, it should obtain the permission of the central agricultural guidance office.

Article 68. Cooperative farms may exchange fields if it is more convenient for cultivation.

In this case they should obtain the permission of the higher agricultural guidance office concerned.

Article 69. Inhabited land comprises built-up areas in cities, county towns and workers' settlements and the adjacent land, the land for public use, and built-up areas in the countryside.

Inhabited land shall be managed by the central city management

office and the local administrative committees.

When an organ, an enterprise or an organization wishes to use inhabited land, it should obtain the permission of the relevant provincial administrative committee or the Administration Council.

Article 70. Woodland comprises the mountains and fields which have been or are to be planted with forests and the plots within them used for various purposes.

Woodland shall be managed by the land administration offices and the organs, enterprises and organizations that use it.

When an organ, an enterprise or an organization wishes to use woodland, it should obtain the permission of the Administration Council or the relevant land administration office.

Article 71. The land administration offices should exercise supervision and control to prevent the organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens from felling trees without due attention or burning down forests to create fields.

Article 72. Industrial land comprises the land occupied by factories, ore and coal mines, power stations and other industrial establishments and the adjacent land.

Industrial land shall be administered by the organs and enterprises using it.

Article 73. The organs and enterprises administering industrial land should not waste land by marking out a greater area than required by the factories, enterprises and other industrial establishments, and shall strictly protect and take care of industrial land.

Article 74. Aquatic land comprises the specific area of land occupied by coastal and territorial waters, rivers, lakes, reservoirs, irrigation canals and the like.

Aquatic land shall be administered by the land administration offices or by the agricultural guidance institutions as may be appropriate.

When an organ, an enterprise or an organization wishes to develop and use aquatic land or to set up installations on it, it should obtain the permission of the Administration Council or the land administration offices as circumstances may dictate.

Article 75. Special land comprises the land used for special purposes, such as old revolutionary battle sites, places associated with the revolutionary history of the country, places of cultural interest, reserves, and land for military use.

Special land shall be administered by the central organ concerned, local administrative committees and the organs, enterprises and army units using it.

Article 76. The authorities which have given permission to use land may withdraw it whenever the needs of the state demand it.

Article 77. The land administration offices should assume coordinated control over all the land in the country and register it, and exercise supervision and control so that the order established may be strictly maintained in the administration and use of land and so that land may be used in a far-sighted way according to the master plan for land development.

Article 78. The agricultural guidance institutions should register without delay the land that has been recently reclaimed and the land obtained through land realignment, and the organs, enterprises and organizations using the land should inform the authorities concerned promptly of any change in the land situation.

Article 79. The agricultural guidance institutions, the state and cooperative farms and other organs concerned should keep the land well-documented and maintain the files properly.

Article 80. It is the sacred duty of all the people, agricultural workers and state organs to treasure and take good care of the land. All the people, agricultural workers and officials of state organs should assume the attitude of masters in conserving, developing and managing the land.

In the event of the established order being broken in the conservation, development and administration of the land, the organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens to blame shall be held fully responsible by law.

**TALK TO A DELEGATION FROM
THE FRENCH ACTION COMMITTEE
TO SUPPORT THE INDEPENDENT AND
PEACEFUL REUNIFICATION OF KOREA**

May 8, 1977

I am very glad of your visit to our country and welcome you warmly.

You have formed a solidarity committee for supporting the reunification of Korea, which represents the most ardent desire of the Korean people, and are visiting our country on behalf of that committee. This is a source of great encouragement to our people. I am grateful to you for what you have done.

The Korean people know the French people very well and love them. The French people supported our people in the struggle against the US imperialists when they unleashed the aggressive war on our country. During the Fatherland Liberation War they staged frequent mass demonstrations that denounced the aggression of the US imperialists and supported the just struggle of our people. At the time, *L'Humanite*, the organ of the French Communist Party, carried many articles that expressed support for our people in the fight against the aggression of the US imperialists and even sent a war correspondent to our country. I met him, too. He remained in our country for a long time.

The members of our Party and other Korean people are well aware of the support given them by the French people in their righteous struggle in the past. We would like to praise the French people, particularly the

political parties of France including the Communist Party and the Socialist Party, for upholding the banner of independence.

Maintaining independence is extremely important. At present the French people are advancing with the banner of independence held high, and this has a great influence not just in Europe, but throughout the world.

This is the age of independence. It is not just the working class and other working people, but people from all walks of life who are now demanding independence. The developed capitalist countries including Italy and Canada, to say nothing of France, are all calling for independence, and so are the third world and newly independent countries. This is natural; it is the contemporary trend of thought that conforms with the tide of historical development. The peoples of many countries throughout the world are demanding independence because they are unwilling to dance to the tune of another country. The people of each country must shape their destiny by their own efforts.

Nevertheless, the US imperialists are going against the tide of history and attempting to lord it over other capitalist countries and keep them under their control.

A Korean proverb says that one is given a disease and then the medicine. The economic crisis that the developed capitalist countries have been experiencing in recent years is the result of the US imperialists' policy of giving the disease before the medicine. Oil-producing countries have raised the price of oil, and this is, in fact, the result of a plot conceived by the American CIA.

I have read a magazine from one country, which states that such countries as West Germany, France, Japan, Italy and Canada have reached a level in the output of goods that surpasses that of the United States and have already outstripped her in the motorcar industry and various other spheres, and that the spheres in which the US still exercises a monopoly in the world number only three. These are in food, weapons and oil.

The United States is cornering the oil market and monopolizing the oil produced by countries in the Middle East, Southeast Asia and Latin

America. The oil-producing countries are generally short of food and weapons, so the US is selling these to them at high prices and taking vast quantities of oil in return. In one particular country, there are 28,000 US advisors selling weapons at high prices and buying cheap oil.

Because the US monopolizes oil, she is not affected seriously by a rise in its price. But France, Italy, West Germany and other capitalist countries are suffering badly because of the situation. Due to the rise in the price of oil, many factories have been closed down and many people have lost their jobs in these countries. This is why we say that the rise in the price of oil brought about by the US is like giving a disease and then the medicine.

Even though they call themselves allies of the developed capitalist countries, the US imperialists are trying to make them dance to their tune in order to rake in greater amounts of money from them and fill their pockets. How can such people be called allies?

The US imperialists' policy of giving the disease and then the medicine is, in fact, causing discontent in developed capitalist countries and is encouraging them to maintain their independence. Therefore, the voices demanding to follow an independent road are growing stronger even in these capitalist countries. Medium and small entrepreneurs, as well as non-comprador capitalists, are all demanding this. Under such circumstances, I deem it necessary for the working class to form a united front with people from all walks of life, on the basis of their common ideal of maintaining independence.

We consider that you are right to stress independence and quite agree with your attitude.

The working class should stand by independence. They should fulfil their internationalist duty by solving their own problems before anything else. It is nonsense to say that one should carry out one's internationalist duty while abandoning the interests of one's own people. If one fails to solve the problems in one's own country properly, one will never be able to perform one's internationalist duty.

You are cadres of the Party that stresses independence, and

maintain the same position as we do. That is why our people welcome you warmly and support you.

Now we are striving to defend independence and educating the people to maintain it.

As for the question of our country's reunification, our people's struggle for national reunification is not a struggle between communism and capitalism, but a struggle between independence and sycophancy. We are trying to reunify the country independently, but the south Korean reactionaries are attempting to do it by relying on external forces.

The struggle of our people for national reunification is also a struggle between patriotism and treachery and between national independence and colonialism. The south Korean reactionaries are trying to subordinate half of the country permanently to the US imperialists.

Our people's struggle for national reunification is also a fight between democracy and fascist dictatorship.

This is the nature of our people's struggle for national reunification. That is why the south Korean people are supporting the reunification of the country. Not only the working class and peasants in south Korea, but also the progressive intellectuals and Christians there all oppose the fascist rule, claim that the society should be democratic and support the reunification of the country.

Those who are opposed to national reunification are only a handful of traitors and comprador capitalists. They are selling out the country to the US imperialists and Japanese militarists. All the people of north and south Korea are well aware of this.

Although it is thirty years since their occupation of south Korea, the US imperialists have been unable to mobilize the south Korean students to stage even a single demonstration against the reunification of Korea. On the contrary, the south Korean students are fighting against fascist rule and for national reunification.

In an attempt to halt the struggle of the young people and students in south Korea, the south Korean authorities have passed numerous

evil laws including “emergency measures” and “martial law”, but their struggle is still continuing.

A tyrant cannot remain in power for long. This has been demonstrated throughout history.

Now the south Korean authorities are selling their own people to other countries. They are selling south Korean people to Brazil as slaves and to West Germany as coal miners. They are selling south Korean women to Japan and other countries as entertainers in the name of nurses, and they even sell children.

According to information published in a Japanese newspaper recently, Park Chung Hee is doing what no human being should ever do. On the pretext of implementing a policy on birth control, he is going to the lengths of forcing the young people to have spermatid operations performed on them.

Even in countries which profess “democracy”, a dictatorial policy leads its executors to ruin, so there is no need to talk about such a dictator as Park Chung Hee. He served as an officer in the Japanese army in the days of Japanese imperialist rule. Today, acting as a puppet of the US imperialists, he is selling the country, trying to rig up “two Koreas” in opposition to national reunification, and his policies are designed to oppress the people. But he is doing even worse things and committing acts of such extreme wickedness that it is impossible for him to stay in power for long.

Our struggle for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country is just and all the people of north and south Korea fully support us. Therefore, our struggle will emerge victorious without question.

As for the current policies of our country, I referred to them during my talk to the executive managing editor of the Japanese newspaper *Yomiuri Shimbum* and his group a few days ago. I think, therefore, it would be better if you read the text of that conversation.

I would like to express my thanks to you for the support you have given to our people’s struggle for national reunification and I hope that you will continue in the same vein in the future, too. If our good friends such as yourselves continue to support us in the future, our people’s

struggle for the country's reunification will surely emerge victorious.

All the progressive people throughout the world must form a strong union under the banner of independence so as to fight together to thwart the ambition of the US imperialists for world domination. I hope that we will all join this struggle against the revival of fascism and the moves of the imperialists to ignite a third world war and for the preservation of peace.

Through you, the Comrade General Secretary of the Communist Party of France and the Comrade First Secretary of the Socialist Party of France have sent us their warm and friendly greetings and the Chairman of the French Action Committee to Support the Independent and Peaceful Reunification of Korea has sent us a letter. I am very grateful to them for this. I hope that on your return home, you will convey my comradely and fraternal greetings to them. Although I have already sent a letter of reply to the Comrade First Secretary of the Socialist Party of France who sent a message of congratulations to me on the occasion of my birthday, I ask you please to express my gratitude to him once again.

I hope that you will visit our country often in the future, despite the great distance between Korea and France.

Today I am very happy to have made the acquaintance of my friends from France.

ON SOME TASKS IN AGRICULTURE THIS YEAR

Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting
of Agricultural Officials

June 7, 1977

Our agricultural workers and those working in support of the rural communities have successfully completed the bedding out of seedlings, the first battle in this year's farming by making a concerted effort in hearty response to the Party's call.

This year all the provinces have finished transplanting rice seedlings and humus-cake maize seedlings 10 to 15 days earlier than last year. Notably, North Hamgyong Province transplanted rice seedlings 20 days earlier and humus-cake maize seedlings 35 days earlier than last year, and Jagang Province transplanted rice seedlings 15 days earlier and humus-cake maize seedlings 20 days earlier.

As a result of the early transplanting of rice and maize seedlings in all the provinces, we have made absolutely certain that the plants have enough time to grow, despite the severe effect of the cold front.

Moreover, we have planted the prescribed number of rice and maize seedlings per *phyong*.

More than 120 bunches of rice seedlings have been planted per *phyong* in all provinces; and 22.7 maize plants per *phyong* in South Phyongan Province, 21.8 in South Hwanghae Province, 21.4 in North Hwanghae Province, 22.2 in South Hamgyong Province, 22.3 in Kangwon Province and 22 in Pyongyang.

The agricultural workers and the people helping them in Ryanggang Province sowed wheat seeds properly in spite of the weather being unfavourable and even though the snow and frost lasted longer than usual; South Phyongan and North Hamgyong Provinces, too, finished transplanting most of the tobacco seedlings.

We have triumphed in the first battle in this year's farming. But you must not rest content or take things easy because you have finished transplanting. We have only completed the first stage of this year's farming and have taken only the first step.

All senior officials must press on with the farm work that must be done immediately, with no reduction in the revolutionary spirit they have displayed in the transplanting campaign.

The first thing you must do is channel all your efforts into weeding.

Now that the bedding out of seedlings has been completed, a rich harvest in the autumn can be ensured by careful weeding above all else. Careful weeding will prove the worth of planting crops closely, rice and maize included. There is not a lot of fertilizer available, so, if the crop fields are not weeded thoroughly, the weeds will absorb all the nutrients and even the restricted amount of fertilizer that is applied will lose any effect. Then, planting crops densely will not prove its worth. This is why senior agricultural officials must concentrate on weeding.

The fields must be weeded from now until mid-July. Therefore, those workers, office employees, soldiers and students who have been mobilized in support of the rural communities until mid-July must not go home yet, but get on with weeding.

Of course, some manufacturing industries are in desperate need of their workers, and these people will have to return. For instance, those who produce coal mining machinery and those who make clothes must go back.

But even those factory workers who consider they are needed must not leave at their own discretion. Strict discipline must be established under which even workers from the factories where raw materials are in hand and an immediate return to production is essential must obtain my approval before withdrawing.

So far, I have not approved any written recommendation for the withdrawal of supporting labour from the rural areas. The Administration Council must submit a list of factories which require the return of their people and the institutions and enterprises must not call them back before the list has been approved.

Those workers from factories which do not need to resume production immediately, office workers, soldiers, university and college students and those in their final year at senior middle school must return only after weeding has been finished in mid-July, as agreed.

The most important thing facing farming at the moment is to undertake an energetic campaign to combat the drought.

Just recently there has been a reasonable amount of rainfall, but no one should assume that there will not be a drought in the future. At the moment all the crops are in excellent condition, but if the weather is dry when the crops develop ears and blossom, the grain yield will be greatly reduced.

You must, therefore, launch a drive to dig wells, at the same time as using the water stored in reservoirs effectively, so that both paddy and dry fields are properly watered no matter how severe any drought may be.

You must speed up weeding and also dig wells.

Whatever happens, the agricultural workers and people supporting the rural areas must dig wells. Of course, the workers and office employees who have not been mobilized in support of the rural communities will be able to help dig wells on Fridays and Sundays. But it is essential that well digging should be done by the people now working in the rural areas.

On the one hand you must dig new wells, and on the other you must repair those that have already been sunk and put them to effective use.

The Administration Council and the Economy Commission of the Central People's Committee must ensure that hoses are produced quickly for the rural communities.

Canvas hoses and plastic pipes which can substitute for them

should be mass-produced. Plastic pipes will serve perfectly well in furrow irrigation. Hoses and pipes must be produced and supplied to the cooperative farms as soon as possible.

In addition, cooperative farms must manage their economies carefully, taking good care of the hoses so that they last a long time.

We must help North Hamgyong Province to combat the drought.

Farming in the province seems to be going quite well this year. A report says that the province has completed the bedding out of seedlings much earlier than last year and that the crop situation is good because there has been an average of about 20 millimetre of rainfall in recent days. This spring, however, of all the provinces, this one has received the least rainfall. That is why we must help the province to combat the drought efficiently. We must provide it with sheet iron and *Phungnyon* tractor engines to use in irrigation.

While taking steps to dig more wells and make effective use of the existing ones, you must improve the condition of the sprinkler irrigation systems.

Not only must you combat the drought, but you must also take steps to prevent any possible damage from a rainstorm.

We cannot predict how strong the winds and how heavy the rain may be in the future. So you must take thorough measures to prevent any damage from the wind and rain.

The provincial people's committee chairmen, the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and the provincial rural economy committee chairmen must visit work sites and give responsible guidance to ensure that thorough measures are taken to mobilize all forces for weeding and preventing damage from a drought or rainstorm.

One matter to which senior agricultural officials must address themselves in particular is the cultivation of soya beans.

This year more than 100,000 hectares of soya beans have been planted—35,000 hectares as a main crop, 36,000 hectares on the ridges between paddy fields, 9,600 hectares as a mixed crop in maize fields and 16,000 hectares as a mixed crop in orchards. The soya beans which

have been planted as a mixed crop in maize fields and orchards are as good as a main crop.

Soya beans must be grown scientifically.

If you tend the crop scientifically along accurate technical guidelines, you will be able to produce five tons per hectare from the main soya bean crop.

A rational system of fertilization must be applied in bean fields.

It is important to deposit fertilizer to suit the biological characteristics of the crop.

Soya beans require a lot of nitrogen fertilizer, but the crop does not absorb fertilizer well if it is applied directly. I have been told that the crop prefers nutrients left over from previous crops. So in some countries, apparently, they apply about 200 kg of nitrogen fertilizer in terms of nutrients content for an earlier crop of wheat, maize or cotton and then only 20 or 30 kg for the bean crop. The initial fertilizer must be applied well below the surface. In other words, it must be deposited by ploughing the field to a depth of approximately 30 cm.

Next year you must ensure that fertilizer is applied according to these technical guidelines. To this end, you must designate in advance the fields where soya beans are to be cultivated next year and apply a large amount of nitrogen fertilizer there. On their return home, the chairmen of the provincial rural economy committees must organize this.

The bean crop must be topdressed with fertilizer mixed with water.

I have been told that in one country the bean crop was topdressed in this manner two or three times at 10 to 14 day intervals from the time when the plants began flowering, with the result that the per-hectare yield increased by 1.4 tons. This shows that topdressing is a main factor in increasing the yield of beans. We must also introduce this method this year in accordance with advanced technical guidelines.

Another important factor in growing beans is to ensure that there is sufficient moisture in the soil.

Soya beans require more water than other crops. So they must be planted in damp soil and the fields must be irrigated. Apparently,

because of the drought this year, beans were sown on the first day of June in some districts. This is no way to increase the yield.

The third workteam of the Jangsuwon Cooperative Farm can sow beans at any time because it has established an irrigation system in all its soya bean fields. A similar irrigation system must be set up for the fields where soya beans will be planted in every province, and the fields which have already been planted to beans must also be watered so as to make the plants thrive. Because the ridges between paddy fields are moist, all that is required there is careful weeding. From this year onwards you must weed the ridges where soya beans are planted.

In order to grow a good crop of soya beans, you must learn the scientific method of cultivating them and build up your experience.

Our agricultural officials have as yet evolved no established method for cultivating soya beans nor do they have any comprehensive information produced by research. So, with a view to studying the cultivation of soya beans, I am experimenting on them both as a main crop and as part of intercropping in some of the fields of the third workteam of the Jangsuwon Cooperative Farm. The results will be known in the autumn. The chairmen of provincial rural economy committees must also try to build up their experience of soya bean cultivation.

This year soya beans have been planted widely as a mixed crop with maize. They must be tended well. Thus the farmers will be shown that the Party was correct to ensure that the number of maize plants that had previously been sown in ten rows was sown in only eight, and that the two remaining rows were planted with soya beans.

We must publish technical information from abroad on soya bean cultivation and circulate it to the provincial rural economy committee chairmen and provincial Party secretaries in charge of economic affairs. This will enable them to be more strict with the farmers in ensuring that soya beans are grown scientifically.

You must start now to make thorough preparations for growing soya beans next year. We envisage planting 100,000 hectares of soya beans next year, too. Therefore, you must circulate technical

information on the cultivation of soya beans, accurately review the successes and failures in the work this year and take every possible measure to tend the crop well.

You must fully prepare for harvesting and threshing the grain. You must make sure that harvesters and threshing machines are in good condition once weeding is over.

Next, let me speak further about making good preparations for next year's farming.

The most important thing in this regard is to prepare sufficient humus.

Producing humus is something which must never be neglected. Cooperative farms have been able to grow strong seedlings this year because they laid out many dry-field cold-beds and applied 30 kg of humus per *phyong* of the seed-beds. So you must give precedence to the mass-production of humus.

It is not difficult to make humus. All that is needed is to mow grass and shrubs and then chop them up and leave them to rot. But it is impossible to produce all we need in just a day or two. So, as soon as you have finished the weeding, you must apply yourselves to this task.

In order to produce large quantities of humus, a lot of grass must be cut and collected. As soon as the weeding is finished all the cooperative farms must conduct an extensive drive for collecting mown grass and shrubs so that they can be chopped up and left to rot. In the areas where plenty of sawdust is available they must also work hard to produce humus by allowing sawdust to rot.

You must never fall into the practice of neglecting to mow grass in the hope of collecting fallen leaves in the autumn. An attempt to produce humus in the autumn may result in the failure of next year's farming. A lot of effort must be put into producing humus from the summer.

We must eliminate any tendency towards perfunctoriness in humus production. Some officials are still trying to get away with making just a few heaps of grass by the sides of roads. There must be no practice of this kind.

This winter, too, we are going to send guidance groups to examine

humus production. Agricultural officials must offer efficient guidance so that substantial amounts of humus are produced.

Another important aspect of making preparations for next year's farming is to obtain plastic sheeting in advance.

This year you have finished transplanting rice and humus-cake maize seedlings earlier than last year because you were supplied with plastic sheeting, which enabled you to sow the seeds early and grow the seedlings quickly. But this year only enough plastic sheeting to cover 60 per cent of the area of seed-beds was supplied. As a result, in some districts it was impossible to transplant the seedlings early because they were not fully grown. In fact, this year, too, the workers, office employees and soldiers who went to help in the rural communities had to do a great deal of work other than transplanting, because the seedlings were not ready.

If you are to sow rice and maize in humus-cakes early, grow strong seedlings and finish transplanting them by May 25, you must prepare enough plastic sheeting to cover 80 to 100 per cent of the total area of nurseries.

For these to be sufficient to cover 80 to 100 per cent, you must take steps to look after those sheets which have been used this year and use them again next year. I have been told that in one country plastic sheets are used for three years, and sometimes even for ten, but in our country they become unserviceable after being used only once. Your management of the national economy must not be so careless.

All the cooperative farms must look after the plastic sheets supplied this year so that they can be used again next year. To this end, you must tell the farmers to clean the sheets and then look after them properly. You must provide them with technical information concerning the care of plastic sheeting and organize short courses for them.

The production of plastic sheeting must also be organized. The Administration Council must assign the production to the sector concerned and ensure that output is increased from now onwards. In addition, it must import enough to make up for any shortage. Thus we shall be able to provide sufficient plastic sheeting to cover at least 80

per cent of the total area of seed-beds next year, although this year we supplied only enough to cover 60 per cent.

It is also important in preparing for next year's farming to take steps to increase the mechanization of transplanting rice and humus-cake maize seedlings.

This year the entire Party, all the army and all the people have joined the transplanting campaign. But we cannot mobilize as many people next year. This year we have sent a large number of people to work in the rural areas, even though this is affecting production in other sectors. In fact, this year some sectors have been compelled to mobilize people for the rural communities even though materials were available and production was possible. But we cannot afford to do so next year. Next year we are going to embark on the Second Seven-Year Plan, so we must increase production by operating all factories at full capacity. For this reason we will be unable to mobilize industrial workers in support of the rural communities.

The people who can actually be mobilized to support the rural areas next year will number no more than 600,000 to 700,000 at most, and this includes soldiers, office workers and students.

Industrial workers may assist in transplanting seedlings in their free time after work. In other words, after-hours work may be organized. But you must not rely on this too much.

If you are to do the farming well with the help of only 600,000 to 700,000 extra people next year, you must mechanize the transplanting of rice seedlings as much as possible. You must take measures to increase the rate of mechanized transplanting to between 60 and 70 per cent next year.

Rice transplanters made at one factory are proving very effective, but those produced by some other factories are not. In future we must make the production of rice transplanters specialized to improve their quality.

At the same time you must make sure that the existing rice transplanters are in good condition. You must check them all, discard those which cannot be used again, repair those that can, oil them and

put them in warehouses where they can be looked after properly.

The transplanting of humus-cake maize seedlings must also be mechanized.

It will be difficult to plant them by machine in every field, particularly in sloping ones. You must, therefore, see that humus-cakes are made by machine and that maize seedlings are transplanted by hand through the mobilization of senior-middle school pupils. It is no bad thing to give these youngsters a couple of months' training in the rural areas every year. But the transplanting of humus-cake maize seedlings must be mechanized as much as possible. We must adopt measures to transplant them by machine on the plains in particular.

In order to increase the rate of mechanized transplanting, it is necessary to produce more tractors for the rural communities.

There is still a shortage of tractors in the rural communities. But for this shortage, transplanting could have been finished much earlier this year. If we produce more tractors and plough and harrow the fields properly before transplanting, we shall be able to finish transplanting rice and humus-cake maize seedlings before May 25 and raise the rate of mechanized transplanting to 60 or 70 per cent.

The Administration Council and the Economy Commission of the Central People's Committee have taken steps to put tractor production onto a steady footing. For all that, you must not take things easy, expecting a large number of tractors to be produced immediately. The sectors concerned must improve the organization of the work and so put tractor production onto a steady basis.

You must take steps to expand the area of dry-field cold-beds next year.

A dry-field cold-bed really is better than a Mundok-type cold-bed. The former makes it possible to begin the bedding out of seedlings over one week earlier and increases the rate of survival and recovery of the seedlings because their roots start growing soon after transplanting. It also increases the number of stems on the plants. When they are transplanted to paddy fields, rice seedlings which are grown in dry fields will not only strike their roots quickly, but also develop many

stems. This is logical because rice is an aquatic crop.

This year more dry-field cold-beds were laid out than last year in all the provinces—45 percent and even 65 percent in some provinces. This is a very good thing which should be further encouraged. Next year the area of dry-field cold-beds must be increased again.

Cooperative farms must determine the area of dry-field cold-beds and sow the rice seeds in stages so that the supply of seedlings can be maintained throughout the transplanting season.

North Hamgyong Province must experiment on growing seedlings in boxes. This method makes it possible to transplant the seedlings early in such cold area as North Hamgyong Province. The province must test this method indoors, but below room temperature.

North Hamgyong Province must reintroduce the *Wonya-1* strain of rice. This strain was disappointing in the past when the seedlings were not grown in cold-beds there, but it may be better now that they are grown in cold-beds. You say that the province has sown this strain over a few hectares. You must produce a large amount of seeds from it.

Measures must be taken to ensure the supply of herbicides.

When planting the crops closely, we shall be unable to increase the grain yield unless herbicides are used properly. We must produce large quantities of them ourselves as well as taking steps to import some.

The way crops are planted must be standardized.

By this I mean sowing plants at regular intervals lengthwise and crosswise, according to the technical guidelines, just like soldiers in formation. By doing this we will be able to plant the appropriate number of seedlings per *phyong* and grow them evenly.

In some places the crops are being planted randomly. This must be stopped. Why should we plant them so carelessly when it does not even save labour? In future, all cooperative farms must not only distribute the crop areas properly according to the principle of the right crop for the right soil, but also tend the paddy and dry fields carefully, planting crops at regular intervals lengthwise and crosswise as required by the technical guidelines.

As I have just said, the tasks which you must tackle in preparing for

next year's farming are to produce a large amount of humus, take good care of the plastic sheeting and obtain as much as we need, increase the production of tractors and rice transplanters and maintain them properly and also take measures to introduce dry-field cold-beds widely so as to grow strong seedlings. If we find satisfactory solutions to these problems we shall produce a rich harvest next year as well.

I should like to refer now to launching an energetic campaign to raise chickens.

At present, even coal miners and People's Army soldiers are not being supplied with adequate amounts of meat and eggs. If coal miners do not eat meat they will be unable to work properly. So, I have emphasized on more than one occasion since the beginning of the year the need to launch an energetic mass campaign to raise chickens so as to increase the production of meat and eggs, and have even given a demonstration lecture, taking cadres and the officials concerned with me despite the cold weather. In addition, when the deputy heads of the Organizational Leadership Department of the Party Central Committee were leaving for their tour of guidance to the provinces just recently, I told them to emphasize the need to breed chickens.

Recently, however, the officials of the Agricultural Commission and of the provincial rural economy committees, preoccupied with crop cultivation, have abandoned the campaign to breed chickens. Few districts have shown any success in raising chickens.

The agricultural officials must control and direct this campaign so that plenty of meat and eggs are produced.

Already on several occasions I have detailed the other problems that arise in raising chickens, so today I shall just refer briefly to a few questions concerning the production of protein feed.

If we are to increase the production of meat and eggs by raising large numbers of chickens, we must solve the problem of protein feed once and for all.

The inadequate supply of protein feed is now causing a prodigious waste of grain in the production of meat and eggs. We must solve the problem of protein feed once and for all.

The important thing in this regard is to obtain sufficient amounts of animal-protein feed.

Other countries are solving this problem by the industrial breeding of earthworms. I have been told that one country is not only producing them, but even exporting them. We must also launch a major drive to raise earthworms.

Earthworm breeding involves no expenditure. All that is needed is to empty one room at a chicken plant, block up all its windows with bricks, then make racks and put wooden cases filled with humus soil and egg-laying earthworms on them.

At present, 200 grammes of grain is used to produce one egg, but only 100 grammes will be needed if we solve the problem of animal-protein feed by raising earthworms on a large scale. The senior officials in agriculture must become heavily involved in raising earthworms.

There are over 100 chicken and duck plants in our country. They must all breed earthworms. If they raise earthworms, meat and eggs will become available in abundance.

On reading that animal-protein feed could be produced by raising earthworms, I thought we had found a windfall.

It will be a little difficult for all the chicken plants to start breeding earthworms immediately. Therefore, upon their return home from this meeting, each of the provincial rural economy committee chairmen must choose a model unit to breed earthworms. We must see that the project is undertaken by the model unit first and then by all the other chicken plants gradually.

Not only the chicken plants but also the workteams on cooperative farms must be encouraged to raise earthworms. These workteams do not need to go to the trouble of building separate sheds to raise earthworms. Any empty shed will serve.

Earthworms must be raised in winter, too. You will be perfectly able to breed them even in winter if the shed is kept warm by a heated floor.

If this project is to be successful, the provincial rural economy committee chairmen and other agricultural officials must act with a high sense of responsibility.

This is not the first time that I have mentioned the need to solve the problem of chicken feed by breeding earthworms. I have not only spoken about this on several occasions, but also had a scientific film produced and sent to the subordinate units. But nowhere are earthworms being raised properly. This shows the stubbornness of our officials.

The chairmen of provincial rural economy committees and other officials in charge of agriculture must on no account act like die-hard conservatives in carrying out Party policy. The provincial rural economy committee chairmen in particular must take the lead in implementing the Party's agricultural policy and always carry out every task with great enthusiasm. On their return home they must see to it that earthworms are raised both industrially and domestically and thus carry out the assignment I have given today.

Of all the information I have read recently, I prefer the material about raising earthworms industrially. It must be printed and circulated to the provincial people's committee chairmen, provincial Party committee chief secretaries, provincial Party committee secretaries in charge of economic affairs and provincial rural economy committee chairmen so that they can give efficient guidance in the drive to breed earthworms.

If you are to obtain a great deal of animal-protein feed you must also raise maggots.

So far, I have not stressed this point a great deal because breeding maggots might produce a lot of flies. But I do not think that the incidental breeding of some flies will pose any problem because chicken plants are located far away from villages. So the chicken plants in Phyongsong, Kangso and Tokchon and those in mountainous areas must be encouraged to breed maggots, but not the Mangyongdae Chicken Plant and others which are in Pyongyang.

In addition to launching a drive to obtain large amounts of animal-protein feed, we must work hard to obtain vegetable-protein feed.

With regard to this it is important to grow a great deal of *Aegukphul*.

I shall not speak of this at length because I have emphasized it on several occasions before. On their return home, the rural economy committee chairmen of the provinces must see whether *Aegukphul* is being cultivated properly in accordance with the instructions I gave when setting the task, and then press on with it.

Fruit growing must be more efficient.

At present the agricultural sector is paying no attention to fruit growing. They neither tend the orchards well nor process the gathered fruit properly.

It is important to increase fruit production, in addition to boosting grain production. Fruit is conducive to the development of strong teeth in children and to their healthy physical development overall. Cereals alone are not enough for them to grow healthy.

The agricultural sector must give all the attention to fruit growing that is needed, increase the yield in every way possible and process it well. All fruit farms and fruit workteams on cooperative farms must launch a drive to collect all fallen fruit, so that it is sliced, dried, ground and supplied to children.

The senior officials of the Agricultural Commission and the rural economy committee chairmen in the provinces must give general supervision to agricultural production and push it forward.

I always stress that agricultural officials should control and direct all aspects of agricultural production, but they are concentrating only on grain production, neglecting the other aspects. It is an important task of the agricultural sector this year to bring about a decisive change in grain production and increase the production of meat, eggs and fruit. The senior officials in agriculture must press on with the work in all fields of agriculture including livestock farming and fruit growing, instead of considering that grain production alone is important.

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY A YUGOSLAV TELEVISION CREW

June 9, 1977

Question: Comrade Kim Il Sung, President of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, what do you think is the most important problem presently facing Korea in the building of socialism?

Answer: I should like to speak briefly about socialist construction in our country.

We have already fulfilled the Six-Year Plan and are now preparing to embark on a new Seven-Year Plan, which we shall be starting next year.

The basic direction of our socialist economic construction is to build an independent, socialist national economy. Independent national economy can guarantee political independence.

We have already achieved considerable success in our efforts to build an independent, socialist national economy, but shall have to aim even higher in the future.

I imagine you are well aware of the target figures of the Six-Year Plan we have already attained, so I shall not refer to them here.

The targets we have set for the new Seven-Year Plan are ambitious. We are now in the process of drawing up this plan. We intend to set, as the main targets for the final year, the production of 7 million tons of steel, 12 million tons of cement, 70 million tons of coal and 60,000 million kWh of electricity. Other figures will be

fixed in accordance with these main targets.

When this next Seven-Year Plan has been fulfilled, the independent national economy of our country will be even stronger.

The major aspect of the successful building of socialism in our country is to undertake the three revolutions, a task put forward by the Party at its Fifth Congress. These three revolutions are the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions.

The technical revolution aims to reduce arduous labour and to free all the working people from backbreaking work.

The most important task of the cultural revolution is to make everyone intellectual. We have achieved great success in bringing up a large army of intellectuals one million strong by concentrating great efforts on training our own cadres. In order to take socialist construction onto a higher level and consolidate the independent national economy in the future, all working people should possess advanced scientific and technical knowledge. Therefore, we are working hard to see that everyone reaches the cultural and technical standard of a senior middle-school leaver initially and then that of a university graduate.

The ideological revolution is a struggle to imbue everyone with the qualities of the working class and the revolutionary.

Carrying out the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions is the main orientation and basic target of our socialist construction.

Question: Comrade President, how would you, the leader of the non-aligned movement, appraise the developing situation in this movement since the Colombo Summit Conference? And what do you think are the most important things that the non-aligned countries should do in the future?

Answer: Since the Colombo Summit Conference the non-aligned movement has been developing favourably.

The number of non-aligned countries is continually increasing. This is because all the people of the world realize that the policy of non-alignment is correct.

In strengthening the non-aligned movement further, a great contribution is being made to preventing the imperialists' aggression and to defending peace.

This can be regarded as the most important current aspect of the development of the non-aligned movement.

At the moment the imperialists are making all sorts of vicious attempts to break up the non-aligned movement.

The non-aligned countries, however, are foiling all these tricks of the imperialists, striving continually for the unity of the non-aligned forces and smoothly advancing on in the direction of supporting politically and cooperating economically with each other.

I consider that these efforts and activities of the non-aligned countries will make a major contribution to maintaining the independence of the world's people.

Holding fast to independence is one of the most important principles of the non-aligned movement. Independence is something of the utmost importance to every nation. So, I am most satisfied that the unity of the non-aligned movement is being achieved successfully on the basis of independence.

There are also difficulties within the non-aligned movement.

The non-aligned countries should make every effort to overcome all the difficulties that arise among themselves, to achieve the unity of the movement and to rally more countries to it, holding higher the banner of independence.

I consider that they should also wage a more forceful joint campaign to destroy the old international economic order and establish a new one.

We think that political support and economic cooperation among the non-aligned nations are also of immense importance.

Question: Comrade President, you visited Yugoslavia in June 1975. Your visit marked the first meeting of the heads of state of Korea and Yugoslavia.

This autumn the President of our country is planning to visit Korea. In

connection with this, how would you assess the possibilities for cooperation between our two countries?

Answer: I feel very happy to have visited Yugoslavia in 1975 and met Comrade Tito. I believe that my meeting with Comrade Tito was not only a great help in strengthening friendship and solidarity between the peoples of our two countries, but also made a great contribution to the non-aligned movement. I still remember my frank exchange of views with Comrade Tito concerning many problems of mutual interest.

I am very pleased that the Yugoslav people, under the wise leadership of Comrade Tito, are attaining considerable success in socialist construction and in maintaining the country's political independence.

This year we sent warm congratulations to Comrade Tito on the occasion of his 85th birthday.

I am fully convinced that the Yugoslav people will achieve still greater success in the future under the leadership of Comrade Tito.

At present, the relations between Korea and Yugoslavia are developing very favourably. I am confident that in the future, too, the relations between our two countries will continue to develop in favour of socialism, peace and non-alignment, based on the principle of independence.

I am very glad that Comrade Tito is going to visit our country this year. We are preparing to welcome him enthusiastically.

If Comrade Tito visits our country, we shall resume in Pyongyang the talks which we began in Yugoslavia and exchange instructive views on many matters, I think. Therefore, I, my comrades and all the other Korean people are awaiting Comrade Tito's visit to our country with great interest. I hope you will convey this to him.

Your present visit to our country has contributed greatly to strengthening friendship between our two peoples. I hope you will visit our country again in the future.

On your return home, I hope you will convey my greetings to Comrade Tito and to the people of Yugoslavia.

TALK WITH THE EDITOR-IN-CHIEF OF THE FRENCH NEWSPAPER *LE MONDE*

June 20, 1977

I am glad of your visit to our country. I bid you a warm welcome.

Although the facilities in our country may still leave something to be desired, I believe that our officials will have done their best to show you hospitality.

You must be tired after your long journeys from the east to the west and from the north to the south of our country.

I have received your list of questions. Now I would like to answer them briefly.

You have asked me about the question of the reunification of Korea. Let me deal with this matter first.

Korea is a homogeneous nation. That is why national reunification is the most cherished desire of our people.

We maintain that Korea must be reunified independently without any foreign interference, and not through a war but in a peaceful way. We are also of the opinion that our country should be reunified on the basis of the great unity of the whole nation transcending any differences in system and religious beliefs.

The three principles of national reunification advanced by our side—*independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity*—have already been published abroad.

It is true that many difficulties may yet remain to be solved before our country can be reunified. But because the people in north and south

Korea share a unanimous desire for reunification, our country can and must, by all means, be reunified.

At present the north and the south of our country have different social and political systems and are inhabited by people with differing ideologies and religious beliefs. Under such circumstances, even if we cannot achieve the unity of system, ideology and religious beliefs immediately, we would still like to reunify the country as one nation. The reunification of Korea as one nation is the first priority. Realizing the unity of system, ideology and religious beliefs is the next problem, I believe.

All the people of Korea are of the same nation and they are brothers who share a common language and history, so it is most important to achieve national reunification, whatever the system and religious beliefs, ideology and ideals.

It is possible for two different systems to exist in one country, and within one nation there can be people with differing ideologies and ideals. If we proceed from the principle of subordinating everything to achieving the reunification of the country, our supreme national task, we shall easily overcome any differences in system, ideology and ideals.

It is our firm belief that establishing a Confederation is the most reasonable way of achieving national reunification while leaving the different systems of the north and the south intact.

We advocate establishing a confederal, national government with no regard to differences in system and religious beliefs, ideology and ideals, on the understanding that we will not try to impose socialism on south Korea and that the south Korean authorities will not try to impose their social system on us.

When you asked me about our Confederation you likened it to the federation which was once debated in Germany. But the north-south Confederation proposed by our side is fundamentally different in nature. The north-south Confederation we want to establish is aimed at avoiding the permanent division of the Korean nation and at reunifying the country peacefully on the principle of great national unity with no strings attached; it is aimed at preventing foreign aggression against Korea and

at securing the complete independence and sovereignty of our nation.

We are strongly opposed to our country's division into "two Koreas". The establishment of a north-south Confederation is in complete accord with the common interests of the entire nation.

It will be of much more benefit to our people to establish at least a Confederation and achieve national unity than to prolong the division of their country into "two Koreas".

The Confederation, when established, will promote mutual understanding between the north and the south and strengthen great national unity, and this will be of immense value in defending our country against aggression.

It is only by achieving national unity and reunification that it will be possible to defend the homeland against aggression. In the past, because of the aggression of an imperialist power, our country remained a colony for 36 years. If our nation is unable to achieve reunification and remains divided, it might fall victim to aggression and be forced into colonial slavery again.

Establishing the north-south Confederation and achieving national unity is of great significance also in removing tension in Korea and in contributing to the peace and security of the world.

The greatest obstacle standing in the way of our country's reunification is the occupation of south Korea by US troops—armed forces from abroad.

On more than one occasion we have declared that we will not "invade the south" nor will we ever try to impose our system on south Korea. But on the pretext of preventing this fictitious "southward invasion", US troops remain in south Korea, obstructing the reunification of our country.

If the US troops withdraw from south Korea and the people are guaranteed democracy to allow them to act freely in south Korean society, our people will be able to settle the reunification question independently and peacefully.

The population of our country is large, the soil is good and there are abundant natural resources. Once the country is reunified, our people

will be able to build a prosperous, independent and sovereign state where the life is as good as anywhere else.

We are fully convinced that the independent and peaceful reunification of Korea will surely be achieved, in accordance with the common aspiration of the whole nation.

Now, let me say a few words on your question about our thoughts on the Carter administration's policy of withdrawing the US land forces from south Korea.

When making his election commitments, Carter said he would withdraw the US troops from south Korea. Our opinion of this was favourable, because, if the US troops were withdrawn from south Korea, one of the problems standing in the way of our country's reunification would be removed.

But since assuming office, the Carter regime has said that it will withdraw US troops from south Korea by stages, over a period of four or five years. This goes back somewhat on Carter's election commitments. In the US the tenure of office of the President is four years, so when he says he will pull US troops out of south Korea in phases over a period of four or five years, Carter is really saying that the US troops will not be withdrawn from south Korea while he remains in office. Four or five years is too long.

And he says that even if the US troops are withdrawn from south Korea, it will not be a complete withdrawal, and the air force will remain. We think this is not right, either. The air force is also an armed force. Leaving the US air force in south Korea means that US troops will not be withdrawn completely. Of course, these statements did not really come from Carter himself, but from his subordinates.

Carter has not been in office long, so we are still observing his actions. We think we will wait and see how he puts his election pledges into practice.

However, we can say that on one point Carter has clearly run counter to his own election commitments.

When he made his election pledges Carter stated that he would oppose any regime that violated human rights. At present the Carter

regime is browbeating some countries by saying that it would take exception to the regimes that trample on human rights, but it says not a word about south Korea where the violation of human rights is most severe. On the contrary, the Carter regime is increasing its military “aid” to south Korea and giving the south Korean “regime” political and economic support. What is this, if not a violation of his own election pledge to oppose any regime that suppresses human rights?

In addition, the US is creating tension in our country. It carries out high-altitude aerial reconnaissance of the northern half of Korea and conducts military exercises in south Korea almost every day. The US mobilizes its aircraft in Okinawa and makes continual practice bombing runs over south Korea. The US military has practice bombing areas throughout the world, so why should they make these practice runs over south Korea? In our opinion, this is contrary to the Carter administration’s election pledge to pull US troops out of south Korea in order to ease the tension in Korea.

As you have seen for yourself here, there is no “threat of southward invasion”; in fact, it is the DPRK that is being threatened with invasion. We are engaged in peaceful construction but they continue their military exercises, even bringing aircraft into the Korean peninsula from abroad.

In short, there is some discrepancy between Carter’s election commitments and the present actions of his administration. However, since it is not long since Carter assumed office, he still has time to put his election commitments into effect, so we are keeping an eye on what he does.

You have asked me whether the relations between the DPRK and Washington are likely to become normal. This depends entirely on the US.

A long time ago we proposed replacing the Armistice Agreement with a peace agreement. But the US authorities have as yet given us no answer. Instead, they are continuing their war games and practice bombing runs in south Korea and are still giving “aid” to the south Korean fascist “regime” which oppresses the people there and in this way

helping it to take the unjustified step of increasing its own military forces.

Since the United States has not changed its unjust policy towards our country, how can we establish normal relations with it? Therefore, establishing normal relations between our country and the US depends not on us, but on whether the US alters its policy or not.

We think that if the Carter administration withdraws the US troops from south Korea in accordance with its campaign pledges, renounces its unfriendly attitude and changes its hostile policy towards our country, then we can establish good relations.

Next, you have asked me about the relations between the Soviet Union and China. This is a topic for the Soviet and Chinese peoples to comment on and not something for us to discuss.

As you well know, the Soviet Union and China are our neighbours. So we are on good terms with both of them.

Sino-Soviet relations are an issue to be settled by those two countries and a matter for the two peoples.

Further, you have asked me my opinion about European-style communism. We do not recognize a European-style communism, an Asian-style communism or any other style of communism.

All communists believe that it is their internationalist duty to resolve, first and foremost, the problems of their own country and their own nation.

We are aware of the fact that recently the Communist Parties of many European countries have emphasized independence in the communist movement. We believe this is quite right, because communists in every country should match all their activities to the specific situation in their own country.

The experience gained by the communist movement of one country is not wholly applicable elsewhere. Today communists in every country are fully capable of resolving the problems of their own nation independently, because they have been seasoned and tempered throughout a protracted revolutionary struggle. Therefore, there is no need to mechanically copy from foreign experience in the revolution and building of socialism and to apply it to one's own country.

We think it is good that the communists in European countries are striving to form a united front of the broad sections of the people according to their specific situation, and are maintaining independence.

You have asked me if we wish to develop political, economic and cultural relations with France. We are hoping for an active promotion of political, economic and cultural exchange.

Cultural, technical, trade and economic relations between Korea and France do now exist. In my opinion, it will be beneficial to the peoples of both countries to develop these relations further. For this reason, we want to see political, economic and cultural exchange with France become more active.

Needless to say, in order to expand political, economic and cultural relations between Korea and France, a lot of work still remains to be done. I believe that relations between Korea and France will develop more favourably in the future.

As for what we think of France here, we do not regard the French people as our enemies. We understand that France is a European country advancing independently and that it is striving to maintain independence.

We consider that the French government should take due notice of the Korean people. We expect the French government to refrain from acts prejudicial to the reunification of Korea and to help towards it.

Never throughout history have the Korean people attacked anyone, but Korea has been invaded. At present our people are working for the development of the country and for national reunification.

The division of our nation is a great evil. We hope that the French government will not stand in the way of our country's reunification, but offer us great help in achieving it. This is the modest request that our people address to the government and people of France.

To continue. You have asked me if our country is in the red in its trade with Western countries; I believe that our Minister of Foreign Trade will have answered this question during his talk with you.

As for our trade deficit, this is a passing phenomenon. The temporary problem our country has in its trade with the West is largely due to the economic difficulties being experienced by the advanced

capitalist countries of the West, brought about by the fuel crisis.

Before the fuel crisis our goods sold well in the Western capitalist countries. But because of their economic crisis, they are unable to purchase our goods now. Our failure to sell the amount of goods we would like to the West has caused a temporary problem in our trade there.

So, we are taking measures to produce such goods as the Western countries can purchase, even in the economic crisis they are now experiencing.

The problem we are having in our trade with the West is a passing phenomenon that I think will be solved in the very near future.

Next, you have asked me what is our greatest source of pride in the building of socialism and what are the difficulties that may possibly crop up in the future. This is my answer.

We have been building socialism for more than 30 years, and our greatest source of pride is that we have built an independent national economy in our country. Having built such an economy, we are now in a position to maintain independence and pursue an independent policy.

Another source of pride is that our people have been armed with the Juche idea and that, based on it, the ideological unity of the entire people has been realized. I believe this to be a very great achievement.

In the past the worship of major powers was strong in our country, and our people felt little pride in their own nation and in their independence. But now they are very proud of their independence and all the people are firmly united on the basis of the Juche idea. We take great pride in this. This is the greatest of our assets.

No longer do our people think of relying on others. Our people are convinced that if they struggle and endeavour by themselves and work industriously, they can stand on their own feet and build an independent economy as well as ensuring national independence and sovereignty.

Our country may face difficulties in the future. Every country has difficulties. I can think of no exception to this.

Difficulties can arise in the course of development, because a subjective desire cannot provide a solution for everything. As we live

in a global society, we are subject to the influences that prevail in the world and may possibly meet with difficulties. Difficulties may be caused either by outside influences or by internal circumstances.

However, without doubt we can overcome any difficulty that might stand in the way of progress.

You have asked me what is original about the socialism being built in Korea when compared to other socialist countries. We do not want to compare the building of socialism in our country to that in other countries. There is no need for such a comparison, nor can there be one.

What we can emphasize is that we are adhering closely to the principles of independence, self-sufficiency, and self-reliant defence in our socialist construction. In other words, we maintain the principles of independence in politics, self-sufficiency in the economy and self-reliance in national defence.

You have asked me about the general prospects for Korea and Asia. The prospects for Korea are bright. Needless to say, there may be problems, but without doubt our country will be reunified some day.

At present the situation in Asia as a whole is very promising. All the people of Asia are holding fast to independence and fighting for the independence, sovereignty and prosperity of their countries. They are maintaining the position that in Asia, Asians must be the masters, free from any foreign intervention. Therefore, I think the prospects for Asia, too, are very bright.

You have asked me about my personal role in our country. I did not wish to comment on this matter because I felt awkward about touching on a subject related to myself.

But, because you have asked the question again, I will give you my answer: I want to pass my whole life among the people as their faithful servant. Nothing is more honourable than being the faithful servant of the people.

So much for my answers to your questions.

Let me express my thanks to you for visiting our country.

I am very happy to have made the acquaintance today of such a good friend as yourself and I hope you will visit our country again.

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY REPORTERS FROM N.H.K.

July 3, 1977

I am grateful to you for your goodwill visit to our country and welcome you warmly.

Now I shall answer your questions.

Question: Mr. President, what is your opinion of the way the world situation is currently developing?

Answer: At present the situation in the world seems outwardly to be very complex, but I think things are moving in the right direction.

From the point of view of historical development the present age is characterized by independence.

Whereas the past era was one in which the people struggled for independence, now they are struggling for the consolidation of national independence they have won and for peace, democracy and socialism. Many countries are now striving to build an independent economy to consolidate the independence they have won.

At present many of the world's countries are demanding independence. The countries of the third world are demanding independence, as are the socialist countries. The peoples of the developed capitalist countries are also calling for independence and trying to move towards it. Now no country is willing to be subjugated by another.

This is why we think the situation today is moving in the right direction, according to the historical law of development.

With regard to the situation in Asia, you have asked me for my views. The situation in Asia is also very promising.

The people of Asia, too, want to live independently in keeping with the trend of historical development. The countries of Southeast Asia in particular are persistent in their quest for independence.

All the people of Asia are demanding that imperialist military bases in Asia be dismantled. In keeping with this desire, "SEATO" was disbanded some time ago.

The people of Asia are now struggling to convert their continent into an area that is free of any imperialist military base. This aim is being pursued by the peoples of Korea, Japan, Thailand and many other countries.

The Asian people are striving to create a continent that is free from any foreign interference, an Asia for Asians. We think this is a very good thing.

Question: At present the attention of the world is focussed on Korea. In particular, Japan as a neighbour is showing a great deal of interest in Korea. In this context, Carter, during his campaign for the US presidency, promised the withdrawal of US troops from Korea.

Mr. President, what are your opinions, in the light of this, on the question of Korea's reunification and on the possibility of dialogue between Korea and the United States?

Answer: I have already touched on these matters in my talk with the executive managing editor of *Yomiuri Shimbun*.

I think it was a very good thing that President Carter promised to withdraw the US troops from south Korea.

The withdrawal of US troops from south Korea is a demand of the US people themselves and the unanimous desire of the people of Asia. And not only the Korean people, but also the Japanese people call for it. Such being the case, the US authorities had no alternative but to

promise to withdraw their troops from south Korea.

But recent pronouncements in Washington lead us to believe that there is some discrepancy between the promises and the actions of the US authorities.

Contrary to Carter's election pledge, the US authorities now say that they will withdraw only the ground troops and leave the air force in south Korea. The air force is also an armed force, so it should be withdrawn along with the ground forces if they really intend to pull the US troops out of south Korea.

The Carter administration also says that it will withdraw the troops from south Korea over a period of four or five years, stage by stage. I think this, too, runs counter to Carter's election pledge, because the US President's tenure of office is only four years. Bearing in mind this promise to withdraw the forces within four or five years, and the fact that the President's term of office is only four years, it is difficult to decide whether all the troops will be pulled out while Carter is in office. Therefore, I think we shall have to wait and see what happens.

The withdrawal of US troops from south Korea will mean the removal of one of the biggest obstacles to Korea's reunification.

Something that contradicts its campaign pledges can be seen in the actions of the Carter administration, and this is its support for the south Korean authorities that are strengthening the fascist dictatorship.

In his election manifesto President Carter declared that he would not give aid to any country where human rights were being violated. But now he is going against this. The US authorities are talking a great deal about the problem of human rights in other countries and taking various measures against them. However, they not only refrain from mentioning the south Korean authorities' flagrant violation of human rights, but actually continue to give them "aid".

Today the south Korean authorities are violating human rights and destroying democracy in south Korea, and this presents a serious obstacle to the peaceful reunification of Korea. The removal of this obstacle is a very important and pressing matter for the Korean people.

It is only when all the obstacles that stand in the way of the

reunification of our nation are removed, and as quickly as possible, and the independent, peaceful reunification of Korea is achieved that peace in Asia can be assured. If Korea is not reunified, but remains divided, I think there is no hope of ever removing the tension in our country completely and, furthermore, the situation in Asia and the rest of the world will also remain unsettled.

This is why we are making every possible effort to achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of our country as soon as possible.

Tomorrow is the fifth anniversary of the publication of the historic July 4 North-South Joint Statement. We will continue to advocate in the future, too, the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity as set out in the July 4 North-South Joint Statement, and work hard towards realizing them.

All the people of Korea desire the independent, peaceful reunification of the country. All the world's people share the same desire.

If the south Korean authorities end their fascist oppression of the people and the US troops pull out of south Korea, the Korean people will, without doubt, reunify their country independently and in a peaceful way according to the principle of great national unity.

As for the matter of dialogue between our country and the United States, a long time ago we proposed holding talks with the US authorities. So, I think if the US authorities want it, there can be dialogue at any time. However, so far we have received no word from them. We will continue to knock at the door of dialogue.

Question: We have seen a great deal of your Republic during our current visit. Quite honestly, industry and agriculture in your Republic are far more advanced than we had imagined.

In recent years, however, the advanced industrialized nations, third world countries and socialist states have all been experiencing an economic crisis.

Under these circumstances, how are you, Mr. President, going to continue economic construction in your Republic?

Answer: As you say, the developing countries, the developed capitalist countries and even some socialist countries are now experiencing economic difficulties. The nature of these economic difficulties varies.

In the developing countries, economic difficulties have arisen in the process of building an independent national economy to consolidate the independence that has been won. The main difficulty facing these countries is the food shortage brought about under the influence of the cold front. Many developing countries are now concentrating their efforts on agriculture. This shows, I believe, that the prospects for these countries are favourable for overcoming the economic difficulties and building an independent national economy.

The economic difficulties of the developed capitalist countries have been caused by a fuel and raw materials crisis.

The fuel crisis has been caused by the monopoly and sway exercised by one major power over fuel. The fuel crisis currently being experienced by the developed capitalist countries is due to this major power's monopoly and control of oil. The policy of this power is to restrain the tempo of economic development in the advanced industrialized countries. I believe this to be the root cause of the fuel crisis in the developed capitalist countries.

As for the raw materials crisis, this has been caused by the struggle of the newly independent countries to defend their natural resources, which has made it impossible for the advanced industrialized nations to take away raw materials from those countries at will as they did in the past. Therefore, if the advanced industrialized nations try to relieve the developing countries of their raw materials at low prices, clinging to the old international economic order, they will not solve their problems. The advanced industrialized nations should offer technical aid to the developing countries so that they can build an independent national economy, and should pay fair prices for the raw materials they obtain from these countries on the principle of satisfying one another's needs. Only by doing this can they solve the problem of raw materials.

Some socialist countries are experiencing economic difficulties partly because of the depression in the capitalist market. The economic difficulties of these socialist countries have also arisen while progress has been accelerated. Therefore, I think that the socialist countries can overcome their economic difficulties by themselves.

As for our country, it is free from the influence of any worldwide economic upheaval because we have already built an independent national economy the core of which is a Juche-oriented industry that uses mainly our own raw materials. If we have any economic difficulty, it has arisen out of our extensive economic construction programme prompted by a desire to build more.

We are now drawing up a new Seven-Year National Economic Plan. We are going to carry out the new Seven-Year Plan using our own raw materials and our own technology by relying on our Juche-oriented industry. Our people will overcome any economic difficulty that may arise in the future by their own efforts.

Question: We would like you, Mr. President, to express your candid opinions on the question of trade with Japan.

Answer: Japan is one of the countries geographically nearest to our country. So, we think that the promotion of trade between Korea and Japan is beneficial to the peoples of both countries.

If Japan purchases goods from our country, its neighbour, rather than from far away, even when they are available in our country, this will be of benefit to her because the freight charges, for one thing, will be less. The same is true of our country. It will be better to buy the goods we need from Japan, situated nearby, rather than importing them from far-away Europe. Therefore, it is in the interests of the peoples of both Korea and Japan to develop trade between the two countries.

We hope to develop trade between the two countries further in keeping with the interests of the peoples of Korea and Japan.

For this to happen, I believe it is very important for the Japanese

government to abandon its unfriendly policy towards our country and observe the principles of equality and mutual benefit in trade. The Japanese government should not discriminate against our country, but sell us anything we need. However, this is not the case at present.

I will cite one example.

A few years ago when Mr. Kuno Juji visited our country we expressed our hope of building up brisk trade between our two countries. After that, we ordered all the equipment for a large iron and steel plant from Japan so that we would complete the Six-Year Plan. So, some Japanese technicians came to our country; we held discussions and they conducted a field survey. But after their return home, we received no word from them.

According to reports in the western press, the deal was cancelled because of pressure exerted by the south Korean authorities who feared that if Japan exported the equipment for the iron and steel plant to us it would help increase the national power of our country, thus presenting a greater menace to south Korea.

Japan's refusal to sell us a blast furnace did not prevent us from building the iron and steel works. True, the blast furnace we built was not as big as the one we ordered from Japan, but its capacity was 1,500 cubic metres.

If this type of unfriendly act against our country on the part of the Japanese government is discontinued, I believe that trade between Korea and Japan will make rapid headway.

Question: We believe that the Democratic People's Republic of Korea has so far taken a very serious attitude towards the question of the 200-mile economic waters limit that has been set elsewhere. But reports say that the DPRK has also decided to establish this 200-mile limit as of August 1 this year. Japan is very worried about this.

Up until now, 1,500 boats from medium- and small-scale fishing fleets from west Japan have been catching about 65,000 tons of fish within the DPRK's 200-mile economic waters limit. There is no existing fisheries

agreement between Japan and the DPRK. Under these circumstances, in what way can the fishing operations of Japanese boats be sanctioned within the DPRK's 200-mile economic waters limit? If a fisheries agreement is to be concluded, could a private agreement be recognized as valid?

Answer: A great deal of discussion has been held at international conferences on this question of the 200-mile sea limit. The matter was raised first by the countries of Latin America a few years ago. At that time many large countries were opposed to it. But recently some of them have declared their own 200-mile economic waters limit even before an international decision is adopted. The countries near us in particular have declared such a limit. The United States was the first country to declare its 200-mile fishing waters limit, closely followed by the Soviet Union and Japan.

Under such circumstances we have no alternative but to adopt the decision to establish a 200-mile economic waters limit to protect the sovereignty of the country on the principle of independence. The adoption of this decision by our country is no more than a simple exercise of our national sovereignty and an unavoidable step taken because of external circumstances.

Our country's decision to establish a 200-mile economic waters limit will come into force on August 1. Press reports have said that Japan's decision to establish a 200-mile fishing waters limit would come into force on July 1.

No diplomatic relations exist between our country and Japan. But we think that Korea and Japan should observe a reciprocal principle with regard to the question of the 200-mile economic waters limit.

As for the problems of the Japanese fishermen within our country's 200-mile economic waters limit, we have no desire to worry them. We will always strive to avoid inflicting losses on the Japanese people, the minor fishermen in particular. Discussions should be held with the officials concerned as to how this question will be dealt with in the future.

Question: What do you think, Mr. President, of your independent foreign policy based on the Juche idea and your relations with other socialist countries?

Answer: Our independent foreign policy based on the Juche idea will place no obstacle in the way of developing our relations with other socialist countries.

Our independent foreign policy based on the Juche idea does not conflict with the interests of other socialist countries because the Juche idea calls for a decision on all our policies to be taken by our people themselves in conformity with the actual situation in our country. In fact, it makes it possible to further strengthen unity with socialist countries.

Our independent foreign policy based on the Juche idea has been proved to be sound more clearly than ever in reality. The vitality of our independent foreign policy is becoming more apparent with each passing day.

Question: During our current visit to your country we have looked round many schools, and in the course of this we have found that your children have a great aptitude for music. We were most impressed to hear that you, Mr. President, give guidance so that everyone can master at least one musical instrument.

Please allow us to ask a question that touches on your private life. Reading your biography, we came across a passage about the *Cradle Song* which your mother Kang Pan Sok used to sing. We think that this must in some way be connected with your guidance of the children to play at least one musical instrument. We would be most grateful if you would tell us about this.

Answer: We make all the children play one or more musical instruments so that everyone is optimistic and struggles with hope and with confidence in the future.

When I was young, my mother sang many songs to me. Later, these songs inspired me to live and fight with optimism.

My mother planted patriotism in my heart, always telling me to love my country and become a faithful servant of the people. The memory of this still stirs my emotions.

We teach all our children to sing so that they grow up to be fine workers who will live and work with optimism for the country and the people.

I am very glad to have made the acquaintance of such good friends as yourselves.

Our cordial talk with you today will be very useful in strengthening the friendship and solidarity between the peoples of Korea and Japan.

I would like to express my thanks once again to you for your visit to our country.

ON A FEW PROBLEMS IN DEVELOPING THE MACHINE INDUSTRY

**Concluding Speech at a Consultative Meeting
of Officials of the Machine Industry**

July 19, 1977

Over the past few days we have been discussing the tasks that face the machine industry during the period of the Second Seven-Year Plan.

In fact this industry will have a great deal to do during this period. Because of the great number of tasks that face it, there may be officials in this sector who are hesitant or grow timid, but they need have no worries. There is nothing more honourable for a revolutionary than to be assigned many difficult tasks and then carry them out. The officials of the machine industry must demand difficult tasks in the Second Seven-Year Plan on their own initiative and take the lead in fulfilling them.

The machine industry stands at the heart of industry and is the cornerstone of the technical revolution. If the work of this sector is efficient, then we shall go a long way towards achieving success in the technical revolution, running all industries properly and bringing about the rapid overall development of the national economy. Carrying out the ambitious new Seven-Year Plan also depends, in the final analysis, on how the machine industry plays its part. It is because the role of the machine industry is so significant that we are discussing matters relating to this industry first, prior to a general discussion of the new long-term plan.

I shall take this opportunity to speak about a few matters relating to the development of our machine industry and taking it onto a higher level.

First of all, the pressing method must be applied extensively in the machine industry.

The method of pressing can improve the quality of products, considerably reduce the time needed to process them, and use steel and machine tools much more economically. These days one factory is nearly doubling its output from the same amount of materials by applying the forging process in which the pieces of work are fed horizontally. There is little difference between the forging and pressing processes.

However, the proportion of work done by the pressing method is still small in the machine industry. The reason for this is not because the necessary equipment is unavailable. The number of power presses in this sector at present is by no means small and the factories and other enterprises are capable of making such equipment for themselves. If the officials of this sector look into the pressing method, they will realize there is no problem in implementing it.

The machine industry must launch a forceful campaign for technical innovation to employ the pressing method widely. Those factories engaged in serial production in particular must adopt this method widely. If these factories apply forging or pressing, they will not need to replace the die sets frequently.

Next, casting must be specialized and made intensive.

This is a matter about which I have already spoken a long time ago. However, the machine industry has still not implemented it properly.

If they are to build a new machine factory, our officials start by trying to construct a huge casting shop. Such a tendency is not limited only to the machine industry; it can be observed in other sectors of industry, too.

During my tour of personal guidance in the Tokchon area a short time ago, the officials of the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant asked me if they could install an electric furnace, saying that this would enable

them to produce steel balls for their own use. I told them that they should not install a separate furnace in the thermal power station, but make use of the one at the Sungni General Motor Works. Afterwards, however, a similar matter was raised by the Chongchongang Thermal Power Plant. So I saw to it that steel balls were produced by the Kangson Steel Complex and supplied to all the thermal power stations under a single system. As a result, the quality of the steel balls has improved and the thermal power stations are now able to generate electricity more efficiently.

If a separate electric furnace is installed at each thermal power station, considering that steel balls are not replaced everyday, how much use will be made of it? Without calculating such matters in detail, the officials simply express their intention of installing electric furnaces. Many of the existing electric furnaces are hardly used.

The situation in our country does not demand that the production of castings should be spread over many places. Specialized casting is the only way to improve its quality, use manpower and materials more economically and eliminate heavy manual labour. In addition, it develops the expertise of the workers. Party documents refer to the question of specializing casting work but our officials have never made a careful study of these documents.

Of course, it is possible for each machine factory to equip a small casting shop to produce tiny castings for its own use. And each major factory which uses a large amount of castings, such as tractor or motor works, must build a well-equipped casting shop to produce castings for its own use. Every casting shop that is built at a large factory must have modern equipment and produce the castings needed by other plants in the neighbourhood. If casting is organized in this way, great savings will be made for the state.

You say that the casting shop at the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory is to be extended on a large scale. It must be furnished with good, modern equipment to turn out castings for the factory itself and for the other machine plants in the Huichon area. I fully approve of this plan.

In the future the machine industry must establish well-equipped,

modern bases for casting production on an area basis, and make production specialized. If these bases are set up and the specialized factories are told precisely which castings to supply and the machine factories are told which castings to produce for their own use, and if cooperative production is organized efficiently, the production of castings will be simple, as well as specialized and intensive.

For the specialized and intensive production of castings, the attitude of being interested only in one's own department and locality must be eliminated. For individual factories to try to install an electric furnace and set up a casting shop is an expression of this attitude. We revolutionaries are fighting to build communism throughout the world. Why, then, do we indulge in this attitude in a single country and in one industrial sector? Our officials must abandon this attitude and work hard to make casting specialized and intensive. In particular, the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and the managers of factories and other enterprises must take the lead in this.

Plating must also be specialized. Almost every machine factory has its own plating shop and does its own plating. However, this is a hindrance to the rapid development of plating operations. It is only when plating is specialized, just as with casting, that it can also be modernized, with the result that the quality of plating will be improved, raw materials used more economically and the need to do harmful labour eliminated.

The machine industry must make strenuous efforts to establish good bases for plating on an area basis and make plating specialized.

Next, designing machinery must also become a specialized undertaking.

This is the only way to make good use of our design capability and thus produce efficient designs and improve the ability of the designers quickly.

At present, however, the machine industry is failing to make design work specialized. Engines, for instance, are designed at many different places. Every tractor plant designs its own engines and even fishing stations suggest designing their own engines. A similar situation

prevails in the designing of machine tools. If our design capability is dispersed, you will neither be able to improve design work nor develop the machine industry rapidly.

We have good experience of providing designs for major projects by concentrating our design capability. The design of the *Pulgungi* electric locomotive, which is now being produced in our country, was drawn up through our designers, putting their heads together, and it was done in only a short space of time. It is possible to produce excellent designs when the design capability is concentrated and the collective intellect of the designers is stimulated.

The machine industry must set up specialized design organizations so that the designers can work together.

You must form an engine design organization and design organizations for ships and chemical equipment by uniting those already engaged in these undertakings. As for designing machine tools, it must not be undertaken at a variety of different places; a separate design organization for machine tools must be formed and its work coordinated so that the blueprints for those machine tools that are to be produced by the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory are sent there and so that the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory and the Mangyongdae Machine-Tool Factory receive the appropriate blueprints, too. If design organizations are formed on a departmental basis and design is specialized, the designers will be able to build up their experience in a short time and improve their technical standards, so that they will produce successful designs.

You must not move designers at the factories around at random simply because you have to concentrate their efforts and specialize their work. The Ryongsong Machine Factory and other enterprises which produce a great deal of custom-built equipment must keep the designers they need in order to produce the blueprints for such equipment. The Economy Commission of the Central People's Committee must direct the reorganization of the designers in a responsible way.

Design organizations must be brought under a system of

self-balancing and managed according to industrial methods. Specialized design organizations must do their work as ordered by the institutions and enterprises, and hand over the blueprints upon payment of a fixed fee. This way of doing design work will increase the sense of responsibility of the design organizations and eliminate the misguided practice of producing designs at individual factories and other enterprises.

In order to improve the work of designing it is necessary to develop the sense of responsibility of the designers and establish strict discipline.

While ideological education must be intensified among the designers so that they all work conscientiously and devote all their energies and talents to their work, they must be set well-defined tasks, and due honour and a bonus must be given to those who work hard, and those who incur a loss to the state must be made to cover it. Also, satisfactory working conditions must be provided for them. In this way, they will all be encouraged to fulfil the design tasks assigned them in a responsible way with the attitude of masters.

Next, the quality of the machinery must be improved.

This is one of the most important tasks currently facing the machine industry. This sector must set an improvement in quality as its immediate fighting task and strive to bring the quality of all the machinery up to the level of the advanced countries.

An important factor in improving the quality of the machinery is to produce excellent designs and, at the same time, look after the wooden patterns, moulds and other technical equipment. The machine industry must reexamine the blueprints and technical fittings of all the lorries, tractors and other machinery and equipment and make any necessary repairs. Thus, any machinery you produce will be of the highest quality and extremely efficient.

Next, the production of machinery must be automated and modernized.

The machine industry has made considerable progress in mechanizing, and semi-and fully-automating production by conducting

a forceful campaign for revolutionizing technology. But automation in production is still at a low level, and is only in its early stages. This sector must press on with the mechanization of production and work hard to automate and modernize the production of machinery.

The automation and modernization of production in the machine industry is the only way of guaranteeing the precision of machinery and equipment and of manufacturing in greater quantities while maintaining low labour costs. It is also an urgent matter when carrying out the technical revolution and equipping all spheres of the national economy with modern technology.

The important aspect of automating and modernizing production in the machine industry is to devise and manufacture new, automated machinery and assembly lines in large quantities and introduce them into production.

The machine industry must invent and mass-produce programmed automatic lathes and other types of efficient automated machinery and equipment and widely introduce automatic assembly lines for automating the production of castings and other materials, processing and assembling. In this way, production processes will be automated and modernized and the production of machinery taken onto a higher level.

For automating and modernizing the production of machinery, it is also necessary to mass-produce automation elements, gauges and equipment. The machine industry must build production centres for the different types of automation elements, gauges and equipment under a long-term plan and mass-produce them, particularly electronic tubes and semi-conductors.

On the one hand the machine industry must strive to automate and modernize its own production processes and, on the other, work hard to manufacture and supply automatic, modern machinery to other sectors of the national economy. Technological progress in the national economy is made on the strength of the machinery supplied. The tasks of the technical revolution in all sectors of the national economy can only be fulfilled successfully when the machine industry produces and supplies a large number of automatic, modern machinery.

Next, the machine industry must try hard to build a solid centre for materials production and to manufacture and provide the cooperative production goods, vast quantities of which are needed.

The manufacture of machinery requires different specifications of steel, rubber and resin goods, electric components and many other kinds of materials and machine parts. But you must not expect to receive all these from other sectors. It is of course true that the machine industry will find things easy if it can be supplied with the materials and cooperative production goods it needs by the relevant sectors. However, it is difficult for the different specifications of steel and numerous cooperative production goods that the machine industry needs to be manufactured for it by the sectors concerned. Moreover, this does not guarantee the quality fully.

In the case of rubber products, for instance, there are only a few factories which manufacture them, but not many machines and equipment can do without rubber. Many machine factories demand a variety of rubber products, but the Ministry of the Chemical Industry is failing not only to provide them promptly, but also to ensure that their quality is good enough. In its efforts to supply the many sectors of the national economy with different kinds of rubber products, this ministry sometimes fails to provide the machine industry with the rubber products it demands; the proportion of rubber is not adequate and the products do not meet the technical requirements. As a result, the machine factories are unable to guarantee the quality of the machinery they produce and, moreover, suffer many problems in production. These bad practices can be stamped out easily if the machine industry, which comprises a great many machine factories, builds a well-equipped, specialized rubber factory and manufactures by itself and supplies the rubber products that the machine factories demand.

The machine industry must build specialized factories to turn out rubber and resin goods, electric components and other parts which are demanded in large quantities for the production of machinery. These specialized plants may belong to the machine factories which need lots of them or directly to the Ministry of the Machine Industry. In order to

manufacture the cooperative production goods which it uses in large quantities, the machine industry can take over, if necessary, a local factory or a disabled soldiers' factory, for instance, and turn it into a specialized factory.

This sector must also set up many materials shops aimed at producing steel of the necessary specifications for its own use. If these shops are set up at machine factories, they will be able to make wire or sheet steel of the required specifications by drawing or rolling the steel they have, should the steel of these specifications be unavailable. This will eliminate such instances as machine factories being unable to produce finished goods because of a lack of some items of steel.

Next, the machine industry must establish strict discipline in cooperative production.

If it fails to do so, normal production will be impossible. That was why a long time ago I stressed the need to establish rigorous discipline under which the factories must manufacture the cooperative production goods before their own basic products. Our officials, however, have not yet established proper discipline in cooperative production.

From now onwards, the machine industry must establish rigid discipline in cooperative production. Party organizations must exercise complete control over the machine factories so that they observe the discipline strictly.

Next, skilled workers must be trained properly.

At present the machine industry does not pay due attention to the training of skilled workers. Without training them efficiently, you will never be able to develop the machine industry rapidly.

In order to train skilled workers systematically, it seems necessary to revise part of the educational system at senior middle schools in the major industrialized areas. In areas where there are large machine factories, such as Tokchon, the pupils can follow the senior middle school curriculum for nine years and then learn mechanical technology in the remaining year. If they do so, they will learn a great deal about technology in their school days. You should study the idea of revising

the educational system at some senior middle schools in this way.

At the same time, you must take measures to set up vocational schools in those areas where large machine factories are concentrated and give the students a year's systematic education as well as practical training.

In addition to establishing a proper system for training skilled workers, you must assign the skilled workers to factories and other enterprises and allow them to settle there. At present, some industrial enterprises are quick to transfer their skilled workers to other sectors even when their production quotas have been adjusted only slightly and accept fresh workers when they are assigned new tasks. This must not be allowed. The machine industry must not automatically draw skilled workers and transfer them to other sectors, even if the production plan is adjusted slightly. When a production plan has been changed, the skilled workers must be allowed to settle as far as possible, even though some of them may have to be given other tasks to do temporarily.

Next, you must strive to keep the metallurgical industry in advance of the machine industry.

The machine industry has to process products from the metallurgical industry. The latter can be called an industry which produces primary goods by working basic raw materials, whereas the former is an industry which manufactures secondary goods by reworking them. The metallurgical industry comes before the machine industry. If the metallurgical industry is not kept ahead and steel is not produced properly, the machine industry will remain idle, which will then give rise to great problems in this industry. The regular production of steel by the metallurgical industry is essential for operating machine factories properly, and for steady production in the machine industry.

Therefore, you must give positive assistance to the metallurgical industry so that it keeps well in advance of the machine industry.

In order to give the metallurgical industry precedence, the machine industry must first manufacture the machines it needs, quickly and of the quality demanded.

However, the attitude of some officials in the machine industry is not positive with regard to assisting the metallurgical industry, and they simply demand steel from it. The metallurgical industry is constructing a coal-roasting factory in an effort to solve the fuel problem, but the machine industry is not supplying the machinery it needs. Moreover, a large part of those machines that have been supplied by the machine industry to the metallurgical industry have been found to be deficient.

This manner of working on the part of the machine industry is making it impossible to keep the metallurgical industry ahead of other industries. You must not consider that giving assistance to the metallurgical industry is a burden, but take a responsible attitude towards helping it solve any problems promptly.

The machine industry must work hard to solve the problems not only of the metallurgical industry but also of the power industry and the railway sector. The machine industry can put its own production onto a steady basis only when the metallurgical industry produces steel, the railways transport it promptly and sufficient electricity is supplied. You must not forget this. The machine industry must give positive assistance especially to these three sectors—the metallurgical industry, the power industry and rail transport.

In conclusion, I shall speak briefly about the need for the machine industry to make good preparations in the event of war breaking out.

Because the US imperialists are occupying the southern half of our country and are in direct confrontation with us, a war may break out at any moment here. An extremely tense situation was created because of the “Panmunjom incident” last year, and an incident happened a few days ago, an incident in which a plane of the US imperialist aggressor army that intruded into our air space was shot down. One such incident occurs in our country almost every year. A war does not start at an agreed hour, and, therefore, may break out because of some incident that was not anticipated.

That is why we must always think first about a possible war when considering anything and prepare thoroughly for coping with it.

The factories and other enterprises in the machine industry must prepare themselves fully for a possible war in anticipation of playing their part should one ever break out. The machine factories must not remain idle and do nothing, when the country is in the throes of a serious war. All of these factories must make thorough preparations, setting themselves definite tasks that must be done in wartime, and, when a war breaks out, step up production in earnest, thus making a positive contribution to victory in the war.

Besides, the machine industry must take measures to continue with their primary production even in the event of a war and to keep its machinery and equipment safe. Although a lot is destroyed during a war, we will be able to restore the devastated economy quickly if we only have machinery, after we have emerged victorious. All the machine factories must adopt strict measures to ensure wartime production and keep the machinery and equipment safe.

I believe that the workers in the machine industry will carry out with credit the tasks set by the present consultative meeting and thus bring a great change to the development of our machine industry.

ON FURTHER INCREASING THE PRODUCTION OF COOKING OIL

**Speech at an Enlarged Meeting of the Political Committee
of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea**

August 3, 1977

Thanks to the strenuous efforts made by our Party, several problems standing in the way of improving the standard of living of the people have been solved in recent years.

First of all, the problem we had with food grain has been fully resolved. Previously we had to import some grain, and this put pressure on our foreign currency situation and caused a number of other problems. Over recent years, however, since we began guiding the rural economy directly, great progress has been made every year in agricultural production. As a result, we are not only meeting all our needs for grain without having to import any, but have also been able to build up considerable reserves.

This year, too, we have produced fine crops. In general the condition of the crops this year is excellent. According to the forecast, there is a danger of heavy rain over the Chongchon River basin, so I have instructed the officials of the Agricultural Commission to take the appropriate measures. I believe that if a typhoon or heavy rain does no serious damage to the crops, there will be no problem in fulfilling this year's plan for grain production.

The problem we had with vegetables has also been resolved. Over the past few years Party organizations at all levels have conducted an

ideological campaign under the guidance of the Party Central Committee, and administrative bodies and agricultural organizations have put a lot of work into solving the problem of vegetables. As a result, the production of vegetables has increased considerably and the people are now being given adequate supplies of them. Of course, supplies are subject to seasonal fluctuations, but these can be eliminated by organizing the work better.

We are nearing a solution to the problem of fish. Last year we convened a Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the East Coast and adopted measures for developing fishing in the East Sea, and this year we held a Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the West Coast and took measures to develop fishing in the West Sea. If the officials concerned implement the tasks set at these meetings properly, they will be able to make innovations in fishing operations. If we make thorough preparations for introducing methods of fishing that suit the changing sea conditions, increase the number of fishing vessels, nets and other fishing equipment and put a lot of effort into the fishing work, we shall be able to catch a lot more fish than at present and ensure a daily supply of 150 to 200 grammes of fish per head of the population. A daily supply of 150 to 200 grammes for everyone is quite good.

Moreover, we have prepared everything that is needed to ensure a steady supply of soya sauce and bean paste for the people.

But there is one question to which we have not yet found a satisfactory solution concerning the standard of living of the people, and that is cooking oil.

We have been making painstaking efforts to solve the problem of cooking oil since the days immediately following liberation, but this problem has not been solved.

Take, for instance, finding a solution to the problem of cooking oil by planting a large number of forests of oil-producing trees. We set this task immediately after liberation in an effort to solve the problem. In fact, it is very important to produce cooking oil by making good use of the mountains in our country where there is a large area of mountains

and a limited area of cultivated land. But neither Party organizations nor people's government bodies have taken this matter seriously. In the past the League of Socialist Working Youth claimed to be creating oil-producing forests, but it did not put a great deal of effort into the work. Such being the case, obtaining cooking oil by creating oil-producing forests is something that still remains to be done.

In order to improve the people's diet, we must solve the oil problem. Now that the problem of food grain has been completely resolved, and now that a basic solution has been found to the vegetable and fish problems, we can improve the people's diet to a considerable extent if only we solve the oil problem.

Our people now eat a great deal of flour and vegetables, so that, if plenty of oil is made available, they can cook and eat a variety of delicious food. With cooking oil, they can make pancakes and prepare tastier fried vegetables and noodles, using wheat and maize flour.

In view of our present circumstances, what can we do to solve the oil problem?

Of course, we could find a solution by developing oil-producing forests. But it is impossible to meet our current needs for cooking oil by creating oil-producing forests now. Oil-bearing trees take time to grow. The oil-bearing trees that are now being planted will produce oil for the next generation.

At present, we are growing soya beans as one way of solving the oil problem. But that is no radical solution to the problem.

This year we have increased the area planted with soya beans to approximately 100,000 hectares. The crop looks promising. In the past the yield of beans has not been high because the crop was neither fertilized according to a proper system nor was it tended well. But this year the crop is good because good seeds were planted densely and because a correct fertilizing system was used. If two tons are produced per hectare, 200,000 tons will be produced from 100,000 hectares. Some 30,000 hectares of this 100,000 hectares are made up of the ridges between rice fields, so the total output of beans may not actually reach 200,000 tons. But, if we take into account the quantity of beans

we shall import, we should have 200,000 tons. If 13 per cent of oil can be extracted, 26,000 tons of oil can be obtained from 200,000 tons of soya beans. But 26,000 tons of oil are not enough for a complete solution of the oil problem.

If we are to ensure a daily supply of 15 grammes of cooking oil for each man engaged in heavy labour, eight grammes for everyone doing light or office work and five grammes for each of their dependents, we shall require 32,000 tons. These figures should be considered as a minimum or the first stage target. But we would like to provide a little more cooking oil for the factory and office workers and their families, and we hope to supply 20 grammes for each worker engaged in heavy labour, 15 grammes for everyone doing light work or office work and 10 grammes for each of their dependents. Therefore, 26,000 tons of bean oil falls short even of the first stage target.

Cooking oil will also have to be supplied to hotels, restaurants, nurseries, kindergartens and other public catering establishments. If children eat oil, they grow up strong.

Not only do we need edible oil, but also industrial oil. At present, not enough industrial oil is being supplied so that only small quantities of paint, glycerine and similar goods are being produced and this is having a serious effect on the development of light industry and the machine industry. Light industry is not being supplied with sufficient oil, so that not even soap is produced to meet the people's needs and this causes them occasional inconvenience.

As you can see, oil is needed by many sectors of the national economy, but the current annual output of oil is small.

Can cultivating perilla and rape provide a solution to the oil problem? That, too, would be difficult just now.

Of course, experiments are being conducted on the cultivation of such oil-producing plants as perilla, rape and sesame. However, the extensive cultivation of these oil crops is impossible in our country. Suppose we cultivate rape and produce one ton of its seeds per hectare. At an oil-extraction rate of 35 per cent, 10,000 hectares of land will be required to produce 3,500 tons of oil. So we arrive at the conclusion

that, if we are to solve the problem of cooking oil by cultivating rape, we have to plant 100,000 hectares of it. The same is true of perilla. Suppose we cultivate this crop and produce one ton of its seeds from one hectare. At an oil-extraction rate of 30 per cent, 100,000 hectares of dry fields will be required to solve the cooking oil problem.

We have planted 100,000 hectares of soya beans. Where can we find another 100,000 hectares for cultivating perilla or rape? If we divert 100,000 hectares for cultivating perilla or rape in our country, where the area of cultivated land is limited, the area available for grain production will be reduced to such an extent that we will be short of cereals. If we reduce the area under maize cultivation in order to plant perilla or rape, the production of grain will be severely affected. Therefore, only those countries which have a large area of land can afford to grow perilla or rape to produce cooking oil.

The best way of solving our country's oil problem is to process maize.

At the moment I am studying a great deal of information on the cultivation of rape and perilla for providing the people with cooking oil; however, it seems to me that our country has no alternative other than to obtain oil by processing maize.

Over recent years we have built quite a few cornstarch factories. If all these factories operate at full capacity, they will be able to process 450,000 tons of maize. At an oil-extraction rate of three per cent at these factories, 13,500 tons of oil can be obtained from the 450,000 tons of maize processed. If we also improve riced corn flour mills and process one million tons of maize there annually, 25,000 tons of oil can be produced at a 2.5 per-cent rate of oil extraction. If two million tons of maize are processed, 50,000 tons of oil will be obtained. If the riced corn flour mills process three million tons of maize annually, they will produce 75,000 tons of oil. This is a considerable amount.

In the future the riced corn flour mills will be able to process a larger amount of maize than this. The amount of maize that can be processed by these mills will depend on the total amount that is cultivated.

Not only the riced corn flour mills but also assorted feed factories can extract oil from maize germs. You should not feed maize germs to farm animals. Maize germs should be separated and oil extracted from them; the oil-cake can then be used as livestock feed. If 500,000 to 600,000 tons of maize are processed annually by the assorted feed factories, they, too, will produce a sizable amount of oil.

If 450,000 tons of maize are processed by the cornstarch factories and one million tons by the riced corn flour mills, nearly 40,000 tons of oil will be obtained. This amount is enough to provide a basic solution to the problem of cooking oil.

Producing oil by processing maize is economically more sound than obtaining it by cultivating oil crops such as soya beans, perilla or rape.

If we are to produce 40,000 tons of cooking oil by cultivating soya beans, perilla or rape, at least 100,000 hectares of land will be needed. But it is not only difficult to divert 100,000 hectares to the cultivation of these crops in view of the circumstances in our country, but also planting and harvesting them will require a lot of manpower. But separating maize germs and extracting oil from them poses no major problem because this process has already been industrialized.

It is clear from every angle that producing oil by processing maize is the best way of solving the oil problem in our country.

Therefore, this Enlarged Meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee must discuss in full the matter of producing oil by processing maize.

The oil problem has already been discussed at a meeting of the Political Committee and the officials concerned were given specific tasks. But the problem has not yet been solved. So, at this Enlarged Meeting of the Political Committee, I myself am going to organize the work of solving this problem. This enlarged meeting is a meeting for organizing the work to solve the oil problem. So there is no need for any further organizing work after today's meeting. All the officials must implement the tasks they are given and that is all there is to it.

In the same way that we worked hard to carry out the five-point

policy for harnessing nature as decided at the 12th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee, so we must launch a mass campaign to solve the oil problem by processing maize.

This work must be undertaken in two stages. As the first stage, 1.6 million tons of maize must be processed by operating all the existing cornstarch factories and by improving 62 riced corn flour mills and eight assorted feed factories, so that at least 40,000 tons of oil are produced.

Firstly, all the existing cornstarch factories must start work this autumn and the construction of the factory now under way near Pakchon must be speeded up and finished within the first half of next year, and we must put it into operation in the second half of next year.

If all the provincial cornstarch factories are put into operation, they will be able to process 450,000 tons of maize. This year the senior officials of the Central People's Committee have conducted a field inspection and ensured that most of the cornstarch factories are fully equipped. Party organizations, too, are paying close attention to this matter. Therefore, the cornstarch factories are in a position to operate at full capacity if they are supplied with sufficient maize. So, from this autumn onwards, adequate supplies of maize must be guaranteed, and then they can operate at full capacity.

If the 100,000-ton capacity cornstarch factory now under construction near Pakchon is put into operation in the latter half of next year, it will be able to process approximately 50,000 tons of maize before the end of the year.

If 450,000 tons of maize are processed by the provincial cornstarch factories and 50,000 tons by the one near Pakchon, then a total of 500,000 tons will be processed next year. If the cornstarch factories increase the oil-extraction rate to three per cent, 15,000 tons of oil can be produced by processing 500,000 tons of maize. These factories must make every effort to increase the oil-extraction rate and must reach this three per-cent target.

Next, we must organize the maintenance and improvement of the

riced corn flour mills in the 62 industrial cities and counties, and of the eight assorted feed factories.

It would be impossible for us to improve every riced corn flour mill in every city and county at once, so we must begin with those in the 62 industrial cities and counties. The maize consumed by the people living in these cities and counties and that processed by the assorted feed factories add up to 1,096,400 tons, and, if things go well, 1,100,000 tons of maize can be processed next year. At an oil-extraction rate of 2.5 per cent, 1,100,000 tons of maize will yield 27,500 tons of oil.

If all this is done, a total of over 40,000 tons of maize oil will be obtained.

Our target for the first stage must be to obtain at least 40,000 tons of maize oil by processing 1,600,000 tons of maize, and we must make thorough preparations to ensure that this is done.

When improving the riced corn flour mills, the best one should be set up as an example.

Recently, a maize germ separating process was added at the Sakju Riced Corn Flour Mill and a demonstration lecture was given at the mill. The standard of work at the mill is now fairly high. If all other riced corn flour mills are brought up to the same standard as the Sakju Riced Corn Flour Mill, this will mean an overall improvement. But you should not assume that the Sakju Riced Corn Flour Mill is the best. It was improved in a hurry for the purpose of giving a demonstration lecture, so shortcomings may be revealed there and moreover there may already be better mills.

It has been reported that the rate of oil extraction at the Haeju Riced Corn Flour Mill is 0.6 per cent higher than that at the Sakju Riced Corn Flour Mill, and the rate of maize germ collection at the former is five per cent higher than at the latter. It is not easy to increase the rate of maize germ collection by five per cent. I have also been told that the rate of coal consumption at the Haeju Riced Corn Flour Mill is low.

The Economy Commission of the Central People's Committee and the Administration Council must send scientists and technicians to the

Haeju Riced Corn Flour Mill to conduct a detailed investigation into the situation there. If they find these figures to be authentic, the Haeju Riced Corn Flour Mill should be made the model for improving other mills of a similar type. Since science and technology are continuing to advance, it is logical to set the most advanced mill as an example to follow. Therefore, the Sakju Riced Corn Flour Mill need not necessarily be made the model simply because the demonstration lecture was given there. If another mill is found to be better, then that one must be made the model. It is much better for the provinces to display their ingenuity and try to equip their mills better than the Sakju or the Haeju Riced Corn Flour Mill. If the talents of many people are pooled, there is no reason why they cannot set up an excellent mill.

In order to improve the riced corn flour mills quickly, first of all, the machine factories which produce the equipment for these mills must make sure that the quality is good.

It is the specialized machinery factories that have been given the tasks of producing the equipment for the riced corn flour mills this time and the responsibility they bear is heavy.

In the past, the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees were instructed that cornstarch factories should be built by the provinces themselves, but the results have not been satisfactory. Of course, these chief secretaries did work enthusiastically and built the cornstarch factories, but on their own, the provinces were unable to equip them fully, so these factories could not be operated properly. It took over four years for the provinces to equip them fully, and it is only this year that the work has been finished. If a correct technical estimate had been made at the outset and if the job of producing the equipment for them had been given to specialized machinery factories, the cornstarch factories could have been finished at a much earlier date.

The factories responsible for producing the equipment for the riced corn flour mills must draw up technical documents and prepare good tools and jigs and ensure that the equipment is precise and of the highest quality.

The machine factories must also produce the equipment punctually.

The senior officials of the factories which are to produce the equipment have expressed their firm resolve before the Political Committee to ensure that it is produced by the set date and I hope that they will keep their word.

Everything that is needed other than the items supplied by the specialized machinery factories should be produced by the provinces themselves.

In order to improve the riced corn flour mills quickly, we must also ensure that the materials and standard equipment needed are supplied on time.

Steel, cement and other materials and electric motors, transformers, speed reducers and other standard equipment needed by the riced corn flour mills must be supplied unconditionally. In this way the project can be finished quickly.

If the provinces want to build additional riced corn flour mills over and above what was stipulated by the central authorities, and if this does not affect centrally-run industry, we shall have to supply some of the materials they need. The senior officials of the provinces must not fall into the practice of giving the factories and other enterprises within the provinces random assignments to produce equipment for additional riced corn flour mills and of thus severely affecting the performance of these factories and other enterprises in their basic duties.

The factories which are to produce the equipment for the riced corn flour mills must not wait for individual quotas to be assigned, but start production immediately. The task of building the mills has been set, detailed assignments given and the supply of materials and standard equipment organized. This will serve as a general plan.

The work of improving the riced corn flour mills and assorted feed factories must be stepped up so that 20 mills are equipped in September, 20 mills in October, 20 mills in November and ten mills in December.

This year we must complete the first stage by conducting a powerful shock-brigade campaign to maintain and improve the riced corn flour mills and assorted feed factories while operating all the

cornstarch factories, and next year we must work hard to complete the second stage, the task of finding a more satisfactory solution to the problem of cooking oil.

If we improve the riced corn flour mills in the 62 cities and counties this year, this will leave 120 other cities and counties to be dealt with, and the second stage of the plan is to improve the riced corn flour mills for these cities and counties.

With regard to this second stage of operations, the question was raised as to whether 100 factories should be improved in 1978 and the remainder in 1979 or whether half of them should be done in 1978 and the remaining half in 1979. I am of the opinion that, since we have set the important task of revolutionizing the food industry and are working hard to carry it out, we must finish the project next year rather than carry it over to 1979. Maize is supplied to the people in every city and county. In such circumstances it is more profitable to improve all the riced corn flour mills and process maize, even though the task presents quite a challenge.

As for the practical matters related to improving the riced corn flour mills at the second stage, it would be a good idea for the Economy Commission of the Central People's Committee and the Administration Council to conduct a detailed examination before raising the question again. This second stage of the plan, of improving these other riced corn flour mills, can be organized in the same way that this Political Committee meeting has done.

If we improve the remaining riced corn flour mills next year and expand our capacity by a further million tons, we shall be able to process more than 2.5 million tons of maize. So, in 1979, we must process 2.3 million tons of maize and thus produce at least 60,000 tons of oil.

In addition to equipping the riced corn flour mills fully next year, we must endeavour to put production at the cornstarch factories onto a steady basis.

Next year those cornstarch factories now under construction must be completed, but no new ones begun. It is a good idea to start

increasing the capacity of the cornstarch factories in 1979 and this must be done by expanding the existing factories once production there has been put onto a steady basis. If a capacity of 30,000 tons is increased to 50,000 tons and if a capacity of 50,000 tons is doubled, then the cornstarch factories will be able to process a total of 700,000 to 1,000,000 tons of maize.

If two million tons of maize are processed by the riced corn flour mills and one million tons by the cornstarch factories, the total will be three million tons. Then, even the farmers can be supplied with sufficient cooking oil. In accordance with this the question of cooking oil production should be taken into consideration in the new Seven-Year Plan.

In order to increase the production of maize oil, we must not only improve the maize processing factories, but also increase maize production. We must continue to proclaim maize as the king of dry field crops and concentrate great efforts on growing it.

If we are to increase the maize yield, we must grow better varieties. Agricultural scientists must work hard to develop good varieties of maize which ripen early, bear many ears and can resist a typhoon.

Cooking oil for farmers must also be produced in large quantities.

For the farmers to produce it themselves, they must plant perilla on the edges of dry fields, on the ridges between them and on vacant land and sow a lot of soya beans on the ridges between paddy fields. By doing this, they will produce a lot of cooking oil without using any cultivated land. I have been told that the Tongbong Cooperative Farm, Hamju County, South Hamgyong Province, planted perilla at the edges of dry fields and on vacant land, produced cooking oil from it and is now supplying 10 grammes to everyone every day.

Radishes, cabbages and rape should be cultivated widely as early oilseed crops. There is no problem in growing maize as a later crop after these early crops have been harvested. Sesame and perilla must also be cultivated as intercrops. If perilla is cultivated in vegetable fields as an intercrop, a sizable amount of it will be harvested.

Only a few people are studying the cultivation of oil-bearing crops,

and no one is giving proper guidance and concentrating on this matter. If they adopt the attitude of masters when tackling the task, the officials will be able to ensure the cultivation of oil-bearing crops as early crops or intercrops and produce a considerable amount of cooking oil for the farmers, without harming cereal production.

In future, the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people's committees and the chief secretaries of the Party committees in the same areas must carefully organize the work of increasing oil production so that the farmers are supplied with sufficient.

Following the example of the Kumbu Cooperative Farm, Sakju County, other cooperative farms must launch a campaign to gather the germs from the maize they consume themselves and extract oil from them. There is a rice mill at every cooperative farm. If it is given the necessary equipment to separate maize germs and extract oil from them, it will produce a sizable amount of oil.

If the cooperative farms grow plenty of oil-bearing crops, collect all the maize germs and extract oil from them, they will be perfectly able to produce enough oil for themselves and both farmers and industrial workers will be able to eat it. It is only when the rural communities produce cooking oil for the farmers that the urban communities will have no need to send their cooking oil out to the rural communities.

There is also a shortage of oil for industry, and this must be dealt with.

The solution of this problem will enable us to supply sufficient oil to the various sectors of the national economy, and also to put an end to the practice of using edible oil for industrial purposes. In order to increase the production of industrial oil, cities and counties must set up rice-oil mills which produce oil by rendering and must obtain it by tapping every source of oil. To begin with, the 62 cities and counties must build this type of rice-oil mills this year. If you collect and process rice bran and all other basic sources of oil, you will be able to solve the problem of industrial oil.

In addition to the immediate measures for solving the oil problem, steps will also have to be taken to find a long-term solution. In

particular, tireless efforts should be directed towards setting up walnut, heartnut and other forests of oil-producing trees.

We also have a problem with sugar, and this must be solved.

It is only when this problem is resolved that we can revolutionize the food industry and mass-produce ice-lollies, ice-cream, soft drinks and confectionery for the people. Because the problem of sugar has not been solved, we are in no position to produce soft drinks properly and fruit syrup, although we gather wild fruit in large quantities.

We must make every possible effort to solve the sugar problem. If everyone applies himself to the task and works tenaciously, the sugar problem, too, can be resolved.

Cornstarch factories must take measures to produce sugar from maize.

Recently the Pukchang Cornstarch Factory has produced sugar from maize, and it is fairly good. I gave it the name *oktang* because it was made from maize.

The *oktang* sugar produced by the Pukchang Cornstarch Factory is still in liquid form. If it is to be made ready for consumption, it must be solidified. The scientists concerned must intensify their research on *oktang* sugar and solve the problem as soon as possible. Preparations should be continued for the next six months, so that the *oktang* sugar can be put into full production from next year onwards.

It is best to develop factories for producing *oktang* sugar as close to thermal power stations as possible. Then the steam needed for the production of *oktang* sugar will be available without expense. There must be no instance of building an *oktang* sugar factory without a careful calculation of the local conditions, displaying a so-called creative spirit.

In the future, the Pukchang Cornstarch Factory must produce approximately 50,000 tons of *oktang* sugar, and another *oktang* sugar production factory will have to be built near Pakchon. In this way 100,000 to 150,000 tons of it will be produced annually during the new Seven-Year Plan.

There may be other good ways of solving our country's sugar

problem. Recently I have studied information on sugar production and discovered many interesting things. We must continue to study new methods of producing sugar and take steps towards developing our own sugar industry during the Seven-Year Plan.

If we produce *oktang* sugar and other kinds of sugar after studying new methods during the Seven-Year Plan, we shall be able to produce approximately 300,000 tons annually. If we produce 300,000 tons domestically and import some from abroad, we shall have sufficient to supply to the people.

In conclusion, I would like to refer briefly to the question of meat production.

An important aspect of increasing meat production is to obtain protein feed. We have built many chicken plants, but we are not producing meat and eggs properly, because of the shortage of protein feed. We must, therefore, solve the problem of protein feed as soon as possible.

A good way of obtaining protein feed is to breed earthworms. Earthworms are good animal-protein feed.

There is nothing difficult about breeding earthworms. All that is needed is to prepare some hutches, put boxes with breeding worms in them and keep the rooms at a suitable temperature. If boilers are difficult to obtain for heating in winter, you can provide them with heated floors. If you keep them at the required temperature, you will have no problem in breeding worms even in winter. Some chicken dung and pig excrement must be put in the earthworm boxes.

At present, a campaign to breed earthworms is being conducted and the results have been fairly good. This campaign must become more widespread in the future so that plenty of animal-protein feed is produced.

Earthworms can also be used as feed by fish farms. If fish farms breed plenty of earthworms, raising rainbow trout and various other kinds of fish will be much easier.

Not only earthworms, but also maggots can be used as animal-protein feed.

From now onwards, the provinces must obtain animal-protein feed

for themselves by a variety of methods.

We must not try to use fish meal to solve the problem of animal-protein feed. We are producing meat and eggs in order to provide the people with protein. Then, why should we process fish, which contains plenty of protein, into meal and feed it to chickens? Of course, a certain amount of fish meal for the development of poultry farming must be produced. But there is no need to use a lot of fish to produce fish meal. Fish jowls and guts and other parts not suitable for human consumption should be processed into meal, and all the good fish must be frozen or salted and supplied to the people without further processing. The problem of animal-protein feed has to be solved by breeding earthworms and maggots and by various other methods.

We must also produce vegetable-protein feed, along with animal-protein feed. We must cultivate plenty of *aegukphul* and various other plants which contain a lot of protein and produce vegetable-protein feed.

I believe that all the officials who are present at this meeting will carry out their tasks to the letter, with a correct understanding of the Party's intention of increasing the production of oil, taking to heart the interests of the Party, the working class and the people.

ON SOME MEASURES FOR IMPROVING CAPITAL CONSTRUCTION

**Speech at an Enlarged Meeting of the Political
Committee of the Central Committee
of the Workers' Party of Korea**

August 4, 1977

Today I am going to speak about some questions that have arisen in improving capital construction.

Quite a few shortcomings have been revealed in the work of the construction industry.

Several building projects have been undertaken recently, but few of them have been completed properly within the set time. Neither the project for expanding the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex nor that of constructing the Youth Chemical Complex has been completed. These are important projects which should have been finished during the Six-Year Plan, but they were not, nor was the quality of the work actually done high enough. Very few of the cornstarch factories built in the provinces are operating properly. The construction industry has not yet rid itself of the slapdash work attitude which was acquired in the years of postwar reconstruction.

Construction work nowadays is not as efficient as it was when the vinalon factory was built. An excellent vinalon factory was built quickly with our own equipment and our own skills, and very few mistakes were made during the actual construction. If the same standard of work had been in evidence when building the Youth

Chemical Complex and the Sunchon Cement Factory, they would have been completed a long time ago.

The present level of technical skill of the workers is not high.

This is the age of welding. Welding is essential in construction, particularly in the construction of chemical works. But the quality of welding for many of the structures which have been built is not good enough. Faulty welding was revealed in the construction of the Sungni Chemical Works, and the construction of the Youth Chemical Complex was delayed for the same reason. The welding at the Sodusu Power Station was also unsatisfactory. The construction of this power station was begun a long time ago, but it has not yet been completed because of errors of both design and construction. Welding is not up to the mark because the level of technical skill is low, and for the same reason, designing and building are unsatisfactory.

If they are to win a battle, commanding officers must estimate the strength of their own forces accurately. It is only when they have formed a correct judgement of their own capability to destroy the enemy and of any shortcomings in their preparations for the battle, that they can defeat the enemy. The same is true of construction. Without a correct estimate of their building forces, officials will not succeed in construction work.

The present level of technical skill of our building workers is such that they can manage to complete, without making mistakes, long-term projects for reservoirs or for building and equipping simple factories or for improving existing ones. They are not capable of building sophisticated modern chemical works, building-materials plants or metallurgical plants. The low level of efficiency of our construction workers in building the Youth Chemical Complex shows their technical skill exactly as it is. With this level of technical skill they will never be able to build many modern factories, power stations and ironworks.

The construction industry has not been good at strengthening its technical forces and at raising the technical level of the workers. In our country there are many universities of technology for different

branches; there are the University of Construction and Building Materials, the University of Mechanical Engineering, the University of Chemical Industry, the University of Mining and Metallurgical Engineering and so on. But they have not produced many able technicians and, worse still, the technicians they have trained have been dispersed, and not appointed to the construction industry rationally. That is why it has been impossible for the construction industry to strengthen its technical forces.

So far, the Party's policy on making construction specialized has not been implemented thoroughly either. In the army, machine gunners always shoot machine guns and artillerymen always fire field guns. The construction industry must make its work specialized just as the army does. But construction work has not been made specialized; those who have formerly built power stations are sent to build ironworks, and those who have been welding are put to digging. If the work is distributed randomly in this manner, the workers will never be able to improve their technical skills, nor will they ever display their skill to the full.

The construction industry lacks both order and discipline. To ensure the quality of construction, it is necessary first to keep design work in advance of site operations.

A design is what a plan of operations is to the army. Just as an army without a plan of operations will not fight well, so construction without a design will not be done properly.

A long time ago we put forward the policy of drawing up the design at least one year in advance of site operations, and made a severe criticism of the failure to do so. But designing is not yet being kept well ahead of site operations.

This is largely because the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council have their own design companies and adopt a self-centred attitude. The Ferrous Metal Design Company was set up when the Hwanghae Iron Works was reconstructed, and it was staffed with university students who had been allowed to graduate early. It has been in existence for a long time and is experienced in designing blast furnaces, coke ovens and sintering furnaces, so that the standard of its

designs is fairly good. Having taken over this design company, however, the Ministry of the Metal Industry has been ordering it to perform a variety of tasks other than its basic duty. The result of this is a delay in designing for capital construction and a failure to ensure that the designs are of the required quality.

The organizational guidance of the construction industry is not satisfactory.

No one is really in charge of the construction industry; the Ministry of Construction is not playing its proper role.

The senior officials of the construction industry are not familiar with the composition of the work force. They will only be able to conduct operations properly when they have strengthened the forces and are extremely familiar with the make-up of the work force. But at present none of them understands the workers in the building industry. They do not know clearly what kind of people the workteam leaders of the construction enterprises are, what kind of people their engineers are and what kind of people the chief engineers are.

Recently the Party has examined a few construction enterprises and found that the work force in the construction industry is not well organized.

Organizing the cadres and men in the construction industry must naturally be undertaken by the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees. But not one of these secretaries has ever set up a satisfactory construction enterprise. The chief secretaries of provincial Party committees have given construction workers assignments outside their own fields and transferred many of them to other sectors, instead of strengthening the ranks of the cadres in the construction industry and reinforcing the ranks of the workers. Many years ago we organized a construction team tens of thousands of strong in order to reconstruct Pyongyang and make it a fine, modern city, but they have been transferred to other sectors and only a few of them now remain. As a result, little worth mentioning has been constructed in Pyongyang over recent years.

The chief secretaries of provincial Party committees have also

neglected to direct and control construction work. If they had been at all concerned about the construction industry and directed it properly, the construction of the Sodusu Power Station and the Youth Chemical Complex would not have been in the state it is now. When the Sunchon Cement Factory was being built, the senior officials of the Party Committee of South Phyongan Province did not even visit the construction site very often. So it is only natural that construction is not progressing properly.

In order to carry out the new Seven-Year Plan, a complete solution of these shortcomings must be found.

If the work continues to be done using outdated methods without these shortcomings being corrected, the result may be more faulty buildings, a waste of a lot of manpower and materials in putting things right and, worse still, a delay in the implementation of the new Seven-Year Plan. We must, therefore, put the work of the construction industry to rights before we embark on this plan.

We must, first of all, strengthen the Ministry of Construction and establish a system whereby the direction of construction is coordinated.

Construction work is a fight with nature, so this, too, is a battle. If we are to command the battle efficiently and fight effectively, the headquarters must be competent. At present, however, the construction industry has no genuine headquarters.

Construction work will never be successful so long as the construction industry has no headquarters and so long as building forces are dispersed and act as they please. We must form a strong headquarters capable of giving coordinated leadership to the building enterprises in the construction industry.

A Party committee must be formed for the Ministry of Construction with the equivalent authority of a provincial Party committee, and a political bureau, too, must be set up. Each building enterprise under the Ministry of Construction must, according to its size, have a Party committee with the equivalent authority of a county Party committee or of the primary Party committee, as well as a political section. The

Party organizations at the building enterprises must not work under the direction of provincial Party committees, but must belong directly to the Party Committee of the Ministry of Construction and function under its coordinated leadership. As is the case with the Ministry of Railways, the Ministry of Construction must be given the authority to deal with personnel matters independently, examine designs and admit hard-working people to the Party and give them commendations.

In future, the managers of enterprises in the construction industry must perform administrative duties and their Party committee secretaries must do Party work, political work, under the collective leadership of the Party committee concerned, strictly in accordance with the Taean work system.

It is only when the Party committee and the political bureau have been established in the Ministry of Construction and when a powerful headquarters has been set up that officials can become familiar with the shop managers and the ordinary workers, know who is a good man and who is bad, that the Minister's orders reach the subordinate units promptly just as orders from the commanders of the People's Army do, and that success can be achieved in construction work.

The organizational structures of the Ministry of Construction and of the building enterprises must be remodelled so that they conform to the new Party organizational system and to the new system of direction.

Next, we must put the construction units onto a regular basis and make building operations specialized.

This is a particularly important factor in improving capital construction. It is only when the construction units are made regular and building operations are specialized that the technical level of the builders and the standard of guidance given by the cadres can be raised methodically and the quality of construction ensured.

Power station construction companies, metallurgical works construction companies, chemical works construction companies, harbour construction companies, bridge construction companies and other specialized construction companies must be formed under the Ministry of Construction so that they do building work for the

specified sectors. Some composite construction enterprises must also be formed.

In addition, such technical units as welding companies, equipment assembling companies and mechanized companies will have to be formed. These units will provide technical backup and extra equipment for the specialized construction companies when they are needed. They can be likened to divisional artillery or corps artillery in the army. When it needs additional artillery fire, an infantry regiment will ask for fire support from the divisional or corps artillery. Likewise, if excessive demands are being made on the welding in a construction company, the welding unit must be sent to help; and if a construction company needs extra construction equipment, the mechanized company must offer support. If technical units are organized to provide support in this manner, building forces can be concentrated on major projects so that they are finished quickly.

Construction units must be organized thoroughly on a regular, military basis. There is no need for construction workers to wear military uniform, but they must be organized like military units.

The organizational structures of the specialized construction enterprises must be shaped properly and they must be manned and equipped according to this structure. The number of vehicles, cranes, cement mixers and skilled workers must be specified, for the organizational structure of the metallurgical works construction company, for instance, and then the unit must be equipped and staffed, as specified. Once the specialized construction enterprise has been equipped and staffed with skilled workers as set out in the organizational chart, there must be no further change in the structure and no sidetracking of equipment and skilled workers without permission from the central authorities.

The Ministry of Construction must take over the construction enterprises from the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council and restructure them. If this considerable number of construction enterprises is left as it is, there will be too many of them and they will not prove very effective. If there are too many

construction enterprises, it will be impossible for the officials of the Ministry of Construction to direct and control them efficiently and ensure a regular supply of consumer goods. An excessive number of enterprises will also mean that the construction forces are dispersed and the amount of nonproductive labour is increased.

The Ministry of Construction must, therefore, restructure them in such a way as to reduce the number of units. Since the construction enterprises are going to have Party committees and political sections, there will be no harm in making the organizations bigger. The Ministry of Construction must take over only elite construction enterprises from the commissions and ministries, merge those which have to be merged, adjust those which need adjustment on the principle of streamlining them and enlarge them a little. If necessary, branch companies or construction corps can be formed under major construction enterprises.

Construction work must be given distinct classifications so that every building sector can perform its duty in a responsible manner.

In future, the Ministry of Construction must take full responsibility for new industrial and harbour construction.

When the construction of new factories and other enterprises is undertaken, the Ministry of Construction must build in addition the nurseries and kindergartens and other public buildings and houses that are needed. If the Ministry of Construction builds only factories without the necessary public buildings and houses, it is not good enough. Because industrial construction companies have their own centres for producing building materials and because a considerable amount of steel, cement and timber left over from previous industrial construction is available, they will have no problem in building houses if they put them to effective use.

In order to build public buildings and houses as an integral part of industrial construction, the industrial construction company would be well advised to have a workshop or workteam which specializes in this additional undertaking. When planning a new industrial construction project, the Administration Council must not only plan the construction of the factory, but also envisage the construction of

additional public buildings and houses and include the funds in the item of construction and assembling.

From now onwards, the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council must undertake the repair and improvement of the factories and other enterprises in their charge. The Ministry of Land and Marine Transport must also be responsible for the renovation and expansion of ports and harbours. On the condition that they undertake these tasks, the commissions and ministries should retain the construction forces they need to maintain and extend the factories and enterprises under them, and must hand over any remaining building forces to the Ministry of Construction.

It would be a good idea to reorganize the construction enterprises that remain under the commissions and ministries and call the larger ones construction corps and the smaller ones construction workshops. Each construction corps and workshop must become part of an industrial complex rather than becoming an independent self-managing unit.

The Economy Commission of the Central People's Committee and the Administration Council must register all these construction corps and workshops and give them clear-cut assignments according to a plan. They must also control the commissions and ministries strictly and prevent them from breaking up the construction corps and workshops as they please simply because they belong to them.

In connection with the question of transferring construction forces to the Ministry of Construction, the commissions and ministries may take a self-centred attitude and be reluctant to give up their skilled workers. This must not happen. The Organizational Leadership Department of the Party Central Committee must direct Party organizations in such a way that this practice does not occur.

In future, too, the Ministry of Railways must take the responsibility for constructing its own railways, because this is a specialized undertaking. The Ministry of Railways must construct some railways on its own and some by mobilizing the masses. The Ministry of Public Security, too, has to build what it needs by itself. Under the circumstances, the two ministries should not turn their construction

forces over to the Ministry of Construction.

Provincial cities must be built by the local urban construction enterprises.

At present, the inhabitants in each provincial capital number hundreds of thousands and this number is rising all the time. The cities must continue to construct public buildings such as nurseries, kindergartens, schools, hospitals, community service facilities and other cultural establishments as well as undertaking housing construction to keep pace with the increase in population. Old buildings will have to be pulled down and new ones built in order to maintain urban development. Provinces must, therefore, improve and strengthen their construction enterprises and press on with urban construction.

Pyongyang now has its own public building, housing and industrial construction companies. So it should construct public buildings and houses and also industrial establishments itself.

Construction in county towns and rural communities must be undertaken by the urban construction corps and rural construction corps.

It is very important for every county to have its own urban construction corps and develop the county town. As is pointed out in the rural theses, the county is a regional centre which serves as a link between urban and rural communities in all fields of politics, the economy and culture. County towns need halls for studying revolutionary ideas, schools, hospitals, cinemas and other cultural establishments and service facilities. The urban construction corps should be retained and employed to build schools and hospitals in the counties, using money provided out of the local budget, so that the development of the counties is well balanced.

The rural communities have a great deal of building to do—threshing-floors, animal sheds, nurseries, houses and so on. That is why the rural construction corps should also be maintained at their present strength.

Technical guidance for the urban and rural construction corps should be given by the General Bureau of Local Construction and

Building Materials. But this general bureau has no authority to break up or merge these corps at its own discretion. There should be no instance of merging these corps or breaking them up without due consideration.

Districts that lie within cities also need their own construction corps. Such corps will mean that the chief secretaries of district Party committees and the chairmen of district people's committees can build service facilities for the area and manage the affairs of their districts properly. It will be impossible, however, to form district construction corps at once because of the shortage of manpower. The districts which have such corps now should keep them intact, and those without them will have to wait until the strain on manpower is eased.

Next, we must place the design institutions under unified control and make designing specialized.

At present, the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council have their own construction design companies, but they neglect to give them proper guidance and so design work for construction is done randomly. Because they show no interest in the design companies, the work of the designers is careless.

In order to improve guidance for the construction design companies so that they produce good designs, the design institutions must be coordinated under a State General Bureau of Construction Designing which will be under the direct control of the Administration Council and all the construction design companies of the commissions and ministries must be subordinated to the general bureau.

If the design institutions are coordinated in this manner, it will not only ensure that guidance of design work is coordinated, but also facilitate the rational use of computers and other design equipment. At present, design companies have their own equipment and they alone use it, so that the equipment is not put to effective use. If the State General Bureau of Construction Designing keeps all the design equipment under its unified control and ensures that it is used rationally, one computer will be able to perform the calculations for many different design companies.

The State General Bureau of Construction Designing must be subordinated neither to the Ministry of Construction nor to the State Construction Commission. If it is subordinated to the Ministry of Construction, the ministry may try to persuade it to produce simple construction designs. If it is subordinated to the State Construction Commission, the commission may not be fair in its assessment of designs and buildings.

The State Construction Commission is an institution which conducts the final examination and inspection of designs and buildings. It can be likened to a court of justice or to a prosecutor's office. It functions like a court of justice with regard to designs and like a prosecutor's office with regard to buildings. The State Construction Commission has to be fair because it examines and inspects whether designs are accurate or not, and whether or not structures have been built exactly as designed.

The State General Bureau of Construction Designing must have under its authority the metallurgical works design company, the chemical works design company and other companies that specialize in design work for different sectors and must also deal with the orders for designs from commissions and ministries. If any of these commissions and ministries plans to have a factory built, it must order the design from the State General Bureau of Construction Designing. When ordering the design, the client should give the general bureau technical data which must include the size of the building to be erected, the places where machines and equipment are to be installed and so on, the deadline by which the design must be produced and the price and then draw up the contract with the general bureau. The general bureau must ensure that the design accords with the client's technical data and discuss the design with the client and the builder and then commit it to deliberation by the State Construction Commission, which in turn must examine whether the design is perfect before submitting it to the Administration Council for approval. The approved design must be handed over to the builder for execution. This procedure will ensure that the design companies produce good designs and keep design work

at least one year in advance of site operations.

Previously this procedure for designing was observed, so that there was no confusion about construction. I established this system a long time ago, but the officials have abandoned it and are now working haphazardly. Because this system is no longer in use, the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council undertake construction projects with incomplete designs and waste a great deal of materials and labour in order to correct faulty structures which in turn means that construction is not finished on time.

Once the State General Bureau of Construction Designing has been set up, the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council must turn over their construction design companies and design forces to the general bureau and in this way the construction designers who are dispersed throughout the different sectors of industry will be concentrated under the State General Bureau of Construction Designing. The commissions and ministries of the Administration Council should retain only those design forces which are needed to improve their factories and other enterprises and to maintain and repair them, to compile the technical data needed for the designs that have to be ordered from the State General Bureau of Construction Designing, and to examine the designs produced on order.

The State General Bureau of Construction Designing must be run so that it balances its own budget. After finishing the designs ordered by the commissions and ministries, the State General Bureau of Construction Designing must receive payment for the designs and only then hand them over. If it aims to balance its own income and expenditure, the sense of responsibility of the design companies and designers will be higher and they will play their role better and produce high-quality designs promptly.

The design institutions' equipment will have to be modernized. Modern design equipment is essential for quick and efficient designing. It will also mean that a great deal of manpower is saved. We must import computers for the design institutions and produce a variety of other modern equipment for them.

Furthermore, the Ministry of Construction must develop its own centres for producing and repairing building materials and equipment.

It must do this so that it can undertake construction on a large scale during the new long-term plan.

Of course, the Ministry of Construction does not need many large machine factories for the serial production of building machines. If it has large machine factories and concentrates on the production of machinery, this may affect capital construction. The Ministry of Construction must obtain large lorries, bulldozers and other serially-produced building machines from the relevant specialized machine factories.

The Ministry of Construction needs a large machine factory to produce small building machines and materials for itself. At present, however, it does not have a large machine factory. It is empty-handed, so to speak. In such circumstances, it cannot produce even simple building equipment for itself, but depends on the Ministry of the Machine Industry for it. The latter is in no position to supply all that is demanded of it. As I said during my last consultation with the officials of the machine industry, during the new Seven-Year Plan the Ministry of the Machine Industry should only manufacture custom-built equipment and undertake serial production, and the commissions and ministries will have to take steps to produce the simple machinery and equipment they need themselves.

It would be a good idea to turn the March 30 Factory over to the Ministry of Construction so that the ministry can produce the building machinery and materials it needs and repair its own equipment. At present, the March 30 Factory is under the control of the Mining Industry Commission. Turning this factory over to the Ministry of Construction will not mean that the production of mining equipment is seriously affected. If it organizes the work properly, the Mining Industry Commission will be able to cover the loss of products which will result from the transfer of the March 30 Factory, because it has many other large machine factories.

With the March 30 Factory, where there are quite a few good machines, at its disposal, the Ministry of Construction will be able to

produce the construction machines it needs when it wants them. The Administration Council must conduct a study into the machines this factory can make and give it detailed production assignments.

The Ministry of Construction needs factories that are capable of rolling and drawing steel and producing and repairing welding machinery as well as a small welding-rod factory.

The repair and power supply shops at the existing construction companies must be improved and extended, so that these workshops can produce a variety of simple building machines, repair machinery and produce spare parts.

The Administration Council must take measures to provide the Ministry of Construction with factories to produce the equipment and materials it needs and to improve and extend the repair and power supply shops at the construction companies.

To proceed, the provinces must develop reliable local factories for producing building materials.

If they are to stand on their own feet and undertake construction on a large scale, the provinces must have their own factories to produce building materials. The population of many of our provinces is two million or over. Without developing their own building-materials factories these large provinces will be unable to manage their own economies and ensure the satisfactory construction of public buildings and houses.

At present the construction of these buildings is being held up because of the shortage of certain kinds of wires, pipes and fixtures. In some places the finishing touches to buildings are not being applied, although all the walls have been erected; this is because of a lack of such minor items as wires and pipes. Nowadays, unlike in the past, a large quantity of different wires, pipes and fittings are needed in the construction of houses because we are building modern, multistorey houses that are provided with running water, central heating and sanitary facilities. Provinces must not think that the state will provide them with even the minor building materials needed for houses, schools, hospitals and other public buildings. So, if they are to

undertake the construction of a large number of such buildings, the provinces must develop reliable local building-materials factories and produce plenty of wires, pipes and fittings. If they develop their own building-materials factories, they will be able to succeed in building urban and rural communities. If not, they will be unable to build anything.

Every province now has its own steelworks. Their capacity is not large, but their contribution is significant. In the same way as they built steelworks in the past, the provinces must build many factories to produce wires, pipes, fittings and various other building materials. In particular, Pyongyang and the major provinces with a large population, such as North and South Phyongan Provinces and North and South Hamgyong Provinces, must develop good building-materials factories.

The provinces must build factories for producing wire. At present, there is only one such factory in our country, so the whole country is dependent on it. If the wires produced by the March 26 Factory are supplied to the major sectors of the national economy, nothing will remain for the provinces to use in the construction of houses and public buildings. That is why the provinces must build wire factories at once and produce a variety of wires to meet their own needs. If they set up small wire-drawing machines, they will be able to produce and use copper wires, simply by collecting scrap copper. It is not difficult to make a copper-wire drawing machine.

The provinces must also build factories to produce different kinds of pipes.

If they are to build modern houses and public buildings, they will need large quantities and different kinds of pipes. Pipes are needed for waterworks, sewers, heating systems and also for gutters.

In order to supply sufficient of the pipes that are needed for urban construction, the provinces must also build welded-pipe factories. Drawn pipes must always be used in boilers because they have to withstand high pressures, but welded pipes will serve for water and heating systems because they are not subjected to such high pressures. Nowadays, it is a general trend to use welded pipes rather than drawn

pipes in houses and public buildings. Therefore, the provinces must build factories to mass-produce welded pipes. If steelworks in the provinces are equipped with the appropriate machines, they will have no problem in producing welded pipes.

In addition, factories for producing earthenware pipes, PVC pipes and Hume concrete pipes must also be built. A sewer can be made of earthenware or PVC pipes. Earthenware pipes do not rust or rot, so they are not inferior to metal pipes when used in sewers. PVC pipes can also be used for sewers if they are quite thick. PVC pipes can also be used as guttering.

The provinces will also have to build factories for producing glass and sodium carbonate.

The amount of glass produced by the Nampho Glass Factory is not enough to meet the whole country's needs. In order to meet demands, each province must build a glass factory and produce its own glass.

Because there is plenty of sand suitable for making glass in our country, we can build all the glass factories we need. Research into the fireproof bricks that are needed by glass factories must be completed quickly so that high-quality fireproof bricks can be mass-produced. If good fireproof bricks are produced for the provinces, they will be able to build glass factories themselves.

The provinces must also build factories to produce metal fittings, building porcelain, electric appliances and equipment and flooring-paper and wallpaper mills themselves.

The provinces must also take measures to solve the problem of roofing materials. They now simply request roofing whenever they need it. But this problem, too, they must solve by themselves. Wooden tiles must be produced and used in those places where there is plenty of wood, slate tiles where there is plenty of slate, cement tiles where there is plenty of cement and metal sheet tiles where there is plenty of that. In addition, tile works should be built and earthenware tiles produced.

The chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and the chairmen of the provincial people's committees, provincial administrative committees and provincial rural economy committees

are responsible for their own provinces. They must, therefore, prove themselves worthy masters in the management of the economic life of their provinces and in raising the standard of living of the people.

The chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees, the chairmen of the provincial people's committees and other senior provincial officials have been given a great deal of education and acquired rich experience during their revolutionary activities. So I believe that they will be able to manage their provincial economic affairs by themselves.

If the officials in all provinces make up their minds to tackle a task, they will be perfectly able to develop their own building-materials factories themselves. In the days immediately following the armistice when the whole country had been reduced to ashes, and when not a single gramme of iron, not a single gramme of cement and not one piece of brick was available, we constructed building-materials factories and carried out construction projects. There is no reason why they cannot build local building-materials factories in the present favourable conditions where socialist industrialization has been carried out.

The chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees and the chairmen of the provincial people's committees and provincial administrative committees must hold executive committee meetings of the provincial Party committees or meetings of the provincial people's committees and take steps to produce a variety of building materials for themselves.

The provinces must also build many factories to mass-produce bicycles so that factory and office workers and farmers can go to work on them. It would be a good idea for the people living on the outskirts of Pyongyang to go to work on a bicycle, whereas those in the city centre can use the bus.

Next, we must train good building technicians.

We can only develop capital construction rapidly when we train a large number of able architects. In future these technicians must be trained by both central and local authorities and also by educational institutions. The University of Construction and Building Materials in

particular must produce a large number of able technicians.

At the moment its graduates are poorly qualified. Their ability to do welding is not good, nor do they know how to handle welding machinery. This is not the way to train technicians.

The qualifications of the graduates from the universities of technology are low because the Science and Education Department of the Party Central Committee and the Education Commission have not given proper guidance to these universities.

We must direct the universities of technology better, improve the technical education in all fields and take it to a higher level.

The Education Commission must give efficient guidance to the University of Construction and Building Materials and ensure that a large number of able construction technicians are trained. One thing that must be done in particular is for the officials of the Education Commission to visit this university and discuss the measures needed to bring about a great improvement in welding techniques and see that a larger number of welding technicians are produced.

The construction sector must also train many women technicians.

The construction sector does not necessarily require only male technicians. There will be no harm even if women make up a large proportion of construction technicians. Women will make good designers because they are deft. We are short of male labour and this is why it is of great importance to train a large number of women technicians. There are nurseries and kindergartens throughout the country, so women can work anywhere, free from any worries. From now onwards approximately half the students admitted by the University of Construction and Building Materials must be women.

Furthermore, we must improve supply services for the building workers.

This is something that is not being done well at the moment. Work clothes, footwear and other supplies for labour protection are not provided in sufficient quantities for the building workers who work outdoors in the winter cold. But no one is paying any attention to this matter.

It is very important to provide the construction workers with sufficient supplies.

Construction is very difficult and labour-intensive work. Construction workers have to endure a great deal of hardship, more than anyone else, because they work outdoors, in the wind and rain and even in the snow. If the supply services for them are unsatisfactory, they will not take a great deal of pride in being builders. If things come to this pass, construction work will not be successful. The Party must, therefore, pay attention to the supply services for the building workers.

Sufficient shoes, rubber boots, raincoats and other labour-protection goods should be provided for the building workers. In particular, sufficient winter clothing, winter caps, winter shoes, gloves and similar items must be supplied to the builders who work outdoors in the severe winter cold. If they are not supplied with these things, they will not be able to work in the cold. No amount of political work will have any effect on people who are shivering with cold. We must improve the supply of labour-protection goods for them, bearing in mind that, if these things are not supplied for the builders who work outdoors in the winter, the efficiency of their work will decline.

Construction workers must also be supplied with sufficient cooking oil, vegetables, fish and other kinds of non-staple food.

The recent meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee adopted measures for solving the problem of cooking oil, so the supply of cooking oil will improve from next year. If we organize the work properly, we can also increase the production of vegetables. But adequate cooking oil and vegetables will not be supplied to the building workers unless the chief secretaries of the provincial and county Party committees pay attention to this matter.

Because the Party organizations of the construction companies will be functioning directly under the Party Committee of the Ministry of Construction from now onwards, the chief secretaries of the provincial and county Party committees may become self-centred and lose interest in supplying non-staple food to the construction workers. On no account must they do this. They must pay close attention to this

matter although the Party organizations of the construction companies do not belong to provincial or county Party committees. The senior officials of the provincial Party committees in particular must show greater concern for the supply of non-staple food for the building workers and keep themselves informed of the situation.

When I make a tour of on-the-spot guidance of People's Army units I visit their mess halls first to see what the soldiers are eating. Nowadays, however, our officials who make an inspection tour of factories and other enterprises only visit the managers' offices where they hold consultations before returning home, instead of visiting the men's dining-halls. This is wrong. Cadres must visit the men's dining-halls every now and then in order to see what they are eating and help them to solve any problems that may have arisen in the supply services.

The provincial Party organizations must see to it that not only the construction workers but also the men of the extractive industries, metallurgical industry and rail transport sector are supplied with adequate amounts of cooking oil, vegetables and other types of non-staple food.

The construction industry must make fresh innovations in its work after this meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee. I will give them strong support, so I hope they will brace themselves and do a fine job in pressing ahead with construction.

ON FURTHER DEVELOPING THE ENGINEERING INDUSTRY

**Speech Delivered at the National Meeting
of Activists in the Engineering Industry**

August 20, 1977

Comrades,

On behalf of the Party Central Committee and the Government of the Republic and on my own behalf, I would first like to warmly congratulate you all on being present at this meeting of engineering activists.

At this national meeting, we have analysed and reviewed all the achievements and shortcomings of the engineering industry, and discussed how this industry can be developed further over the period of the new long-term plan. This national meeting of engineering activists marks a turning point in the technical revolution and in laying solid foundations for fulfilling the new Seven-Year Plan and bringing about an upswing in socialist economic construction as a whole.

The engineering industry is the nucleus of heavy industry and technical progress is based on it.

The development of engineering is the only way to ensure that the growth of heavy industry is given priority and that all branches of the national economy, including light industry and agriculture, progress rapidly and through this the material and cultural standard of living of the people will be steadily improved. The technical revolution is a revolution of machinery. Machinery is the decisive factor in freeing

people from hard labour, and the development of the productive forces, too, is achieved by producing better machinery. In the final analysis, the success of the technical revolution depends on the rapid development of the engineering industry so that it can supply sufficient modern machinery.

Considering the position and importance of the engineering industry in the development of the national economy, our Party has continued to put great efforts into developing it.

We built our engineering industry from nothing after liberation. The Japanese imperialists did not build even a small machine factory in our country, for they wanted to keep our people in colonial darkness for ever so that they could plunder our rich supply of natural resources. One consequence of Japanese colonial rule was that, after liberation, we were in no position to make even a single small farm implement ourselves. In truth it could be said that we built our engineering industry from nothing.

After liberation we experienced many difficulties in developing an engineering industry. We had no material and technical foundations for developing an engineering industry, nor did we have materials and funds. Moreover, we had few able scientists and technicians.

However, because our heroic working class under the wise leadership of our Party worked devotedly in the great revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, we overcame all manner of difficulties and built a powerful engineering industry of our own in the shortest time ever known in history.

Today our engineering industry is proving its merits to the full in the development of our country's economy and the fulfilment of the technical revolution.

Our country, where, only a short time ago, the words machine tool were not even known, now produces enough different machine tools to meet our domestic needs and, moreover, exports some abroad. We even have no difficulty in manufacturing such large machines as 3,000-ton and 6,000-ton power presses.

We also produce lorries able to carry 2.5 tons, 5 tons, 10 tons, 25

tons and 100 tons as well as *Chungsong*, *Jonjin*, *Chollima*, and *Phungnyon* tractors in tens of thousands every year. In this way our people are being freed from heavy labour.

Today we manufacture for ourselves 4,200-hp electric locomotives and various types of diesel locomotive, goods, tanker and refrigeration wagons and passenger carriages in large numbers, and produce 200-hp, 400-hp, 1,000-hp and 2,500-hp engines that are used in building a variety of ships, both large and small. Thus, our engineering industry is now providing the decisive guarantee for satisfying our national economy's growing transport needs.

We also build 0.5, 1 and 4-cubic-metre capacity excavators and can produce even larger ones, besides which we make 300-hp bulldozers as well as medium- and small-sized ones.

Previously we were unable to produce efficient transformers, so we had to import them, and it used to take several years for them to reach us from abroad. Today, however, we can easily make 100,000-kva transformers, to say nothing of smaller ones, and produce electric motors, compressors, refrigerators and various types of pump for our own use.

It would take all day and longer to mention all the machines we are now making.

Today we make our own large blast furnaces, coking ovens, revolving furnaces, sintering ovens, electric furnaces, rolling mills and generating equipment; and we produce the machines and equipment needed for every sector of our economy including mining, building materials, light industries, fisheries, agriculture, construction and transport. We have reached the advanced level of being able to produce all the machines and equipment needed when building modern factories.

All the success achieved so far in engineering is a source of honour and pride for our people. We feel great national pride and self-respect because we have created the powerful engineering industry we have today from nothing in the shortest time ever known in history. Indeed, the history of development of our engineering industry is glorious and shining; it is truly a story of heroism. Now that we have created this powerful engineering industry for ourselves through our own hard toil,

we can feel more optimistic about the future and advance ever more confidently towards greater success.

On behalf of the Party Central Committee and the Government of the Republic and on my own behalf, I would like to extend warm thanks to all the workers, technicians, staff and management of the engineering industry who have created a powerful engineering industry in our country, displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, those who have demonstrated the great strength of our socialist industrial state to the whole world.

Comrades,

The engineering industry has achieved a great deal in recent years. But we have still more to do in the future, even more than we have done so far.

Our engineering industry is still not up to the level of the advanced nations and is not yet playing its part in full as the heart of industry.

Next year we will embark on the new Seven-Year Plan. The Seven-Year Plan is a gigantic project for reaching new and greater heights in building socialism in our country. This gigantic project presents the engineering industry with difficult yet honourable tasks. It is for the very reason that the engineering industry will play such an important part in the Seven-Year Plan that we have called this national meeting of engineering activists before a full debate of the new long-term plan. Achieving the ambitious targets of the new plan will depend largely on how well the engineering industry does its work.

The workers, technicians and all the officials of the engineering industry must not rest on their laurels; they must continue to innovate and advance like Chollima by displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance to a greater extent and thus develop our engineering industry and take it to a higher level. In this way they will produce sufficient machinery and equipment for all branches of the national economy and make an active contribution to fulfilling the Seven-Year Plan.

Above all else, we should continue to direct great efforts towards the production of machine tools.

Machine tools are the basic means of production for making every

other type of machinery and equipment, so unless we increase the output of machine tools we will never strengthen the bases of the engineering industry and produce enough machinery and equipment for all our other industries.

Today the demand for machine tools is increasing daily. Machine tools will be needed to build new factories during the Seven-Year Plan, to expand existing factories and to build a base for producing machine parts in every county. Unless the engineering industry produces a lot of machine tools for the other industries, it will not be possible to mechanize and automate production processes and eliminate heavy manual labour.

In the future we need to build single-purpose equipment factories throughout the country. That is the only way for many of our industries to produce single-purpose equipment for themselves and so increase output. If we set up a factory to make single-purpose equipment for light industry in every province so that they can make a variety of single-purpose equipment for themselves for the consumer-goods industries, there will be a great increase in the output of consumer goods. In order to set up single-purpose equipment factories, the engineering industry will have to produce sufficient small- and medium-sized machine tools.

Plenty of machine tools are needed to reinforce the repair and power supply shops at the existing factories and other enterprises. If we produce plenty of machine tools and equip the repair and power supply shops at factories and other enterprises properly, they will have sufficient stocks of machine parts and will be able to repair their machinery and equipment promptly, and also make single-purpose and a variety of other equipment for themselves and thus increase production capacity.

At present machine tools are wanted by all industries—mining, light industry, fisheries, agriculture, building, transport and so on. Therefore, the engineering industry must radically increase the output of machine tools to satisfy the demands of these various industries.

To meet the fast-growing demands for machine tools during the

Seven-Year Plan, production capacity should be significantly increased.

We are well able to increase that capacity. The foundations we have built for the engineering industry are very strong and we have a great deal of experience in making large numbers of machine tools through the let-each-machine-tool-make-more movement which was conducted under the guidance of our Party.

The engineering industry should pay special attention to expanding production capacity at our machine-tool factories. These factories should produce more machine tools with the materials they have. To do so, automation and pressing should be introduced through improving the technology; also the repair and maintenance of the equipment should be improved.

At the same time, more machine-tool production bases should be established.

In particular, immediate steps should be taken in the engineering industry to increase the production of large machine tools.

For the successful implementation of the new Seven-Year Plan, we should produce plenty of large machines for all branches of the national economy. To do this we shall have to build solid bases that produce large machine tools. The workers in the engineering industry should prepare buildings and facilities quickly to house installations for producing large machine tools and procure the designs, tools and jigs they need for producing them in advance. Then, production can start as soon as the factories are built.

As well as large machine tools, we should also make plenty of general- and special-purpose machine tools.

Another important task facing the engineering industry is to produce more machinery and equipment for the mining industry.

It is the consistent policy of our Party to keep mining well in advance of the manufacturing industries; giving priority to the mining industry to maintain sufficient supplies of raw materials and fuel is the only way to put production in the manufacturing industries onto a steady basis and to develop all branches of the national economy rapidly.

One of the most serious shortcomings revealed in economic work

during the Six-Year Plan was a failure to keep the mining industry well in advance of the manufacturing industries. In the period of the Six-Year Plan a large number of factories, including huge metallurgical works, were built, but they are not operating at full capacity because raw material and fuel supplies are inadequate.

Our country has inexhaustible mineral resources including iron ore and coal. In order to obtain these mineral resources, the Party's policy for equipping the mining industry with large, modern and high-speed machinery should be fully implemented. Whether this can be done or not depends on the engineering industry producing and supplying enough of the machinery that is needed for the purpose.

The engineering industry should supply the mines with more machinery and equipment such as drills, sinker drills, loaders, electric cars, conveyor-belts and chain conveyors, and with plenty of heavy-duty bulldozers, excavators, lorries, sinker drills, winches, and ore-dressing equipment, including crushers.

Over the period of the new Seven-Year Plan, we should make modern, heavy-duty mining equipment for our own use by displaying the great revolutionary spirit of self-reliance. By thinking and working boldly, the personnel in the engineering industry should produce more large machinery and equipment for the mines, so that the Party's policy for keeping the mining industry well in advance of the manufacturing industries can be implemented to the full.

Another important task confronting the engineering industry during the Seven-Year Plan is to produce and supply more machinery and equipment for developing transport.

Transport is in the forefront of the national economy and provides an important link between production and consumption. The development of transport is essential for taking fuel, raw materials and other supplies to the factories promptly and for transporting the products to the points of consumption so they can be used effectively. Without developing transport, the rapid development of our national economy and a more plentiful and modern life for the people cannot be envisaged.

Over this period of the Seven-Year Plan in particular, the demands

on transport by many industries will greatly increase. Without satisfying these rapidly-growing demands by developing transport, the ambitious targets of the Seven-Year Plan cannot be achieved.

In view of the fact that we have already laid firm material foundations for accelerating the development of transport, it is possible to satisfy the daily-increasing demands on transport if only our personnel display great determination in their work.

Expanding the capacity of the railways is of great importance in meeting these demands. The railways are the most efficient branch of transport; they carry large quantities of goods quickly at a time, over long distances.

The engineering industry should increase the output of machinery and equipment, including the electric locomotives needed in electrifying the railways, diesel locomotives, heavy-duty goods wagons and various specialized goods wagons so that the capacity of the railways can be radically increased.

The shipbuilding industry should be developed so that many large cargo ships can be built.

Our country is bordered on three sides by the sea, so marine transport is of great importance both in easing the strain on transport and in increasing our foreign trade.

We are going to develop foreign trade a great deal during the Seven-Year Plan. Since countries differ from one another in their natural and economic conditions and in the variety of raw materials and goods they produce, whatever is vital to a country and is needed in large quantities should be produced domestically while that which is needed in small quantities or things that are in short supply should be acquired through trade with foreign countries, on the principle of satisfying one another's needs.

But our shortage of large cargo ships has left us unable to develop foreign trade any further. Of course, we can trade with the socialist countries by using the railways. But we cannot confine our foreign trade to socialist countries. We should not only develop trade with socialist countries, but also with the newly independent countries of

Asia, Africa and Latin America and with capitalist countries on the principles of complete equality and mutual benefit.

We have now established very good relations with many countries of Asia and Africa, including Iraq, Syria and Algeria where there is plenty of crude oil, and many of the developing countries are ready to sell us the industrial raw materials we need, including salt and apatite ore. This being the situation, we should build many large cargo ships so that we can conduct large-scale barter trade with the countries of the third world, offering them a great deal of technical assistance.

During the Seven-Year Plan, the engineering industry must supply a wide range of material and technical resources including large-scale equipment and modern welding equipment for the shipyards, so that they can build different types of fishing boats and 20,000-ton, 50,000-ton and 100,000-ton cargo ships.

Further, the engineering industry should make vigorous efforts to increase the production of custom-built equipment.

Over the period of the new Seven-Year Plan we are going to build many power stations, metallurgical works, cement and chemical factories. To build such factories and other enterprises we have to produce a tremendous amount of equipment to order. The engineering industry should build up reliable bases to produce equipment to order and make all this equipment for industry by itself.

In the first place, great efforts should be put into producing the generating equipment needed by the new power stations.

In order to produce turbines and generators we should concentrate on completing the Taaen Heavy Machine Factory as soon as possible.

We should make immediate preparations, such as forming a technical staff to manage the factory.

The construction of the Taaen Heavy Machine Factory is progressing according to plan, and most of the equipment is ready. Therefore, we should finish it quickly, so that it can produce turbines and generators of a capacity up to 100,000 kva.

We should also make our own rolling equipment, including blooming mills.

It is only when we make our own rolling equipment that we can improve the standard and variety of steel and satisfy the needs of the engineering and building industries.

There is no mystery about making a rolling mill. We can make one quite easily if we set our minds to it. Even right after the armistice when the country was devastated and everything was in short supply, we made rolling mills and produced rolled steel. So why should we be unable to make a rolling mill today, when a powerful engineering industry has been created? The engineering workers and technicians should get down to the job and make modern rolling-mills for the metalworks so that they can make innovations in the production of rolled steel.

The engineering industry should also produce chemical equipment in large quantities.

We need to develop the chemical industry—this is indeed important for consolidating the economic independence of the country and raising the standard of living of the people. It is only with a developed chemical industry that it is possible to produce chemically enough of the raw materials, that are scarce or unavailable in our country and to produce chemical fertilizer and agricultural chemicals in sufficient quantities to accelerate the introduction of chemical methods into farming and to produce and supply all the different goods that the people need daily.

Because of the importance of the chemical industry, our Party has always directed great efforts towards its development. We shall continue with this policy in the Seven-Year Plan and build synthetic rubber, polyvinyl chloride, sal soda, plasticizer, medicinal drugs, weed killer and agricultural chemicals factories, as well as many small- and medium-sized chemical works.

Not long ago, the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee decided to start building a factory for producing synthetic rubber next year. Our needs for synthetic rubber are great, but its current price is 1,000 pounds sterling per ton on the international market. Therefore, we would need a great deal of foreign currency to

buy all the synthetic rubber we want from abroad. Over the period of the Seven-Year Plan we should build a factory to produce our own synthetic rubber.

There is no problem about producing chemical equipment. All that is needed is to make compressors, synthesis towers, pumps, semiconductor rectifiers, electric motors, pipes and the like and produce the necessary welding equipment. The engineering industry should produce and supply good equipment that is needed for building chemical factories as soon as possible, thereby enabling the chemical industry to carry out the huge tasks that face it during the period of the Seven-Year Plan.

In order for the engineering industry to increase the production of custom-built equipment it must expand existing mechanical engineering factories and build new ones. At present the equipment ordered by the various industries is produced mainly by the Ryongsong Machine Factory, but this factory alone cannot meet the rapidly increasing demands. Therefore, while this factory is improved materially and technically, to increase the production of custom-built equipment, the Pukjung Machine Factory, the Ragwon Machine Factory, the Taeon Electric Machinery Plant and the May 10 Factory should be expanded and equipped to produce custom pieces.

Large numbers of lorries and tractors should also be produced.

Lorries are needed everywhere—at the mines, on building sites, in the rural areas and so on. The engineering industry must never fail to produce lorries of various types—large and small—such as the *Konsol* model for example, on a planned basis and supply them to the different sectors of the national economy.

Large quantities of the machinery needed for mechanizing farm work, including tractors and rice harvesters, should be produced.

One of the most important tasks facing the engineering industry at present is to make a decisive improvement to the quality of what it produces.

An improvement in the quality of products is of great importance in consolidating the economic foundations of our country, accelerating

our economic development and satisfying more fully the material and cultural needs of our people. It has a big influence, too, on increasing our country's authority and prestige abroad.

We built our engineering industry from nothing after liberation and have developed it very rapidly, so the quality of the machinery and equipment we produce is not yet very high. However, if we show real determination, we can improve the quality markedly by drawing on the foundations of the engineering industry already established and the experience we have accumulated. By making great efforts to improve quality, all the engineering workers and technicians will, in the near future, bring our machinery and equipment up to the level of the advanced countries.

For the engineering industry to manufacture products of a better quality, the workers and technicians will need to improve the levels of their technical knowledge and skill.

However well engineering factories are equipped with modern machinery, it is impossible to improve the quality of the products if the qualifications of those who use the machines are low. The technical qualifications of all engineering workers and technicians should be significantly improved by more and better technical education and constant polishing of their practical skills.

In order to improve the quality of the products from the engineering industry, design work should be specialized and brought up to date.

A good design is a prerequisite for a product of higher quality. However good the technical qualifications of the workers making the products may be, good products cannot be made from poor designs.

Officials are prone to departmentalism and keep design workers at every mechanical engineering factory to produce their own designs. This will not do. Whilst it is true that mechanical engineering factories have, up until now, produced many good machines from their own designs, the demand for a rapid improvement in quality, however, cannot be met satisfactorily by such a method.

Concentrating the design workers, introducing specialization into design work and bringing it up to date are indispensable for producing

good designs through a more rational use of these workers and also for quickly improving the skills of the designers.

Specialized design agencies should be set up in the engineering industry by bringing together designers that have been dispersed.

We have a large army of intellectuals, one million strong, all nurtured by the Party. If we do some fine organizational work to reappoint the design workers that are scattered around the factories and other enterprises and put the right person in the right position, we can introduce design specialization without any difficulty.

In the future, the engineering industry should bring together the designers and form specialized agencies with the right people to design engines, ships and chemical equipment. Machine tools, too, must not be designed in separate places. A specialized machine-tool design agency should be set up to work out standard designs for a variety of machine tools and make them available to every machine-tool factory.

At the same time as making design work specialized, it should also be brought up to date.

One important aspect of bringing design work up to date is to automate computation. Designing machinery involves a lot of complex calculations. As long as these complex calculations are done using old-fashioned methods, it is impossible to produce designs quickly or improve their quality. Therefore, computers should be provided for the design agencies so that calculations can be done automatically.

The design institutions should also be equipped with sufficient instruments and tools, laboratory apparatus and the auxiliary equipment they need.

The engineering industry and those doing scientific research, should take measures to produce the equipment and instruments, including computers, that are required for bringing design work up to date. If scientists and engineers display their creative initiative, they will be fully able to make any computer, however intricate. As they will be making great efforts to produce the computers and instruments needed for design work, we should buy them what they need at once from abroad.

Thorough measures should be taken to raise the work capacity of machine tools.

Increasing the work capacity of machine tools is an essential source of additional output in the engineering industry. There are hundreds of thousands of machine tools in our country and if we can only manage to increase their work capacity, we shall be able to produce far more machinery than at present.

In order to increase the work capacity of the machine tools, we must make them high-speed and introduce pressing and stamp forging methods into the production of feed materials.

Introducing pressing and stamp forging methods into the engineering industry will enable us to double or treble the work capacity of our machine tools and to bring about a marked improvement to the quality of products, while saving tremendous quantities of steel.

The question of introducing the pressing and stamp forging methods in the engineering industry was first raised a long time ago, and yet, the personnel in this field have failed to implement this task. The engineering industry does have many stamping presses and, moreover, its factories and other enterprises are capable of making such presses and forges by themselves. If the cadres were to show only a little concern, the introduction of the pressing and stamp forging methods would be perfectly feasible.

Even now a bold campaign should still be conducted for using stamping presses and forges in the engineering industry.

In particular, the pressing and stamp forging methods should be actively introduced in those engineering factories that are engaged in serial production.

If machine-building plants are to introduce the pressing and stamp forging methods, it is important to make many stamping presses and forges and, at the same time, to make more use of them. Some machine-building plants now have many presses and stamping forges, but fail to make full use of them. All machine-building factories should increase their use of this equipment to the maximum and in this way carry out the Party's policy of switching over to the pressing and stamp forging methods.

Casting should be centralized, specialized and modernized.

This is essential for saving manpower and materials and making better use of equipment and improving both the technical skills of the workers and the quality of the castings. Now every machine-building factory has its own foundry, which means they are underused and the quality of castings is poor in spite of a great deal of materials and manpower being used. It is virtually a crime against the Party, the state and the people to have a foundry at every machine-building factory and waste such large quantities of materials and manpower.

It was a long time ago that the Party instructed the officials in this field to centralize, specialize and modernize casting. If the personnel in the engineering industry had done as the Party instructed, they would have made a noticeable improvement to the quality of the castings and saved a great deal of manpower and materials and in this way they could have produced more goods. Nevertheless, even now the design workers include a foundry in the blueprint for every new engineering factory, and the institution that checks the designs approves them.

Some officials merely proclaim the slogan for arming themselves with the Party's Juche idea, while their actual behaviour is a far cry from the Party's idea. They still lack the spirit to carry out the Party's instructions without question and with absolute faith, displaying the revolutionary spirit.

In the future, casting bases in the engineering industry should be modernized on a regional basis so as to specialize the production of castings and supply them to all the machine-building works.

When we say the production of castings should be specialized, we do not mean that all existing factory foundries should be closed down immediately. These foundries should be equipped properly, brought up to date and put to the best possible use. In particular, the foundries at large factories should be modernized so that they can turn out plenty of castings for their own use and also supply them to other factories in the neighbourhood.

If the staff organize the work well, adopting a proprietorial attitude, and fit out these foundries properly along modern lines, it should be

possible to satisfy nearly all our needs for castings without the need to build new foundries.

The workers of the engineering industry must rid themselves completely of their departmental and provincial outlooks. They must centralize, specialize and modernize castings production and organize cooperative production well, so that supplies of castings for the machine-building factories are smooth.

Advanced methods should be introduced into the production of castings. This is essential for improving quality, increasing labour productivity and introducing much more modern production practices.

Factories under the Second Economy Commission have introduced advanced methods into the production of castings and in this way they have improved the quality of their products remarkably. Factories under the Ministry of the Machine Industry, too, should work hard to improve quality by widely introducing advanced casting methods.

As castings production becomes centralized, specialized and modernized, specialization should be introduced in plating, too. In future, machine-building factories should not set up their own plating shops; good regional centres should be established to make plating specialized.

An improvement in welding techniques is a very important aspect of developing the engineering industry. We can say that welding is fundamental to both engineering and building. Welding is a key factor in construction and sheet metalworking. In fact, it could well be said that now is the era of welding. Considering that many industrial establishments are to be built during the new Seven-Year Plan, an improvement in welding, by improving welding techniques, is all the more important.

In the past the officials in the field have failed to take the appropriate steps to improve welding techniques. As a result, welding in our country has not yet emerged from its state of backwardness. At present our welders are not very skilful and the quality of the machines, devices and materials used in welding is also poor. The present standard of welding will not see us through the enormous tasks

envisaged in the new Seven-Year Plan.

In order to improve the standard of welding it is necessary first to train a large number of able welders. In order to raise the welders' technical qualifications, welding techniques must be taught properly to the students at the university of mechanical engineering and other institutions of higher education where industrial technology is taught.

But the students at these institutions are not taught proper welding techniques. So graduate engineers from these institutions are not well versed in welding techniques. The task facing education is to train more welding technicians by improving instruction in this field at these educational institutions.

In order to improve welding techniques not only is it necessary to train many welding technicians, but also more good-quality machines and devices and materials for welding must be produced and supplied.

Good-quality welding machinery, welding rods and devices to check the welds should be produced and supplied in sufficient quantities. However high the standard of welding may be, the quality of the welds will never be improved if the welding machines and rods are of poor quality. Welding machines should be produced serially and welding-rod factories should be established in many places to turn out a wide range and large quantity of quality welding rods.

Factories exclusively for producing oxygen bottles should be established to turn them out in quantity.

There should be greater precision in vehicle production to save as much petrol as possible.

In our country the number of vehicles such as cars and tractors is incomparably greater than before, but we do not produce our own oil as yet. Therefore, it is particularly important to economize in petrol.

But the precision of the injection nozzles and fuel pumps produced in our country is low, which leads to a great deal of waste.

The engineering industry must conduct more research into closer tolerances in vehicles so that fuel can be saved.

Recently the workers and technicians at the Tokchon Motor Parts Factory made their own thin-wall tubes displaying the revolutionary

spirit of self-reliance. This was a great service to the country. Thin-wall tubes are needed very much by every motor works, so, naturally, the motor works should have been producing them. However, they did not and it was the workers and technicians of the motor parts factory who did. They have achieved something great.

At present the spirit and fighting enthusiasm of our working class is running very high. They have the single thought to advance, advance, fight and advance. Yet, the management has failed to mobilize their efforts properly.

The workers of the engineering industry should display the true revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and work hard to create finer tolerances in vehicle production. They should increase the precision of our injection nozzles and fuel pumps to the world standard to achieve a higher combustion rate for maximum fuel economy.

Reliable bases for the production of feed materials should be established.

At present many engineering factories cannot produce finished goods because of a shortage of feed materials. But metalworks are in no position to produce every type of feed material for the machine-building factories. Therefore, large machine-building factories should set up good bases to produce their own feed materials.

An active campaign should be launched to automate and modernize engineering production processes.

It is only when production processes in the engineering industry are automated and modernized that the precision of the machinery and equipment can be guaranteed and a great deal produced with only a small use of labour.

Although considerable success has been achieved in semi-automating and automating production processes through making great effort in the technical revolution in the engineering industry over the past years, this is still no more than a beginning.

In the future automated assembly lines should be introduced widely in the engineering industry and programmed automatic lathes and many other efficient automatic machines and automation devices

should be developed and produced. At the same time, factories for producing automation elements, gauges and instruments should be established under a long-term plan, and electron tubes, semiconductor devices and various other automation elements, gauges and instruments should be produced in large quantities.

The discipline that regulates cooperative production should be strictly enforced in the engineering industry.

It is only when this discipline is maintained that production can advance very steadily.

At present some industrial establishments do not deliver cooperative products on time, with the result that the motor vehicle and tractor factories cannot send out their products from the production lines because of a lack of tyres, and other factories their goods because they have no bearings or gauges.

In future all engineering factories should strictly observe the discipline of always making and delivering cooperative products first, and the Party organizations should offer strict guidance and control so that discipline is observed without question in cooperative production.

Party organizations should play a more prominent role in the fulfilment of the enormous tasks that face the engineering industry.

The Party organizations in the engineering industry should step up the ideological education of the workers and their ideological struggle, so that outdated and backward ideas that prevail among them, such as the worship of major powers, conservatism, fear of technology and empiricism, will be completely eliminated.

In the process of carrying out the enormous tasks that face the engineering industry, outdated and stagnant things may stand in the way of any advance. When innovations are made, outdated and backward ideas will impede them. There can be no innovation without combatting outdated and backward ideas. A person ensnared in the worship of major powers, conservatism, fear of technology and empiricism, will lose faith in his own things and make no effort at all to solve any technical problems that may arise.

All Party organizations in the field of engineering should organize

good ideological education and fight to root out all outdated ideas, including conservatism, inaction, fear of technology and empiricism, that are manifested among the workers and to make everyone show, to an even higher degree, the revolutionary spirit to advance, advance, fight and advance as a master.

In particular, the workers in the engineering industry should rid themselves of their tendency to worship major powers.

If he is infected by the worship of major powers, a man will soon become an idiot.

Some time ago our officials insisted that bearings be bought from other countries on the plea that the Youth Chemical Complex could not operate properly because of a lack of bearings. So, I asked the people at the October 30 Factory if they could make the bearings the Youth Chemical Complex needed, and they said they could. The factory made the bearings and sent them to the chemical complex, and apparently these bearings, our own, are better than those from abroad.

Party organizations should see to it that all engineering workers tackle the enormous tasks that face them by holding fast to our Party's Juche idea and displaying the true revolutionary spirit of self-reliance.

The tasks confronting the engineering industry in carrying out the new Seven-Year Plan are truly honourable and worthwhile.

The Party Central Committee drew up the new long-term plan with faith in you and expects a great deal from you. You may come up against many obstacles and difficulties as you tackle the huge tasks that have been assigned to the engineering industry. But on no account must you succumb; you must break through boldly, displaying the revolutionary spirit. You should not waver or hesitate through defeatist ideas before the obstacles and difficulties that stand in the way of progress, but should continue to innovate and move ahead in the spirit of Chollima, the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance.

I am fully convinced that all the workers, engineers and staff of the engineering industry will carry out their huge tasks during the Seven-Year Plan with credit and again demonstrate the great stamina of our people to the whole world.

**TALK TO THE SECRETARY GENERAL
OF THE ITALY-KOREA
FRIENDSHIP ASSOCIATION**

September 3, 1977

You have visited our country on a number of occasions before, and now you are here again. You have worked a great deal to strengthen solidarity between the peoples of Korea and Italy. I am very grateful to you for this. I am particularly pleased that you have brought your family with you this time.

I should like to convey my greetings, through you, to all the people of Italy, the cadres of the Italy-Korea Friendship Association, the Central Committee of the Italian Communist Party and Comrade General Secretary Enrico Berlinguer.

You have told me that you have received a warm welcome from our people. It is only natural that we receive you warmly. You have offered the Korean delegations the hospitality that you would normally reserve for your brothers and other family members, whenever they visited Italy. I have been most impressed by this. I would like to express my thanks to you once again. You spare nothing for the friendship and solidarity between the peoples of Korea and Italy.

I am delighted that the Italian Communist Party and Comrade Enrico Berlinguer are adhering to independence.

Currently some people are attacking Comrade Carrillo, referring to “European communism” and such things. Needless to say, such ideas as “European communism”, “Asian communism” and “American

communism” cannot exist. Communism is universal. I think, therefore, that the phrase “European communism” is an invention of the capitalists; it is not a product of communists.

The Communist Parties of Europe, especially the Italian, French and Spanish Communist Parties which are active in developed capitalist countries, and those in many other parts of the world, are now advocating independence. This is good and just, for the destiny of the revolution in each country will be decided by the people of that country alone.

The experience gained in the revolution in one particular country cannot be imposed uniformly on the parties in all other countries.

The present age is not the same as that when Lenin formed the Comintern. At that time both Comrade Berlinguer and I were followers of Marxism-Leninism. But now our hair has turned completely grey. We have now accumulated a wealth of theories and fighting experience which enable us to carry out the revolution in our countries independently and we are working out independent revolutionary lines. We have passed through every single stage of the revolution. In the process of this we have reached the conclusion that the party in each country must conduct the revolutionary movement in conformity with the situation in that particular country.

At present the Communist Parties in Italy, France and Spain are forming a broad united front with other political parties in their countries and are developing the working-class movement, taking it to a more advanced level. This is very important. Forming a broad united front does not mean that the revolution is retrogressing, but in fact helps to advance it. That is why we strongly support the line of your Party. Our stand has already been conveyed to the Central Committee of the Italian Communist Party. Through you today, however, I should like to reiterate our views to the committee.

Our Party and the Italian Communist Party both adhere to independence. The Communist Parties’ adherence to independence represents a stand for preserving the purity of Marxism-Leninism in earnest. The point is that they achieve victory in the revolution by

developing the revolutionary movement in their own country. This must be the keystone which decides the purity of the Marxism-Leninism they are defending. Therefore, we consider that your Party's policy is correct.

No problem will ever be solved if Marxism-Leninism is applied in a dogmatic way. On its own, the October Socialist Revolution acquires great significance. As regards the fact that Lenin opened up the age of the socialist revolution, all communists speak highly of and support this unanimously. However, it is impossible to apply the experience gained 60 years ago as it is to the present revolutionary struggle in every country. Lenin put forward the revolutionary line which was appropriate to his time.

This also applies to Marx and Engels. Because they studied the issues of revolution while living in a highly developed capitalist country, they thought that the socialist revolution would begin in every country in succession and emerge victorious on a worldwide scale within a short space of time. From this, they considered that the period of transition from capitalism to communism would be short. Lenin judged that this period would be a little longer than Marx and Engels had anticipated, because he had conducted the revolution in a backward capitalist country, not in a developed one.

But the revolution is now taking place in backward countries, so the period of transition cannot be considered to be such a short time. We must not take a dogmatic view of Marxism-Leninism. This is why I delivered a lecture to our officials on the subject of the period of transition from capitalism to socialism. One should see everything in connection with the practical matters of the revolution in one's own country. The facts show that no problem can be solved when Marxism-Leninism is applied dogmatically.

At present both you and we oppose dogmatism. We are absolutely correct to do so. Because we are taking the right road we are bound to emerge victorious. For the party of each country to maintain independence and settle any issues arising in its revolution properly in accordance with the situation there, automatically means being faithful

to proletarian internationalism and to the communist cause.

We think that the friendly relations between the peoples of Korea and Italy will grow and develop in the future, based on the principle of independence.

I do not intend to speak to you today on theoretical matters at great length. I have dwelt on these matters in the sense that the solidarity between us is all the more firm because both of us solve every problem from an independent point of view.

This year good crops have been grown in our country. Food and clothing are essential for the people to survive. The problems of food and clothing are fundamental to the standard of living. Our people are free from any worries about such matters.

At present I am making preparations for the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee which will be held the day after tomorrow. I have written theses on socialist education. I intend to publish them at the forthcoming plenary meeting. Effective education of the following generations is very important once the working class has taken power. We regard this as a most important matter. After the theses on socialist education are adopted at the forthcoming plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee, I shall make sure that a copy is sent to you.

We have not yet achieved the reunification of the country. We are confronted with the task of exposing before the people of the world the reactionary nature of the south Korean puppets and the aggressive moves of the US imperialists and still the task confronts us of reunifying the country. We hope, therefore, that you will continue to support our people in their struggle for national reunification. We shall make every possible effort to achieve it.

Once again, I warmly welcome you on your visit to our country, and express my heartfelt thanks to you for stating that you would continue to strive to improve friendship and solidarity between the peoples of Korea and Italy.

ON PUBLISHING THE *THESES* *ON SOCIALIST EDUCATION*

**Speech at the 14th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central
Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea**

September 5, 1977

In connection with the presentation of the *Theses on Socialist Education* at this plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee, I would like to speak briefly about its aims.

After the working class overthrows the capitalist system and establishes the socialist system, it is, of course, important to improve the material standard of living of the people through constructing a sound socialist economy. But it is no less important to increase the people's ideological consciousness and raise their cultural and technical levels.

We should steadily increase the ideological consciousness of the working people and raise their cultural and technical levels in order to make effective use of, and manage well, the existing material and technical foundations of our country and further consolidate and develop them.

As everyone knows, all the material wealth of a society comes as a result of the creative labour of the working masses. Only when the working masses become politically conscious of their status as the masters of society and reach high cultural and technical levels can they give full scope to their creative talents and enthusiasm in the building of socialism. Without increasing their ideological consciousness and

raising their cultural and technical levels, the working people cannot play their role as the masters of society to the full. Then, socialist construction may simply stand still or even go into reverse. Therefore, after the working class has assumed power and established the socialist system, education conforming to socialist society should be given.

Even after its seizure of power, the working class has to build socialism for a long time against a capitalist background. Under such circumstances, bourgeois reactionary ideas and degenerate culture can infiltrate from outside, and internally all sorts of obsolete notions, including feudal and capitalist ones, may raise their heads. Therefore, the working-class party and state should pay particular attention to strengthening socialist education. If they do not conduct education commensurate with socialist society, but offer a motley education which is neither socialist nor capitalist, they will be unable to prevent the ideological and cultural infiltration of capitalism and the corrosive action of the surviving old ideas.

During the transition period from capitalism to socialism and communism, proper socialist education is essential for making every member of society revolutionary, working-class and communist.

Whether the working class has seized power in a developed capitalist country or a backward colonial, semi-feudal country, strengthening socialist education is always very important. The length of the transition period may differ from one country to another and be either long or short, depending on the level of development of the productive forces, but the educational work for remoulding the thinking of the people is a prominent matter in every country.

The revolutionary enthusiasm of the people runs very high when they struggle to overthrow the exploiting system and free themselves from exploitation and oppression, but it gradually declines after they have overthrown the system of exploitation and laid the material and technical foundations of the new society to a certain extent. Both the experience of those countries which carried out the socialist revolution a long time ago and our own experience of socialist construction show that the revolutionary enthusiasm of the people declines after the

socialist revolution when they are free of any worries about food, clothing and shelter.

Therefore, after the socialist system has been established, the working-class party and state should intensify educational work and further increase the revolutionary enthusiasm of every member of society.

It is 130 years since Marx published the *Communist Manifesto* in 1848, and 60 years have elapsed since the October Socialist Revolution triumphed in Russia under Lenin's leadership. Over this period great changes have taken place in the international communist movement and the liberation struggle of the oppressed. After World War II in particular the chains of capitalism fell apart and the socialist revolution triumphed in a great number of countries, and many oppressed peoples won national independence, throwing off the colonial fetters of imperialism and they are now advancing along the socialist road.

Many years have passed since Lenin advanced the theory that socialism could triumph in a single country. However, no country has ever attained communism although it is well over half a century since the victory of the socialist revolution in Russia and despite the fact that many countries are now building socialism.

In the *Communist Manifesto* Marx pointed out that the history of every society that had existed hitherto had been a history of class struggle, and advanced the theory of the continuous revolution. Even after it has seized power the working class should continue with the revolution to build socialism and communism. The continuation of the revolution urgently demands education to improve steadily the revolutionary consciousness of the people.

The most complicated and difficult task in building a socialist and communist society is to capture the ideological fortress of communism through the re-education of men. But no one has ever clarified the question of fostering men of a communist type, the question of socialist education, and its model cannot be found in any country. Since no adequate solution has been found to this question, communism has not yet been realized anywhere, although socialism

triumphed a long time ago. Communists must draw a serious lesson from this.

Today the move towards socialism is the irresistible trend of the times. The countries of the third world and most of the newly independent nations are now declaring their intention to advance along the road to socialism. True, the socialism advocated by each of them may be different—whether scientific socialism or unscientific socialism. Some people are even claiming now that their socialism is a religious socialism. But whatever kind of socialism they may claim to be adopting, they all recognize that socialism is good.

At present many of the countries that aspire to socialism, including the newly independent nations, are watching how socialism is being built in the countries that are already socialist. For this reason the socialist countries must build socialism better and find a creditable solution to the problem of education to supply a model for the other countries that aspire to socialism.

The main task in socialist education is to remould people ideologically and raise their cultural and technical levels.

Ideological remoulding, that is, eradicating the feudalist and capitalist ideas that linger in people's minds and educating and nurturing people to be ardent communist revolutionaries, is one of the most important aspects of socialist education.

Ideological remoulding requires, first of all, the strengthening of class education, so that no one is allowed to forget the distressing days of exploitation by the imperialists, landowners and capitalists, and so that everyone wages a resolute struggle against the system of exploitation. In particular, the younger generation should be made to understand clearly how the landowners and capitalists exploited the peasants and workers so that they will hate the system of exploitation implacably.

In order to remould the thinking of everyone we should also intensify education in socialist patriotism. Everyone should be made to appreciate fully the superiority of the socialist system, so that he will treasure it and love it and defend the gains of the revolution to the last

against any encroachment of its enemies.

In educating people in communism it is essential to inspire in them revolutionary optimism. Everyone should be encouraged to fight for building a socialist and communist society with an unshakable faith in communism and in the victory of the revolution, to cherish the future and continue to innovate and advance.

The basic aim of ideological education should be to cultivate loyalty to the Party in the people.

Unbounded loyalty to the Party is the fundamental quality of a communist. Loyalty to the Party should be displayed by a strong Party spirit, working-class spirit and people-oriented spirit. In other words, it should be expressed in the noble trait of fighting with complete devotion for the Party and the revolution, for the working class and the people. It is only when the people are educated in the spirit of loyalty to the Party that they can devote themselves completely to the struggle for the Party and the revolution, for the working class and the people. However superior a man's cultural and technical knowledge may be, it is useless if he lacks loyalty to the Party. We need people that are not only armed with revolutionary theory and possess a high level of scientific and technical knowledge, but also have a high degree of loyalty to the Party and fight with single-minded devotion for the Party and the revolution, for the working class and the people. In socialist education, therefore, it is necessary to direct primary attention to teaching people to be unfailingly loyal to the Party.

Another important aspect of socialist education is to raise everyone's cultural and technical levels.

The struggle to build socialism and communism is a very hard struggle in which every problem has to be solved by independent effort against a capitalist background. So, it is necessary for everyone to adhere closely to an independent stand and display his creative spirit to the full in the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction. For this, everyone should have a high level of cultural and technical knowledge. Only then will it be possible to dispel any illusions about the technology of the developed capitalist countries, do away with the

worship of major powers and dogmatism and conduct the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction creatively based on Juche in conformity with the actual situation in one's own country. When the cultural and technical levels are low, one will accept the ideas of others mechanically, but if those levels are high, one will be able to display one's creative initiative and solve every problem in the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction by oneself.

In socialist education we should coordinate ideological education and cultural and technical education.

In order to build socialism and communism, two fortresses must be captured, namely the ideological and material fortresses. In order to take these two fortresses we should guard against leaning too far towards cultural and technical education while neglecting ideological education, and vice versa. In order to build a socialist and communist society successfully, we should put great efforts into promoting both the ideological remoulding of all the people and the work of raising their cultural and technical levels.

It is of particular importance in socialist education to nurture the younger generation, the successors to the revolutionary cause, to become ardent revolutionaries and communists. Whether or not we do this is of vital importance in preparing the younger generation to take over and accomplish our revolutionary cause.

The revolutionary struggle is a protracted, arduous struggle. Although the aim of the revolution remains unchanged, the generations pass ceaselessly. Our revolutionary task has not been fulfilled and we have not yet reunified our country. We are now conducting the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction in direct confrontation with the American imperialists, the chieftains of imperialism. Half of our country is still occupied by them and south Korea has been turned into a den of reactionaries of every type. As long as the American imperialists and reactionaries remain in south Korea, we cannot ease up in our struggle for a single moment. We must reunify the country and carry the revolution through to the end. It is only when we have educated and trained the successors to the revolution properly that it will be possible to

continue the revolution, reunify the country and carry the cause of socialism and communism through to a successful conclusion.

Even in the early days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle we could see that the revolution would be protracted, and paid close attention to the education of the younger generation which would have to advance it further. In the early 1930s we set up the Samgwang School in Guyushu as an experiment, and there we gave free schooling to young people and raised many of them to become revolutionaries through socialist education. Nearly all those who studied at the Samgwang School joined the revolutionary struggle, and even though some of them did not participate in the revolutionary struggle, not one of them took the reactionary road.

Experience has shown us that the proper education of the younger generation, the people who will succeed to the revolutionary cause, is essential for bringing them up to be ardent revolutionaries and communists and for carrying the revolutionary cause through to a successful conclusion. Therefore, we should pay particular attention to their education and bring them up to be ardent revolutionaries and communists.

If socialist education is to be successful, party guidance of educational work should be strengthened.

The steady enhancement of the leadership role of the party in the revolution and construction is a sure guarantee for victory in everything that is attempted. We cannot advance towards communism unless we enhance the leadership role of the working-class party and strengthen the socialist state's functions of proletarian dictatorship.

It is a revisionist trait to negate the leadership role of the party in the revolution and construction and the socialist state's functions of the proletarian dictatorship.

Marx said that proletarian dictatorship is essential in the period of transition from capitalism to communism. Lenin defended and adhered to Marx's theory on proletarian dictatorship and advanced the proposition that communism is Soviet power plus electrification.

We should have a proper understanding of the propositions of the

Marxist-Leninist classics and uphold and develop them. In Lenin's proposition, Soviet power means the proletarian dictatorship and electrification means carrying out the technical revolution to automate all production processes, not simply the construction of many power stations.

In order to build socialism and communism we should strengthen the proletarian dictatorship and remould the ideological consciousness of the people by enhancing the leadership role of the Party; we should eliminate the distinctions between heavy and light labour, between agricultural and industrial labour and between mental and physical labour through the technical revolution.

In future, too, we should continue to strengthen Party guidance in socialist education to bring up all the pupils and students to be able builders of communism equipped with a wide range of knowledge, noble virtues and a strong physique.

By re-educating everyone in communism through better socialist education, we should lead them to struggle selflessly for the consolidation and development of the socialist system in the northern half of Korea, for the reunification of the country, for the complete defeat of imperialism throughout the world in league with all revolutionary peoples and for the building of a new society free from exploitation and oppression.

We should set the pattern of the socialist educational system in the northern half of Korea to demonstrate the superiority of our socialist system to the people of south Korea.

We should make our working class and all our people thoroughly understand that proper socialist education is essential to further consolidate and develop the socialist system, to safeguard and defend the socialist country, to imbue revolutionary, working-class and communist qualities into all the people and to accelerate more rapidly the socialist and communist cause, and should further strengthen and develop socialist education. With this aim in mind I submit to this plenary meeting of the Central Committee of the Party the *Theses on Socialist Education* compiled on the basis of the rich experience

accumulated in the course of conducting socialist education over a long period of time in our country.

I firmly believe that you will take an active part in the debate on the *Theses on Socialist Education*, and strive more vigorously to advance the building of socialism and communism and hasten the cause of national reunification by examining and reviewing your past work and improving the work of socialist education in accordance with the theses.

THESES ON SOCIALIST EDUCATION

**Published at the 14th Plenary Meeting
of the Fifth Central Committee
of the Workers' Party of Korea**
September 5, 1977

The working-class party and state that have seized power are faced with the mighty task of building socialism and communism. It is imperative for building socialism and communism to continue the revolution even after the socialist system has been established and to push ahead with the struggle to capture the ideological and material fortresses of communism.

Of these two fortresses, it is the ideological one that is more important to conquer. It is only when the people, the masters of society, are re-educated in communism that the fundamental question of building communism can be solved and the material fortress taken with success. The working-class party and state should therefore put their first efforts into conquering the ideological fortress by re-educating the people in communism during the period of transition from capitalism to socialism.

In order to take the ideological fortress of communism, educational work must be well managed. Good education will make it possible to do away with the ideological and cultural backwardness that is a remnant of the old society, to train everyone to be people of a communist type and to promote the revolution and construction.

Education is a decisive factor in the revolution and in determining the fate of the nation. Without education there can be neither social progress nor national prosperity, at any time or in any nation. The question of education acquires still greater importance in those newly independent countries which have won their freedom from imperialist, colonial rule.

Since the earliest days of its leadership of the revolution and construction, our Party has paid close attention to education. At every stage of the revolution our Party has mapped out and put into practice a sound education policy and the Party and state have put a lot of work into education.

Thanks to the wise leadership and sound education policy of our Party, what remained of the education system that had been in force under colonial enslavement was quickly eliminated and an advanced socialist system of education established. And brilliant success has been achieved in public education and in training our own cadres. In our country today universal 11-year education is compulsory and every member of the younger generation studies to the best of his ability at state expense. An army of intellectuals, a whole million strong, has grown up and is now efficiently running the state organs and economic and cultural institutions. Our working people who once lagged far behind modern civilization, are all working as master-builders of socialism and their cultural and technical levels are of middle school standard or higher. A new era of socialist culture has been opened up in this land where total ignorance once prevailed.

Today we are confronted with the momentous task of developing education for socialism in line with the demands of the revolution. The situation today, in which the three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural—are really getting into their stride, demands urgently that socialist education should be developed further. By accelerating the ideological and cultural revolutions and pressing on with the technical revolution by developing socialist education, we shall bring earlier the victory of the socialist and communist cause.

1. THE FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLE OF SOCIALIST PEDAGOGY

Socialist education is an undertaking to teach people to be independent and creative social beings.

Man can be an independent and creative social being only when he is conscious of his independence and creative ability. Independent consciousness and creative ability are not inherent. No man is born with an ideology or knowledge. It is through education that man acquires independent ideology and a knowledge of nature and society and cultivates the creative ability to understand and change the world.

The aim of socialist education is to bring up people to become communist revolutionaries who have independence and creativity. Socialist education should serve the socialist system and the revolutionary cause of the working class by developing people as communist revolutionaries who fight with devotion for society, for the people and for socialism and communism.

For socialist education to achieve its aims and fulfil its mission, the fundamental principle of socialist pedagogy should be thoroughly applied.

The fundamental principle of socialist pedagogy is to make people revolutionary, working-class and communist. In other words, it is to equip people with the revolutionary ideas of communism and, on the basis of this, ensure that they acquire sound scientific knowledge and are in good physical condition.

Revolutionary ideas, sound knowledge and a healthy body are the qualities and qualifications essential for a communist. Only when a man has communist ideas, sound knowledge and a healthy body can he be a true communist revolutionary and play the role of master in the revolution and construction.

Making people revolutionary and working-class is a legitimate demand for building socialism and communism and a basic revolutionary task that confronts the working-class party and state during the period of transition from capitalism to socialism.

Even after the socialist system has been established, outdated ideas persist in the minds of the people for a long time and the ideological and cultural infiltration of imperialism continues. Without making energetic efforts to imbue everyone with revolutionary and working-class qualities it is impossible to root out the old way of thinking that lingers in the minds of the people and to stop imperialist ideological and cultural infiltration. Equipping people with revolutionary, working-class ideas and a communist world outlook through an intensive campaign to imbue everyone with revolutionary and working-class qualities is essential in overcoming the corrosive action of backward ideas and in consolidating and developing the socialist system.

Making people revolutionary and working-class is fundamental to developing communist revolutionaries.

Man is a social being with ideological consciousness. A person's thinking determines his value and quality and regulates all his activities. To remould people is, in essence, to remould their thinking, and what is fundamental to the development of a communist is to arm him with communist ideas. It is only when a person is armed with these ideas that he can acquire the qualities of a communist and display a high degree of independence and creativity.

If a man is to study hard and use his knowledge effectively in the revolution and construction it is essential that he be armed with communist ideas. Only a person who has revolutionary, working-class ideas can ensure that every bit of what he has learned is practical and can devote all his wisdom and talents to the great work of building socialism and communism. Learning that is not based on revolutionary, communist ideas is of no use at all.

Socialist education, therefore, should be the process of the ideological revolution to make people revolutionary and

working-class. In socialist education the main emphasis should be laid on ideological education and the main effort should be directed towards arming people with communist ideas. The content and method of socialist education should be geared towards imbuing revolutionary and working-class qualities into people, and all means and facilities of education should tend towards remoulding their thinking.

A communist should possess a sound knowledge of nature and society as well as communist ideas.

The acquisition of scientific knowledge is vital to the all-round development of a man and is the basis for establishing his scientific world outlook. The creative activities of man for reforming nature and society should be supported by scientific knowledge. Only when a man has a full knowledge of nature and society as well as communist ideas can he become a fully-developed communist equipped with a revolutionary world outlook and work purposefully in the struggle to remodel nature and society.

In socialist education, importance should be attached to equipping people with a profound knowledge of nature, society and modern technology. The people should be given a systematic knowledge of mankind's achievements in science and engineering and a profound understanding of the world and their power to act to transform it in a revolutionary way should be cultivated in them.

A strong body is the physical basis for intellectual and practical activities. Without a strong body, a man cannot hope to be independent and creative in his activities. Socialist education should make a positive contribution to developing the physical strength of the people.

The thinking, knowledge and physical strength of a man are closely related. Socialist education aimed at bringing up fully-developed communists who are independent and creative, should give both intellectual and physical training in an integrated manner, although priority should be given to ideological training.

In order to carry out socialist education satisfactorily, it is necessary to adhere to the following principles:

First, Party loyalty and working-class loyalty should be embodied in education.

Education in a class society always acquires a class character. In its class essence, socialist education is Party and working-class education.

Party loyalty and working-class loyalty are the lifeblood of socialist education and the decisive factor that guarantees success in educational work. Only Party and working-class education can form people into revolutionaries true to the Party and the revolution and contribute to the revolutionary cause of the working class, to the cause of socialism and communism.

The most important factor in developing socialist education into Party and working-class education is to establish our Party's monolithic ideological system in it.

Socialist education must be guided entirely by the revolutionary ideas of the Party.

The guiding idea of our socialist education is communism and the Juche idea. Communism and the Juche idea are the ideological, theoretical and methodological basis of socialist education. Communism and the Juche idea provide full answers to all the theoretical and practical problems that arise in education and indicate the direction in which socialist education should progress. Socialist education must be guided by communism and the Juche idea, and these must be applied fully in all areas of educational work.

The policy of the Party reflects its intentions and requirements. All educational work must be conducted in accordance with Party policy and teaching, too, must be based on Party policy.

Socialist education must be carried out under the guidance of the Party. Without the leadership of the Party, it is impossible to implement the Party's intentions and political requirements in educational work. By strengthening the Party's leadership we shall eliminate "liberalism" and irregularities from education and establish revolutionary discipline so that all education is conducted in accordance with Party policy.

Establishing the Party's monolithic ideological system in education is aimed at training people to be revolutionaries who are totally loyal to the Party. All the levers of socialist education must be made to serve the training of people to be revolutionary fighters who are loyal to the Party, and education in Party loyalty should be the keynote of the whole educational process.

The work of establishing the Party's monolithic ideological system in education is closely linked with the political and ideological defence of the Party. We must prevent ideological elements that are antagonistic to the Party and unsound inclinations infiltrating this sphere and fight strongly against their slightest manifestation.

In order to develop socialist education into Party and working-class education, it is necessary to give it a working-class edge.

To give education a working-class edge means marking a clear definition between the working and the capitalist class and between communism and capitalism in all spheres of education and jealously defending the interests of the working class and meeting its every need.

The class struggle is continuing in socialist society. If we fail to give a sharp working-class edge to education and give a patchy education which obscures distinctions between the working and the capitalist class, people may acquire a patchy outlook and so may society. In education the working-class party and state must always stand by their class position and revolutionary principles and solve all theoretical and practical problems that arise in education in accordance with the interests and needs of the working class.

In order to defend the interests and meet the needs of the working class in education, a campaign should be launched to combat all non-working-class elements. We must completely eliminate what remains of feudalism and capitalism in every sphere of education, so that socialist education develops in harmony with the character of socialist society and with working-class aspirations. We must prevent any reactionary bourgeois ideas and degenerate habits spread by imperialists and their minions from infiltrating education and in particular we must be on our guard against bourgeois theories of

education. We must continue to fight relentlessly against all opportunist ideological trends including revisionist theories that negate the Party and working-class character of education and preach the non-ideological character and “liberalization” of education. Thus, we will safeguard the Party and working-class character of socialist education and ensure its purity in our country.

Secondly, Juche must be established in education.

Socialism and communism is built with the national state as a unit and with the people of each nation as the masters of the revolution and construction. The environment and conditions in each country are different, as are the revolutionary tasks that have to be done. Therefore, socialist education must become Juche-oriented education that makes teaching and training conform with the realities of each country and the interests of the people there and trains the people to be the masters of the revolution in their own country.

An important factor in establishing Juche in education is to find a creative solution to all the problems that arise by adopting an independent stand.

Socialist education is creative work to develop the people who live and act in specific conditions. There can never be an educational theory or experience that can be applied uniformly to the specific circumstances and conditions in every country. We must solve all the problems of theory and practice that arise in education creatively by our own efforts in accordance with the situation in our country and in the interests of the Korean revolution.

In order to establish Juche in education, the main emphasis in instruction should be placed on the things of one’s own country and people should be taught to understand their national things.

Koreans should conduct the revolution in Korea and build socialism and communism in Korea. If Koreans want to play their part to the full as masters of the Korean revolution and take responsibility for the revolution and construction in their own country, they must know all

about Korea past and present and about the Korean revolution.

Through education our people must become immersed in our Party policy and brilliant revolutionary traditions and become acquainted with the history, culture, geography and natural conditions of our country. It is only when our people know about their own country and revolution that they are in a position to solve the difficult problems that arise in the revolution and construction by making good use of the country's full potential and to fight selflessly for our revolutionary cause with the pride of working for the Korean revolution under our Party's leadership and with love for the country and the people.

As for science and technology from abroad, they should be taught from a Juche standpoint and adapted to the conditions and actual situation in our country. If we fail to adopt even advanced science and technology critically to suit our actual situation, they will actually have an adverse effect on our revolution and construction rather than benefit them. The purpose of learning and introducing things from abroad should always be to gain a better understanding of our own things and to carry out our revolution and construction more efficiently.

We should reject sycophancy towards major powers and dogmatism in education. If such things are tolerated in education, all kinds of opportunist and reactionary educational theories and ideologies may find their way in and it will become impossible to develop education in the interests of our revolution and our people. We should categorically repudiate sycophancy and dogmatism and develop socialist education into a Juche-oriented, revolutionary education.

Thirdly, education should be combined with revolutionary practice.

Education is born of practical needs and serves practice. Only when it is linked with practice can education fulfil its mission.

Socialist education should be integrated with revolutionary

working-class activities for socialism and communism. Only then can it contribute to the socialist and communist cause.

The combination of education and revolutionary practice is indispensable in bringing people up to be communist revolutionaries equipped with living knowledge and practical ability.

Practice is the starting point of understanding, the criterion of truth and the motive power for the development of theory. Revolutionary practice helps people cultivate their practical skills and tempers them for the revolution. It is by acquiring a knowledge of the world as well as practical skills that man becomes the most powerful being in the world.

It is only when education is closely linked with revolutionary practice that every bit of knowledge imparted can be useful in the revolution and construction; that it can train people as socialist and communist builders with living knowledge and practical skills. Theory for theory's sake and knowledge for knowledge's sake that are detached from revolutionary practice are utterly useless in our society. In socialist education universal principles and theories should be taught to the students in close combination with practice, and education should be conducted in such a way that all theories and knowledge can contribute to dealing with the problems that arise in the revolution and construction.

Education should always be kept in close touch with reality. Education should be sensitive to the vibrant realities of our country and all aspects of education, including its content and methods, should be improved and perfected in accordance with developing reality.

Fourthly, the socialist state should take the responsibility for organizing and conducting education.

Socialist education is an instrument of the socialist state for training the people ideologically and culturally. Through educational work the socialist state functions as a cultural educator. The socialist state should be responsible for educational work in order to accelerate

communist education and training and hasten the victory of the socialist and communist cause.

The socialist state should keep education well in advance of all other work.

Socialist education is work with the people to develop them as communists. Giving priority to remoulding people, to working with people, is a sure guarantee for success in all our work.

The revolution and construction should begin with the education of people. The socialist state should always attach primary importance to education in the revolutionary struggle and construction work and adhere to the revolutionary stand of solving all problems through effective education.

The socialist state should run education on the principle of the continuous education of all members of society.

Socialist education is people-oriented education to serve the working masses. It should contribute to educating every member of society continuously so that everyone is brought up as a communist who has independence and creativity.

The continuous education of all members of society is indispensable for building socialism and communism. Only by educating all members of society continually can any differences in the ideological, technical and cultural standards of people be eliminated and the aim of making our whole society working-class, revolutionary and intellectual be achieved.

The socialist state should establish an advanced system and a rational programme for the uninterrupted education of every member of society and push ahead with educating both the younger generation and adults as well as training its own cadres.

The socialist state should take the responsibility for providing suitable educational conditions.

In socialist society, where the means of production are owned by the state and society and educational institutions are directed by the state, educational work can only be successful when the state looks after it in a responsible manner.

For the socialist state, which serves the people, to provide suitable conditions in which to educate the people is an honourable duty. The socialist state should take full responsibility for doing everything that is needed for education—training teachers, building schools, providing educational facilities, teaching aids and tools and school fixtures and fittings.

2. THE CONTENT OF SOCIALIST EDUCATION

The content of education determines both its quality and nature.

The content of socialist education should be such that it will make the people revolutionary and working-class and bring them up as communists who are mentally, morally and physically prepared and fully developed. The content of socialist education should be fully revolutionary, scientific and realistic.

1) POLITICAL AND IDEOLOGICAL EDUCATION

Political and ideological education is the most important aspect of socialist education. It is only through proper political and ideological education that it is possible to train students to be revolutionaries who are equipped with a revolutionary outlook on the world and the ideological and moral qualities of a communist. And only when it is based on sound political and ideological education will the people's scientific, technological and physical education be successful.

It is of paramount importance in political and ideological education to arm the students fully with the Juche idea.

The Juche idea provides a scientific and revolutionary view of the world that is indispensable for communists. Students will only become true masters of the revolution and construction and independent and

creative revolutionary workers when they are fully armed with the Juche idea.

In socialist education primary attention should be paid to teaching the students the Juche idea, and everything should be subordinated to this.

In order to arm the students with the Juche idea, education in Party policy and revolutionary traditions should be improved.

All our Party's policies proceed from and embody the Juche idea. Party policy should be taught to the students systematically and in full so that they all gain a clear understanding of its essence and its correctness and have firm faith in it.

The brilliant revolutionary traditions of our Party have the rich ideological content required to arm people with the Juche idea, to make them revolutionary and have a great influence upon them. Through more intensive education in these revolutionary traditions we should make the students aware of the historical roots of our Party and revolution and make them able to understand fully the ideological system of Juche, our immortal revolutionary achievements, our valuable fighting experience, and our revolutionary method and popular style of work acquired during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle.

In teaching Party policy and revolutionary traditions the main emphasis should be placed on cultivating loyalty to the Party. All children and students will thus be moulded into revolutionary fighters who are unfailingly loyal to the Party, fully imbued with our Party's revolutionary ideas and prepared to support and defend the Party resolutely and rally closely around it to carry out its policies without question.

Next in importance in political and ideological education is to intensify revolutionary, communist education so as to equip the students fully with the revolutionary consciousness of the working class and with communist morality.

Faith in communism and revolutionary optimism are high moral qualities of revolutionaries who fight for communism. The justice of

the communist cause, the inevitability of victory and the bright prospects for communism should be clearly understood by students, so that they hold a firm belief in the victory of communism and fight for it with devotion. The students should be taught to be optimistic and hold fast to the idea of the continuous revolution.

The kernel of communist ideology is the class consciousness of the working class and the main content of communist education is class education. By intensifying class education we should make sure that all the students fight selflessly for the interests of the working class with an unwavering working-class viewpoint and on a firm working-class stand. It is particularly important to educate them to hate the enemies of the revolution. Those who do not hate the enemies of the revolution cannot fight with determination against them nor can they become true revolutionaries. By bringing the students to hate imperialism and the landowner and capitalist classes, we should make certain that they fight resolutely against both our class enemies and the system of exploitation.

Collectivism is the basis of social life under socialism and communism and a principle that guides the actions of communists. We should educate all the students to outgrow individualism and selfishness, and to work, study and live according to the collectivist principle of “One for all and all for one”, and fight with devotion for society and the people, for the interests of the Party and the revolution.

A love of work is a salient characteristic of the communist. All students should be taught to regard work as honourable and sacred, to enjoy work, to observe labour discipline willingly and to participate conscientiously in any common endeavour for the good of the collective and society.

Education in socialist patriotism should be improved. Socialist patriotism is the spirit of loving the socialist homeland with the working-class state power, socialist system, independent national economy and brilliant national culture. All students should be encouraged to be proud of their nation, have a deep love of their country and people, cherish their fine national heritage and traditions

and be willing to sacrifice themselves in the fight for the prosperity and progress of the socialist homeland. Students should be taught to take loving care of their desks and chairs and, further, to treasure all communal property of the state and society and manage the nation's economic life carefully and assiduously.

Students should be armed with proletarian internationalism. All our students should be educated to offer active support for the revolutionary struggle of the peoples of the world for peace, democracy, national independence and socialism, to strengthen friendship and solidarity with them and to fight staunchly for victory in the world revolution.

Children and students should be taught to abide by the letter and spirit of socialist law. Socialist law is the rule of action and the principle of life which everyone in socialist society is bound to observe, by displaying a high degree of political consciousness. All students should be taught to respect the state law and observe it voluntarily and to wage a principled struggle against any violations of law and order.

Children and students should be taught to acquire communist morality and to adhere to the socialist way of life. All students should be made to rid themselves completely of any outdated moral concepts and conventions, to abide by communist moral standards willingly and to live revolutionary lives consonant with the socialist way of life.

The process by which a man's ideological consciousness develops is closely related to the process by which he grows. Therefore, political and ideological education should be stepped up gradually from an early age, from the lowest to the most advanced stage of education. Kindergarten education should start with giving the children a general idea of social phenomena and giving them the beginnings of political and ideological awareness, and as they grow older and education proceeds to a higher level, ideological education should be intensified and the standard of education raised gradually to give them a deep understanding of the essence and fundamentals of social phenomena.

2) SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

Scientific and technical education is aimed at making the students aware of the advances in science and technology achieved by mankind and at developing their ability to make use of them.

Such education should provide general and specialized knowledge.

The first task is to provide a good general education.

General knowledge is indispensable to any member of a socialist society. A good general education at school is essential for enabling the students to gain a wide range of knowledge of nature and society and for building sound foundations for learning modern science and technology in the fields of their speciality. A complete general secondary education is provided through the system of universal 11-year compulsory education in our country.

Instruction in basic knowledge is important in general education. The main emphasis in primary and general secondary education should be placed on teaching the pupils the general concepts and essence of things and phenomena as well as the rudiments of the laws of their change and development, and especially on providing them with a general knowledge of elementary sciences such as mathematics, physics, chemistry and biology.

The rudiments of engineering should also be taught. The students should be introduced to the fundamental principles of production and technology and given an understanding of electricity and machinery and other basic technical knowledge. In general secondary education all students should be encouraged to study at least one form of technology related to our modern industry.

In socialist education it is as wrong to divorce students from production processes by giving general basic knowledge alone at the expense of technical education, as it is to turn general secondary education into vocational training by over-emphasizing technical education at the expense of a basic general education. General secondary

education must not fail in its duty to provide a sound basic general knowledge in proper combination with the teaching of basic techniques.

Good education in the arts is necessary during general education. In primary and secondary schools, the teaching of arts subjects should be improved so that all pupils gain a basic knowledge that will enable them to appreciate and be creative in literature and art and so that they develop the ability to play at least one musical instrument and cultivate their aesthetic feelings.

Next comes good specialized education.

This education should be given during higher education after a full general secondary education. It is only by improving specialized education that it is possible to train able technicians and specialists and to realize the aim of making every member of society an intellectual.

Specialized education in natural sciences is required to acquaint the students with the basic principles and theories of the natural sciences and the latest breakthroughs in this field, and to give them adequate knowledge for solving any new scientific and technical problems that arise in their revolutionary activities.

Specialized education in social sciences is required to provide the students with a full understanding of the objective laws of social progress, the theories of class struggle and the strategy and tactics of the revolution. It should also make them aware of the valuable successes and experience gained by our Party in solving difficult problems in a unique way in every area of politics, the economy and culture. Likewise, the ability should be nurtured in the students to give sound theoretical explanations and publicity to Party policy and to offer a correct scientific clarification of the theoretical and practical problems arising in the revolution and construction.

In specialized technical education, modern technology should be taught. The students should be fully introduced to the principles of modern production and engineering and should acquire specialized knowledge of some aspects of technology. They should also be trained to master the skills of handling automated installations and other modern equipment.

The content of scientific and technical education should be continually supplemented and enriched in accordance with the demands of real life and based on the latest breakthroughs in science and engineering.

Scientific and technical education should be wholly keyed to Party policy. Instruction in all subjects should be based entirely on Party policy and linked to the situation in our country. We should thus make sure that the students learn things that are necessary for our revolution and apply their knowledge and skills in their revolutionary activities.

3) PHYSICAL EDUCATION

The aim of physical education is to develop the bodies of children and students and prepare them fully for both work and national defence.

That the children and young people have strong bodies is essential for the revolutionary struggle and for building a powerful and prosperous society. Their strong bodies developed through effective physical training will provide greater energy in the work to promote the revolution and construction and will increase the strength of the nation.

Physical education is of importance not only because it increases the physical strength of the children and young people but also because it tempers their minds and wills and raises the level of their culture. Through sporting activities the children and students cultivate courage, audacity, fortitude and perseverance and increase their sporting skills and cultural attainments.

All educational institutions should offer the students sufficient physical training. This education should be improved particularly at primary and secondary schools that are bringing the children up at the time of their most rapid physical growth.

Physical training at school should centre on strengthening the children's bodies and making them physically well-proportioned. It should accord with the natural and geographical features of our country,

the physical characteristics of our people, the sexes and ages of the children and students and the physiological requirements of their bodies.

Physical education which helps to increase the stature of the children and students and develop their physiques harmoniously should be systematic, and physical training for national defence should also be promoted.

Physical education and sport should be encouraged and made an everyday activity of the masses. At school, collective physical education and sporting activities in which the vast majority take part should be held regularly.

There should be many out-of-school sporting activities for the students. A wide variety of physical education and sporting activities, including exercises during break, group running, mass games and athletics meetings, should be arranged and various sporting circle activities should be conducted at school, so that all the students are strengthening their bodies all the time and become skilled in at least one type of sport.

3. THE METHODS OF SOCIALIST EDUCATION

Socialist education can only be successful if scientific and revolutionary methods are employed. We should adopt scientific and revolutionary methods of educating in line with the objectives and mission of socialist education and run education according to these methods.

1) HEURISTIC TEACHING

The main form of school education is teaching and the basic method of teaching is heuristics. This method enables the students to

gain a proper understanding of what they have been taught, so that the aims of education are achieved.

Heuristic teaching is an extremely good method that ties in well with socialist education and the laws of cognition.

By its nature, socialist education demands methods of teaching that encourage independence and creativity. Heuristics give students an understanding of the content of what they are being taught by encouraging them to think positively and so are a great help to increasing their independence and creativity.

The subject of cognition is man. Only through his own positive thinking can man recognize the essential nature of things and phenomena. The heuristic method of teaching stimulates the minds of the students and helps them to identify the essence of things and phenomena readily.

In our schools the teaching of all subjects should be done by heuristic methods.

In heuristic instruction various teaching methods should be applied to suit the students' preparedness and characteristics, on the basis of building up their self-awareness and a positive attitude and guaranteeing the logic, system and sequence of the content of the lessons.

An important aspect of heuristics is to provide an illuminating explanation through lectures and conversation. Explanation should be vivid, convincing and extremely logical so that the students can readily understand what they are taught.

In order to develop to the full the students' ability to think, there should be a great deal of discussion and debate and question and answer sessions should be conducted. This is our Party's traditional teaching method and it has been tried and tested and proved to be efficient. The introduction of this method will enable the students to gain an extensive and profound understanding of what they are taught.

Visual aids and demonstration play an important part in giving the students a vivid understanding of things and phenomena and of scientific principles and in developing their own thinking. At school the content of lessons should be envisaged to suit the characteristics of

the subject and a variety of modern visual aids should be used widely so that visual and demonstrative education is improved.

The ideological education of students should be conducted through explanation and persuasion.

It is only when the students themselves understand and accept communist ideology that it can become a firm belief. Therefore, ideological education should be neither coercive nor even crammed, but always conducted by explanation and persuasion, so that the students understand and sympathize with advanced ideas of their own accord. Delinquents and laggards, too, should be treated kindly by persuasion, so that they come to identify and correct their defects and shortcomings by themselves.

Explanation and persuasion should be conducted tirelessly and perseveringly to suit the character and preparedness of each student.

Another fundamental method of ideological education is to influence the students by positive examples.

Good examples are an active criticism of the negative and a clear demonstration to people of how they should work and live. They are therefore a powerful driving force in overcoming negative influences on the people and encouraging new and progressive ideas.

Children and young people are sensitive to new things, have a strong sense of justice and like to follow the example of others. So positive examples can arouse great sympathy in children and students and be widely accepted.

The heroic struggle waged by our anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters of the past is an example that teaches the truth of real life and struggle to the younger generation who have not experienced the ordeals of the revolution. Schools should make great efforts to educate the students by referring to the shining examples set by our anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters of the past.

The good examples set by other students exert a tremendous influence, because they are connected directly with their own life. Any positive example set should be noted immediately and drawn on widely so that other students act on it in their studies and life. Meanwhile, their

own positive qualities should be actively encouraged and developed so that they can overcome their negative characteristics by themselves.

2) COMBINING THEORETICAL EDUCATION WITH PRACTICAL TRAINING, AND EDUCATION WITH PRODUCTIVE LABOUR

Combining theoretical education with practical training is an important means of educating students to be communist revolutionaries equipped with useful, living knowledge. Theories obtained from books only become working knowledge applicable to revolutionary practice when their truth is substantiated in practice and when they are combined with an ability to apply them.

In school, the lessons and lectures should be properly combined with experiments and practical activities, so that the students digest what they have learned in class and develop the ability to apply it in practice. In education it is particularly important to give the students effective practical training through productive work and in their own speciality. Training through production at secondary school should be conducted with a view to encouraging the students to acquire a basic knowledge of modern production techniques as well as technical skills for handling tools and machinery. Production and speciality training during higher education should be conducted with stress laid on encouraging the students to master scientific principles and modern technical skills in their own speciality.

There should be more practical work in those subjects that require skill and dexterity. Practice should be based on scientific theories and principles and conducted systematically and in due order so as to increase the independence of the students.

For the students to acquire a living, comprehensive knowledge of the real world, visits to revolutionary battlefields and places connected with our revolutionary history should be planned and arranged and there should be regular visits to public, cultural and educational

establishments, factories and other enterprises and cooperative farms.

Education and productive labour should be properly combined.

Production work, which is the most important form of social practice, is a powerful way of transforming nature, developing society and educating and remoulding people. Through productive labour man understands and harnesses nature and society and transforms himself and his own ideological consciousness. Participation in productive labour by the students engaged in academic pursuits is very important for them to acquire revolutionary and working-class characteristics and also for improving the quality of education. Through productive labour the students are tempered ideologically, learn the revolutionary loyalty and organization of the working class, consolidate the knowledge they have gained at college and cultivate their ability to put it into practice, accumulate experience in real-life situations and develop their skills.

The requirements of pedagogy should be fully met in leading the students into productive labour. We must guard against both the tendency to neglect productive labour while leaning only on classwork and the tendency to give students an excessive amount of production work. The productive labour of students should be organized rationally so that it is conducive to their education and training.

3) THE DEVELOPMENT OF AN ORGANIZATIONAL WAY OF LIFE AND OF SOCIAL AND POLITICAL ACTIVITIES

In order to train children and students politically and ideologically and educate them in a revolutionary way, their organizational way of life and their social and political activities must be developed and combined closely with their classwork.

The organization is a forge for ideological training and a school for revolutionary education. During their time in the Children's Union and the League of Socialist Working Youth, children and students receive

ideological education and revolutionary training and cultivate their sense of organization and discipline. It is only through belonging to a revolutionary organization that communist revolutionaries equipped with a noble ideology and a strong sense of organization will be developed.

It is important in developing the organizational life of the students that the children and students participate willingly in the activities of the organization, with a sound attitude towards it. Life in an organization is inevitably a form of political life and a process of maintaining political integrity. Children and students must regard their participation in the organizational activities of the CU and LSWY as a great honour and a sacred duty, and must willingly and conscientiously carry out the assignments and obligations under the rules of their respective organizations.

In the CU and LSWY there should be more criticism, while the main stress is laid on ideological education. Only an organizational life in an atmosphere of criticism can train the students politically and ideologically and provide them with revolutionary education and contribute to bringing up communist revolutionaries. Criticism and self-criticism must be encouraged among the students and, especially, meetings to review their organizational activities must be conducted at a high political and ideological level.

To develop the students' organizational life, the function and role of CU and LSWY organizations at schools should be increased. These organizations are political guardians who protect the students' political integrity and are also their kind educators. They must make great efforts to protect and control the students' political integrity and to educate and train them politically and ideologically. They should give the students assignments in accordance with their age, preparedness and psychological characteristics and help them to carry them out properly; they should also regularly review how their assignments have been carried out and give them new ones, so that every student is always kept busy.

It is important to encourage the students to take part in a lot of social and political activities.

Social and political activity is a practical way for the students to apply what they have learned at school to actual situations; it is a revolutionary activity that makes a direct contribution to building socialism. By drawing the students into a variety of social and political activities, we shall train them from their early years to be true masters of society dedicated to the struggle to improve society and the lives of the people, to be competent social and political activists who can educate, organize and mobilize the masses.

The students should be made to form information teams, such as Party-policy information teams, scientific information teams, and hygiene information teams, to explain Party policy to the masses and spread scientific and technical knowledge as well as information on culture and hygiene. We should also encourage them to step up the activities of the hygiene guards and greenery guards, as well as various other good conduct campaigns such as the campaign to create CU and LSWY groves and the campaign to help build socialism.

It is particularly important to encourage the university students to take an active part in the three-revolution team movement in their social and political activities. Their participation in this movement should be planned, so that they will play an active part in the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions and, at the same time, temper themselves politically and ideologically.

4) THE COMBINATION OF SCHOOL AND SOCIAL EDUCATION

While receiving organizational and systematic education at school, the students are at the same time educated through their life in society. Therefore, in order to educate the younger generation properly, we should, while improving school education, educate the students correctly wherever they are subject to educational influences, and closely link school and social education.

The combination of these two forms of education is the main

characteristic and advantage of socialist education that stems from the nature of the socialist system. In socialist society where solidarity and cooperation among the working people is the basis of social relations and collectivism is the basis of social life, school and society have a common goal and interests with regard to the education of the younger generation. By sharing common aims and interests, a sure guarantee is provided for making the education of the younger generation the work of the whole of society, and for forging close links between school and social education.

If we are to link school and social education properly, we should promote social education, but still ensure that school education plays the decisive role.

In socialist society social education plays an important role in developing the students as communists. Social education makes an important contribution to educating the students politically and ideologically and giving them an understanding of science and engineering, literature and the arts and sporting techniques. We should handle social education properly in order to strengthen school education and consolidate and supplement its achievements.

An important aspect of improving the social education of the students is to increase the responsibility and role played by social educational institutions and make good use of social educational facilities and the means of information and educational work.

Social educational facilities such as the students and children's palaces, students and children's halls. Children's Union camps and libraries are reliable centres for the education of students. We should use these facilities to hold regular political and current affairs lectures, scientific seminars and public discussions and start up various group activities on a wide scale.

Schools and social educational institutions must strengthen their ties, and the teachers and staff of these institutions must work closely together in the education of students. They must regularly discuss any problems arising in the education of students and exchange notes and keep in touch with each other concerning how they educate the students.

The home is a cell of society. The educational influence of the

home on children and young people is considerable. We must see to it that their homes are revolutionary and that the socialist way of life is thoroughly established there, so that the revolutionary influence of the home is strong. Parents must be exemplary in social and political life and in building socialism, and always be frugal and courteous, so that their every word and action will be instructive and copied by their sons and daughters.

The social environment has a major educational influence on the children and young people. The content of broadcasts, the press and films must always be revolutionary and a wholesome way of life must be fully established throughout the whole of society, so that everything the students see and hear in society is instructive.

5) CONTINUITY IN PRESCHOOL, SCHOOL AND ADULT EDUCATION

Socialist education must become an all-round, continuous process that educates all the members of society throughout their lives, from the cradle to the grave.

The mind and quality of a man are formed from the cradle, and consolidated and developed throughout his life. Man's understanding of the world grows deeper as the days go by and mankind's knowledge and experience are continually being enriched. In order to train every member of society as a communist equipped with a revolutionary world outlook and sound scientific and technical knowledge, it is essential to educate everyone without interruption from childhood through to old age.

The proper way of educating all members of society throughout their lives is to combine and provide continuity to preschool, school and adult education.

Preschool, school and adult education are successive stages of education which correspond to the stages of growth, and make up a continuous educational process.

Preschool education is the first period of human education. Since a person's ideology is formed and his intellectual faculties are developed from early childhood, it is important to give him proper education and implant good habits in him at a tender age.

In preschool education the main stress should be placed on laying the foundations for school education. At kindergarten, while emphasizing revolutionary ideological and moral education, the children should be given proper education according to their mental development, and careful attention should be paid to raising their cultural levels and strengthening them physically. It is particularly important to give a year of compulsory preschool education of a high level of quality in order to prepare the children properly for school.

Kindergarten education should be matched to the psychology of the children through a proper combination of various forms and methods such as lessons using visual aids and demonstration and teaching by songs, dances and games.

At school, one is educated during the most important period of one's life. It is in one's childhood and youth days that one's outlook is formed and that inquiry and cognition are most active while the body is developing fast. Therefore, school education has a decisive bearing on the establishment of a person's outlook and the formation of his personality.

The fundamental task of school education is to bring up all the members of the younger generation to be revolutionaries armed with a revolutionary world outlook and a knowledge of modern science and technology. Through secondary school education the young people should be moulded into men with the broad basis of a revolutionary outlook and good general knowledge of a secondary school standard, while in higher education, training should be provided to make them revolutionary workers who are fully equipped with a revolutionary world outlook and well-versed in modern science and technology.

Adult education is the education of the working people who are actually engaged in socialist construction. It is of great significance in consolidating and developing their revolutionary world outlook and

continually raising their level of general knowledge and technical and cultural standards.

A man's ideological consciousness is not immutable; it can change according to the conditions and environment. Science and technology do not stand still, they are advancing all the time. Even those who, at school, have established a revolutionary outlook and reached a high scientific and technological level, cannot consolidate and develop their revolutionary world outlook and cannot keep abreast of the developing situation, unless they continue to receive education. Therefore, adult education should be promoted to consolidate and develop what was achieved during school education and to continue to raise cultural and technical standards to conform with the latest developments.

Adult education deals with working people whose level of general knowledge and technical and cultural standards vary. In our country today adult education embraces those who were unable to receive regular schooling in the past but have attained approximately the educational level of the middle-school leaver through the adult education programme and those who have received secondary education at regular schools, up to and including university graduates.

In order to improve adult education it is necessary to set up a variety of adult education centres to suit the specific needs of the working people of different intellectual levels, so that all of them can study in educational institutions that suit their level.

Close attention should also be paid to educating cadres to meet the demands of the developing situation. While passing them through various refresher courses according to a plan, we should make sure that they attend Saturday studies and Wednesday lectures without fail and put in two hours' regular study every day.

We must see that under the slogan of "The Party, the people and the army must all study!" a revolutionary habit of study is established throughout the whole nation and that every member of society, young and old, studies and studies hard.

4. THE SOCIALIST EDUCATION SYSTEM IN OUR COUNTRY

Socialist education can only be successful when it is based on an advanced system of education that accords with the nature of socialist society. The socialist education system in our country constitutes a basic guarantee for applying the fundamental principles of socialist pedagogy in education and achieving the objective of socialist education.

The historical roots of our socialist education system were struck during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. In those days, we set out a revolutionary education policy based on the Juche idea and, in pursuance of this, used unique methods in conducting educational work. In the course of this, we gained valuable experience in training revolutionaries and established our Party's glorious traditions of revolutionary education. The new system of education created during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle is the prototype for our country's socialist education system.

After liberation, in the period of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution, we abolished the Japanese imperialist colonial enslavement education and set up a people-oriented, democratic education system, as part of the social and economic reforms for building a new country. The democratic education system was further consolidated as the revolution and construction progressed and it gradually developed into a socialist education system. Upon completion of the socialist revolution and with the full-scale promotion of socialist construction, the system, content and method of education were adjusted to suit the requirements of socialist society and so the socialist education system became fully established.

Our socialist education system is a revolutionary system which serves the revolutionary cause of the working class, the cause of

building socialism and communism; it is a most people-oriented education system under which the state bears full responsibility for providing everyone with the opportunity to learn.

We should further consolidate, develop and perfect our socialist education system, the advantages and vitality of which have now been proved beyond dispute.

1) THE SYSTEM OF UNIVERSAL COMPULSORY EDUCATION

The socialist education system is essentially universal and compulsory. Socialist education is education for everyone that is aimed at training not just a small section of society but all its members as communists. In our society everyone has the right to be educated and is obliged to study. Our Party and state's education policy, such as the education system, the distribution of educational institutions and the introduction of free education, is based entirely on the principle of education for all.

The fundamental aspect of compulsory education is schooling.

Within a short time after liberation, we set up a large number of schools of all levels ranging from primary schools to colleges and universities and established a well-regulated democratic education system and, on this basis, introduced universal compulsory education stage by stage as the revolution and construction advanced and the country's economic foundations were consolidated. Universal compulsory primary education was introduced in 1956, compulsory secondary education in 1958 and then nine-year compulsory technical education in 1967. Since 1972 compulsory 11-year education has been in force, and this is made up of one year of compulsory preschool education and ten years of compulsory education at school.

Universal 11-year education is compulsory and free, and it provides a complete general secondary education to all members of the younger generation up until they reach a working age. It is based on a scientific

system of education and is the most thoroughgoing free education, combining a high level of general and technical education.

Our Party pursues the policy of making it compulsory for all the working people to study under some kind of education system, while giving full-term compulsory education to the younger generation at regular schools.

Our Party has established various systems of study-while-you-work alongside the regular education system, and run those systems with success to ensure that not only the children of school age but all the working people without exception study. In accordance with the wise policy of the Party all the working people, including the adults who were denied access to learning in the old exploiter society, can now be educated systematically, and everyone has attained the cultural and technical standards of a middle-school leaver or above. In our country today, under the guidance of the Party and the state, all the working people make it a rule to study to improve their cultural and technical, political and theoretical levels.

The system of universal compulsory education should be further developed and perfected in keeping with the inevitable demands of building socialism and communism.

To make this system complete, compulsory higher education should be introduced in the future on the basis of consolidating even further the system of universal 11-year education now in force.

In order to eliminate the distinctions between mental and physical labour and build a communist society, it is necessary to improve considerably the cultural and technical levels of all members of society and make everyone an intellectual. Making the whole society intellectual can only be achieved when everyone in society studies at some kind of institution of higher education. For this, higher education, too, should be made compulsory. It is only by making higher education compulsory that the system of universal compulsory education, as a socialist education system, will become complete.

For the present we should make preparations for the introduction of compulsory higher education at the same time as striving to make a

success of universal 11-year compulsory education. And at some time in the future, we should make a big increase to the number of institutions of higher education and gradually move towards the introduction of compulsory higher education. In expanding the system of higher education, the main accent should be on the expansion and development of the study-while-you-work system. Then we should ensure that higher education is given to all the young people once they have completed their 11-year education, without adversely affecting the labour efforts in socialist construction.

In order to make universal education more successful, the educational institutions should be distributed rationally over the regions. This is of great significance in promoting the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions nationwide, reducing the distinctions between town and country areas and developing all the regions in a balanced way.

Educational institutions should be rationally distributed between urban and rural communities and between industrial and agricultural zones by considering the regional characteristics and the general balance. Institutions of higher education should be distributed on the principle of meeting state demands for cadres and setting up a comprehensive training base in every province.

It is important to arrange the composition of the system of higher education rationally according to the sciences. On the basis of an accurate calculation of state demands for cadres at any given moment, universities and colleges and faculties and courses should be established by the sciences, and the size of student intake determined accurately. In particular, with the progress of socialist and communist construction and the great development of natural science and technology, the share of natural science and engineering should be markedly greater than that of the liberal arts.

2) THE SYSTEM OF UNIVERSAL FREE EDUCATION

Compulsory education can only become a reality when it is free.

Compulsory education that is not free is never compulsory in practice. The fundamental distinction between the compulsory education in socialist society and the so-called “compulsory education” in capitalist society lies in the fact that education costs are borne by the socialist state, which actually provides the people with the right and freedom to study. State-financed universal free education is possible only in socialist society where the means of production and educational facilities are owned by the state and the people and the interests of the state and the people in education coincide with each other.

The most comprehensive free education is ensured in our country on the principle that the state takes full responsibility for educating the people.

Immediately after liberation, even though our country’s economy was in severe difficulties, we took measures to exempt the children of poor families from school fees and provide the students at specialized schools and universities with state grants. In the postwar years universal compulsory primary education and universal compulsory secondary education became free. In 1959 state-financed universal free education was introduced at all the educational institutions in our country.

Now we offer universal 11-year compulsory education entirely free of charge and give free education to all the children and students who study at educational institutions of all levels from kindergartens to institutions of higher learning. Not only school education but also all forms of social education are free, and adult education for cadres and working people is also given at state expense. The proportion of our budget devoted to education is very high, and is increasing every year.

Our system of state-financed universal free education is fully guaranteed by the people-oriented policy of our Party and state which stint nothing for the education of the younger generation and the training of cadres and also by our ever-expanding independent economy.

With the development of education and the consolidation of the country's economy, the state should improve the educational institutions and facilities, supply all pupils and students with free textbooks and school equipment and even bear the cost of the students' collective hostel life.

3) THE STUDY-WHILE-YOU-WORK SYSTEM

The study-while-you-work system is a superior education system which enables working people in the different areas of socialist construction to study at some educational institution while they continue with their productive activities, their own duties.

Besides the regular system of education, our Party has set up a system of part-time education on the principle of providing education not only for the younger generation but also for the workers, peasants and other sections of the working people, in fact everyone without exception, and has steadily developed it to meet our present needs. Today, this system of education takes such forms as working people's senior middle schools, factory higher specialized schools, factory colleges, correspondence and evening courses and the regular system of study for officials and working people.

This education system makes it possible for the working people to continue studying without leaving their posts in socialist construction, which makes a success of education for all.

The regular education system on its own is not enough to provide education for all, since there are working people who never had the opportunity to learn in the old exploiter society; the regular education system is limited in its scale and length, and educational work and socialist construction need to move ahead simultaneously. The study-while-you-work system of education, along with the normal education system, provides an opportunity for all our people to learn and makes it possible to give continuous schooling to everyone while pushing ahead with socialist construction. In our country today there is

no one who is not educated and nobody abandons his studies half-finished; everyone continues studying throughout his life. Herein the correctness of our Party's education policy of developing the full-time and the part-time systems of education simultaneously can be identified, and one of the great advantages of the part-time system of education is also evident.

The study-while-you-work system makes it possible to train large numbers of able officials equipped with a firm revolutionary world outlook and well-versed in theory and practice, and it closely combines education with socialist construction.

Those studying under the part-time education system are student-producers and working officials. Mainly engaged in practical activities, they study theory in compliance with the urgent needs of revolutionary practice, and then apply the theory they have learned to the practice of socialist construction. For them, study and practical activities are an integrated whole. The part-time education system is in full accordance with basic socialist pedagogic principles, and it is a very effective way of bringing up the able revolutionary workers who are needed in socialist and communist society.

As almost all the part-time schools are attached to regular educational institutions and production enterprises, teachers, education facilities and proper conditions for experiments and practical training are readily available. Besides, the part-time system of education does not affect the manpower situation in socialist construction, for it enables the workers to study without halting their productive labour.

We should allow the study-while-you-work system to display its full superiority and develop it to meet the demands of the changing situation.

Now that universal 11-year education has been established, the working people's senior middle school will soon become unnecessary, and the system of higher education and regular study system of cadres and working people will in the future become the basic part-time

education system. In order to offer higher education to all members of society in accordance with the Party's policy for making the whole society intellectual, it is necessary to continue to expand and improve the part-time system of higher education. In particular, factory colleges should be further expanded, the education there improved and farm colleges set up in the rural areas to give higher education to rural officials and agricultural workers.

4) THE STATE SYSTEM OF BRINGING UP AND EDUCATING CHILDREN

In order to bring up children to be masters of society and communist builders of the future, they should be raised and educated collectively in modern surroundings from early childhood. If children are brought up collectively, they become accustomed to an organizational and disciplined life and develop collectivist ideas and communist moral qualities from childhood, and this is a great help to their mental and physical development.

Our Party and the Government of the Republic have always devoted a great deal of effort to the work of bringing up children under public care. After liberation we set up nurseries and kindergartens in towns, at factories, enterprises and state farms and ran them at great cost to the state, and thus we established a system of bringing up and educating children under public care. Even in the difficult circumstances of the Fatherland Liberation War, bringing up children under public care was still continued, and such great measures as setting up large numbers of baby homes and orphanages and raising war orphans were adopted. After the foundations of an independent national economy had been laid and the socialist system established in the postwar years, the work of nursing and educating the children at state expense got under way in earnest. With the planned investment of state funds and through a movement that involved the whole of society, numerous modern nurseries and kindergartens were built throughout

the town and country' areas and their management was systematically improved.

This led to the establishment in our country of a solid socialist system of nursing and educating children, under which all preschool children were brought up collectively at nurseries and kindergartens at state and public expense.

Our state system of bringing up and educating children is the most progressive of any such system, embodying the communist principles of child-rearing.

Bringing up children collectively under public care is an important communist policy. Socialist and communist society is a society based on collectivism, and collective education is the basic form of training communists. Only by nursing and educating children collectively in social surroundings is it possible to bring them up to be people with truly communist qualities.

That the state and society bear the costs of nursing and educating children is also based on communist principles. In our country the children are educated and brought up at state and public expense, with the result that all the children are equally entitled to all state and social benefits, irrespective of their parents' occupations and the quantity and quality of their labour.

The state system of nursing and educating children should be consolidated and developed still further.

The institutions for bringing up and educating children should be further modernized and managed properly, and the standard of nursing and educating children should be raised steadily on the basis of socialist pedagogy. In order to bring up and educate the children better and enable women to take part in public life, many weekly and monthly nurseries and kindergartens should be gradually established.

Supply services for the nurseries and kindergartens should be improved. A well-regulated state system of supply should be established and the foodstuffs, toys, teaching aids and furnishings, medicines and nursing facilities that are needed for bringing up and educating children should be supplied in sufficient quantities.

5. THE DUTY AND ROLE OF EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS; GUIDANCE AND ASSISTANCE TO EDUCATION

Educational work in socialist society is an honourable and important revolutionary task assigned to the educational institutions and educationalists. In socialist society educational work is Party and state work and the concern of the whole of society. For socialist education to run smoothly, the functions of educational institutions and the part educational workers play should be enhanced and Party guidance, state support and social assistance in educational work should be carried out in full.

1) THE MISSION AND DUTY OF SCHOOLS

In socialist society, the school is the base for revolutionary training and the centre of the cultural revolution. Through its work the school contributes to the ideological and cultural revolutions.

The mission of the school in socialist society is to help the younger generation grow up to be communist and produce cadres according to the fundamental principle of socialist pedagogy.

Bringing up the younger generation to be communist is a project for the everlasting prosperity of our country. The younger generation represents the future of our country and our children are heirs to the revolutionary cause. Ultimately, the future of the country and the revolution depends on how the younger generation is brought up.

Training cadres is a decisive factor in promoting the revolution and construction. It is they who will decide everything. Without cadres who are well prepared politically and ideologically, as well as

technically and practically, we cannot solve the difficult problems that arise in building a new society, nor can we ensure a rapid development of the economy, culture, science and technology.

School should make an active contribution to the cause of socialism and communism by working efficiently to bring up the younger generation to be communist and to train cadres.

In order to discharge its mission in full, the school must first organize and conduct education administration properly.

A fundamental aspect of education administration is to ensure that the work of educating the students goes through precisely the required processes of pedagogy.

The first process of pedagogy is the preparation of the education programme. Organs of education administration and institutions of higher learning should draw up a good education programme based on the basic principles of socialist pedagogy and in conformity with the demands of our revolution and the actual situation in our country and with the development of the ideological consciousness of the people and the patterns of learning in science and engineering and put it into effect.

Education administration at the schools should give guidance to the teachers so that they make adequate preparations for teaching. The cardinal point in preparing to teach is to draw up a good plan. Education administration at the schools should always check the teachers' personal plans without fail and help them to complete them through collective discussion. When teaching new subjects and giving lectures on new matters, model lectures or demonstration lectures should always be arranged.

Education administration at the schools should guide the teachers so that they cover the whole education programme.

The key problem in guiding teaching is to maintain both political and ideological principles and scientific accuracy. Education administration should see to it that the teachers establish Juche thoroughly in their instruction and base the lessons strictly on Party policy and impart to the students working knowledge that will be useful for the revolution and

construction. In addition, the latest scientific and technological breakthroughs should be introduced promptly to enrich the content of the lessons and to steadily raise academic levels.

Education administration should guide the teachers so that they improve their methods and use every teaching method that is envisaged in the schedule including lectures, discussions, experiments, practice and essay writing.

Education administration should regularly examine and take note of how much the students have digested of the subjects they have been taught and organize work for improving their academic performance.

Putting school work on a regular basis and managing it according to regulations is an important task of education administration.

This means that educational work should be conducted in conformity with the requirements of scientifically-arranged pedagogical processes and that the revolutionary system and discipline should be established at school.

A scientific system of education administrative guidance should be established at the schools; education should be geared towards pedagogical requirements; and the whole work of the school education administration from the drawing up of educational plans to their implementation, should be organized and guided in a coordinated manner.

Strict discipline must be established in schools so that the education programme is carried out without fail. The proper execution of the education programme is a task assigned to the schools by law and the most important educational discipline. The school should establish the revolutionary discipline of implementing the education programme to the letter and without question and thoroughly carry out the curriculum and syllabuses.

Schools should guide the extracurricular activities and political and organizational life of the students in a responsible manner.

In socialist society the school is entirely responsible for the education of the students. That is why the school should be responsible not only for teaching but also for the students' extracurricular activities and should organize and guide properly not only the students' studies

but also their organizational life and social and political activities.

Both the educational environment and the management at schools should be good.

A good educational environment and good management are important factors in discharging the mission and role of the school as the organ of ideological education and the base of the cultural revolution; they are also important in training the students to be good workers who are educated and enlightened enough to manage the economic life of the country carefully.

The educational environment at school should befit an organ of the ideological revolution and it must be conducive to learning; it should also contribute to cultivating Party loyalty in the students, to making them understand the correctness and vitality of Party policy and to increasing their revolutionary consciousness. Moreover, schools should be improved in such a way as to help the students to consolidate what they have learned and to understand the realities of the country.

The school should be built up as the base of the cultural revolution and should be managed carefully. In school, classrooms, study rooms, laboratories and all other facilities should be maintained spick and span, and a mass-based management system should be established so that all the teaching staff and students play the part of master in school management.

2) THE POSITION AND ROLE OF TEACHERS

Teachers are in direct charge of educational work. In our society they are career revolutionaries who bring up the members of the younger generation as heirs to the revolution and as communists. The quality of the young people, heirs to the revolution and the future of the country, depends on how well the teachers fulfil their honourable mission. Teachers are responsible to the Party and the revolution for the future of the country.

The primary duty of a teacher is to teach well. Teaching is also his primary revolutionary duty. Teachers must teach the students well and, at the same time, guide them responsibly in their out-of-school studies and activities.

In order to educate the younger generation properly, teachers must themselves acquire revolutionary and working-class traits.

Unless teachers acquire revolutionary and working-class qualities, they cannot imbue in their students revolutionary and working-class qualities; and unless they become communist themselves, they cannot train their students to be communists.

The basic way of making teachers into revolutionaries is to improve their activities in the political organizations. Teachers should take a more active part in Party and working people's organizations and in particular intensify criticism.

Teachers must steadily temper themselves through practical revolutionary activities. Teaching is their major practical activity. They should put all their talents and energies into education and, in the course of this, temper themselves politically and ideologically. They should go among the workers and farmers to conduct their social and political activities and spread scientific and technological knowledge among them while learning from them.

Teachers must steadily improve their qualifications.

The qualifications of the teachers decide the quality of education. To teach well, teachers must not only be steadfast politically and ideologically but also have good scientific and theoretical qualifications. You must know ten times more than you teach.

Teachers must have a full understanding of both Party policy and their own speciality. They should also have some knowledge of a variety of other fields, including elementary science, be acquainted with domestic and international affairs, the situation in our country and educational theory and methods. University teachers must hold academic degrees in their subject, and teachers in general education should all be qualified.

In order to improve their qualifications, teachers must establish the

revolutionary habit of study. All teachers must study regularly and hard and read a great deal.

Organization and guidance must be strengthened in order to improve the teachers' qualifications. Model and demonstration lectures, scientific discussion and meetings to exchange experience with others should be conducted frequently, and state examinations held regularly to test and judge the qualifications of the teachers.

In order to bring up the students to be communist revolutionaries, the role of LSWY and CU instructors at school should be enhanced.

LSWY and CU instructors at school must directly organize and guide the lives of the students and children in the LSWY and CU and train and protect them politically. They should also be responsible educators who guide the activities of students and pupils after school hours.

The role of nursery school and kindergarten teachers should be enhanced.

Nursery school and kindergarten teachers bring up and educate children under social care. They should work in a communist way and prepare the little children for school.

Teacher training should be improved.

A well-regulated system should be established to train teachers and priority given to teacher training. Teacher-training centres such as universities of education and teacher-training colleges are "breeding stations" for the education of the younger generation. It is only when teacher-training centres educate their students proficiently that they can produce excellent teachers who are prepared politically and ideologically, scientifically and technically; only then can all the children and students be brought up as able revolutionaries. Promising young men and women should be selected and admitted to universities of education and teacher-training colleges, and the level of teaching raised decisively there.

Teacher-training institutions must also pay close attention to training school LSWY and CU instructors and nursery and kindergarten teachers.

Teachers on the job should attend frequent refresher courses. A system should be established to re-educate the teachers according to a plan so that their qualifications always match the needs at the times. Short courses should be run regularly, to ensure uniformity in teaching and to raise the quality of teaching steadily.

3) PARTY GUIDANCE IN EDUCATION

Strengthening Party guidance in education is a decisive guarantee for developing socialist education fully into a Party and working-class education and for solving all the problems that arise in educational work.

Party guidance in education is, in essence, guidance based on politics, political guidance. The central task of Party guidance in education is to fully apply the fundamental principles of socialist pedagogy in educational work and to control and guide educational work properly, so that the Party's education policy is implemented correctly.

Party organizations must control and guide education in schools in particular. The school is the basic unit of education. Party organizations must always keep themselves informed of the work of schools and guide them so that their education meets Party requirements and suits the interests of the revolution.

Party organizations must offer proper guidance to the organs of education administration. The Party's education policy is put into effect by these organs. Party organizations should guide them to play a greater part in implementing the Party's education policy and strengthening state guidance of education.

The teaching staff must be strengthened, and the work with teachers must be improved.

Party organizations must reinforce the teaching staff with good people who stand steadfastly by the Party's monolithic ideology and adhere to a solid working-class position and hold high academic

qualifications. There must be no one among the teachers who has not accepted the Party's monolithic ideological system.

Party organizations must exert tighter control over the political and organizational life of the teachers and work hard on their ideological education. In this way, they will guide all teachers to become revolutionary and working-class and to improve their academic qualifications and show great revolutionary enthusiasm and creative activity in educating the younger generation.

Work with the students must be done well.

The main revolutionary task that students are given is to study. Party organizations should guide students to treat their studies as their primary revolutionary task and to work hard at them. A revolutionary habit of study must be established, particularly among university students. Thus, all of them will acquire a full knowledge of their speciality, master at least one foreign language and become fully qualified as cadres before they graduate.

Party organizations must give responsible guidance in the organizational and ideological life of the students and direct great efforts to their political education and organizational tempering.

Party organizations must direct school LSWY and CU organizations to do their work satisfactorily. They should appoint good LSWY and CU instructors to the school and always educate them well. They must also see that LSWY organizations at all levels direct their main efforts towards working with schoolchildren and students, and must offer better guidance to school LSWY and CU organizations.

Party organizations must control the student enrolment at universities strictly in accordance with Party and working-class principles. Institutions of higher education must admit young people who have completed secondary education and have been tempered through work or in the army, are fully prepared ideologically to serve the Party and the revolution and are good at their studies.

In order to improve Party guidance in higher education, Party committees at universities must play a bigger part.

Institutions of higher learning have large numbers of teachers and

students who are Party members, and there are Party organizations at faculties and departments and among students. These institutions organize and carry out all kinds of education administration independently, starting with drawing up the education programme. Therefore, increasing the Party committees' role in the guidance of all their work is a major guarantee for being successful in higher education.

The principal task facing university Party committees is to establish the monolithic ideological system of the Party among the teachers and students and to train all the students to be able cadres and fine builders of communism, as required by the Party. These Party committees should organize the implementation of the Party's education policy responsibly and discuss every major university problem collectively, adopt sound measures and implement them. The Party committees must consolidate their own and the LSWY organizations at universities, increase their role and always control and guide the organizational and ideological life of the teachers and students.

4) STATE SUPPORT AND SOCIAL ASSISTANCE IN EDUCATION

The material needs of socialist education, which enables all members of society to study, are indeed enormous. Also, socialist education requires modern facilities. It is only when a state that is based on a strong independent socialist economy takes the responsibility to support education that the tremendous material needs of education can be met and modern facilities provided.

The state must steadily increase its investment in education and make adequate provision for educational needs.

The state must give priority to building schools to cope with the increasing number of students and the requirements of the developing situation and build good school laboratories and practical training centres. It must also provide ample textbooks, school equipment,

teaching aids and furniture, and continue to improve and modernize them. It should improve those centres that produce education equipment and send them supplies on a planned basis.

The state must set up good social educational establishments. It must build many modern social educational establishments, including students and children's halls and CU camps.

In socialist society all members of society must play their part in education and the whole of society must offer active support. In socialist society all working people should be educators of the young and help in education.

The working people, who are the parents, should always guide and help their sons and daughters in their studies and become involved in the social education of all the children and young people.

We should launch a widespread campaign to mobilize the support of the whole of society in laying down material foundations for schools. All factories, other enterprises and cooperative farms should form supporters' organizations to give great manpower and material aid to the schools in the neighbourhood. Publishing houses, factories and other enterprises must send new books, machinery and equipment to the schools on a preferential basis, when these are needed for educational purposes.

* * *

It is the sacred and honourable revolutionary duty of communists to run education properly. For good education is an important guarantee for the victory of the revolution and promises a brilliant future for our prospering homeland. We should develop socialist education and take it to new heights on the basis of the successes already achieved in educational work.

We should train all the members of the younger generation to be dependable builders of communism by educating them well, to make

them fitting heirs to our revolution. We should bring about a turn in training our own officials to meet the demands of the developing situation and train more able people to serve the revolution and construction. We should establish the revolutionary habit of study across the nation and lead all the members of society to work while studying and study while working so that their cultural and technical attainments steadily improve.

Our Party's education policy has been tried and found to be correct beyond all doubt. We will carry through the *Theses on Socialist Education* which embodies the Party's education policy, and thus achieve still greater success in socialist education.

ON THE FULL IMPLEMENTATION OF THE *THESES ON SOCIALIST EDUCATION*

**Concluding Speech at the 14th Plenary
Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee
of the Workers' Party of Korea**

September 7, 1977

The *Theses on Socialist Education*, published at this meeting, throws light both on current practices in education and on innovations that are to be introduced. I would like to make a few brief remarks on just some of the questions relating to its implementation.

First of all, we should coordinate preschool, school and adult education.

The *Theses on Socialist Education* makes a point of coordinating preschool, school and adult education so that all the people receive education throughout their lives. In order to train every member of society to be of a communist type equipped with the revolutionary world outlook and with considerable scientific and technical knowledge, it is necessary to educate them all from childhood until the day they die.

Preschool education is the first stage of education. It plays a major role in forming a man's world outlook and has a great influence on his intellectual development.

In this country preschool education is provided in the main at kindergarten. Therefore, the work there should be improved to give a good upbringing to the children below school age.

In educating children below school age, those who remain at home without attending kindergarten pose a problem. Party organizations and educational institutions should study the question of educating these children and take appropriate steps.

Schooling is the basis of all education. Only when children and adolescents are properly trained during secondary and higher education can they be raised as communist revolutionaries equipped with a revolutionary world outlook and a full knowledge of science and technology. Therefore, we should increase the sense of responsibility and role of education workers so that they teach well.

Education does not end after preschool and school education. Even after leaving school, people should still receive continuous education.

Adult education is as important as preschool and school education. Even after graduating from university and going out into society people should continue to receive education. Only then can they devote themselves wholeheartedly to fighting for the Party and the revolution whatever the adversity.

In my experience of working with tens of thousands of people from the time when I began the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle to this day, nearly all of those who turned degenerate were people who neglected to study.

If iron is left outdoors, it will rust and become useless. To prevent this it must be oiled or painted.

Since we are building socialism against a capitalist background, bourgeois reactionary ideas and degenerate culture may infiltrate from outside and all sorts of outdated ideas, including feudal and capitalist ones, may exert a corrosive action domestically. If bourgeois reactionary ideas infiltrating from outside and outdated ideas remaining in the minds of the people are combined, their corrosive action will be still greater. Under such circumstances, if we do not intensify the education of the people to make them thoroughly revolutionary, they may fall prey to degeneracy.

If people dislike studying and hate life in an organization, they will become degenerate.

Even some of those who participated in the anti-Japanese armed struggle became degenerate. They simply went hunting and fishing and did not study or participate in the organizational life of the Party. Even those who have been engaged in the revolutionary struggle for many years should continue to study and be loyal to their Party organizations. Only then will they avoid becoming degenerate and remain sound to the end of their lives and preserve the honour of a revolutionary fighter. Revolutionaries should be faithful to the Party and the leader, to the country and the people till the end of their days. Only then will they retain the respect of the people even after they have died.

A considerable number of university graduates have become corrupt because they did not study properly after going out into society. A man will not always acquire a correct world outlook just because he has graduated from university. At university only the basis of a revolutionary world outlook is laid. So, even after leaving university and becoming a full member of society, one must continue to study and develop one's revolutionary world outlook.

Historical experience shows that anyone who neglects studies and Party life will go astray, whether he is an old revolutionary fighter or a university graduate.

The publication of the *Theses on Socialist Education* is aimed not only at educating the younger generation but also at capturing the ideological and material fortresses of communism through imbuing all the working people with revolutionary and working-class qualities.

We should improve adult education, so that all the working people consolidate and develop their revolutionary world outlook and steadily raise the level of their general knowledge and their levels of culture and skill.

In particular, careful attention should be paid to educating cadres.

At present the revolutionary habit of study has not been properly established among the cadres. It is not the subordinates but the cadres who dislike studying. This is the case with cadres belonging to both central and local authorities; they seem to prefer just driving around in cars.

The cadres are now neglecting their Saturday studies on the pretext of meetings and other things.

As I have always said, studying, too, is a revolutionary task. Therefore, you should attend these study sessions without fail, even if it means that you are unable to deal with some other work on Saturdays. The system of Saturday studies has now been well established, but the cadres do not keep to it faithfully.

Moreover, the system of month-long short courses is not being run properly. This was instituted after the 15th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Central Committee of the Party, and it was made obligatory for all cadres to go to school for one month's study every year. For a few years after this system was established all the cadres without exception attended these courses, but now the courses are not being run regularly, and when they are given, they are restricted in scope. When told to attend, some chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees refuse, saying they cannot possibly do so at the height of the farming season. But as long as there are Party organizations, Party members and government bodies, farming in the province will not go particularly amiss because the provincial Party chief secretary is absent.

Without studying, the cadres cannot keep up with the developing situation nor play their role properly as the leadership personnel of the revolution.

By establishing the revolutionary habit of studying all cadres should become imbued with the revolutionary doctrine of our Party and acquire comprehensive scientific and technical knowledge.

Above all, they should study Party policy harder.

It is only when they study Party policy closely that their political life can continue to flourish and they can advance bravely along the revolutionary road throughout their lives. Only then can they measure everything by the yardstick of Party policy, distinguish right from wrong and propagate its truth.

Since our cadres are failing to study Party policy properly, they do not propagate it well and when they are sent abroad they fail to work without hesitation in conformity with its demands.

All cadres should study Party policy in depth, digest it thoroughly and use it as a strict basis for all their actions and their lives.

Meanwhile, all cadres should have a complete understanding of their own work. For this, they should acquire the latest scientific expertise.

They should attend Saturday studies and Wednesday lectures without fail and go on the month-long courses with enthusiasm. If a whole month is too long, it could be shortened to 20 days or so, but the point is that the courses must still be run.

As far as studying is concerned, no exception can be made for high-ranking officials. The members of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee and officials of the Party Central Committee, Central People's Committee, Administration Council, economic establishments, educational and cultural institutions and all other cadres should study. Under the slogan of "The Party, the people and the army must all study!" all cadres must persevere in their studies and in this way steadily improve their political-theoretical levels and their cultural and technical standards.

Next, the quality of education should be radically improved.

This is an important, common concern of all the branches of education: primary, secondary, higher, general and technological.

Above all, we should bring about a marked improvement in the quality of primary and secondary education.

This requires improving both the universities of education and teacher-training colleges.

These universities and colleges are "breeding stations" for the education of the younger generation. They train teachers, so they can be compared to the breeding stations that hatch chicks; hence, in the *Theses on Socialist Education* I have called them "breeding stations" in simple language.

It is only when such "breeding stations" are improved and the standard of education raised that they can turn out many excellent teachers, and this will make it possible to improve the quality of primary and secondary education markedly.

If we do not train teachers efficiently, this will have serious

consequences on educational work. Before the 15th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Party Central Committee, education was in an extremely deplorable state. At the time there were many teachers and officials in the field who did not adhere to a firm working-class stand. As a result, they failed to give a sharp working-class edge to education and tended in the main to conduct education of a motley form and nebulous kind, on the borderline between working class and capitalist. At the time one particular teacher speaking from the platform at an education workers' congress preached bourgeois child psychology, saying that we should only teach young children such notions as red and blue, beautiful and ugly and not mix in political and ideological education, revolutionary education. And a leading official in the field of primary and secondary education applauded, rather than hitting out at him. Because the workers in the education field were in this state at the time, it was inevitable that they would be unable to give education a working-class edge, and instead they taught a motley form.

In our experience, people should be given revolutionary education from their childhood. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle we gave revolutionary education to the members of the Children's Corps in the guerrilla zones. We taught them that the Japanese villains, landowners and capitalists were our enemies and that they should learn from the People's Revolutionary Army and fight after their fashion in order to crush the Japanese, landowners and capitalists and build a decent society in our country. We even taught them how to beat the Japanese. Thus, these members of the Children's Corps grew up to become ardent revolutionaries.

If we fail to give a working-class edge to teaching and instead offer a motley education, people may become motley and not care who they earn their daily bread from—whether from the capitalists or the working class—and society may become a mixture of capitalism and socialism, neither one thing nor the other. Therefore, after the 15th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Party Central Committee we concentrated great efforts on strengthening the ranks of education workers and giving a working-class edge to educational work.

Nowadays, all the foreigners who visit our country express great admiration for the excellent way in which we raise our younger generation.

One President who visited us a short time ago was greatly touched to see our children and young people lining his route to welcome him and performing the mass gymnastic display *Song of Korea*. In Korea, he said, the children and young people were very well educated: with a younger generation such as this, one need have no fear of anything. The strength of Korea is indeed invincible, he added. Then he asked me how we had brought them up and given them such organization and discipline to allow them to make such high ideological and artistic accomplishments. So I told him that it was essential to educate them properly and not give them a motley mixture of capitalism and socialism.

I have heard that in some countries now, if they are to mobilize people to welcome a foreign delegation, they have to give them a day's pay. Things will turn out like this if a motley education is offered with no working-class edge.

We should never rest content with the successes we have achieved in the field of education, but continue to improve teacher training.

Since the 15th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Party Central Committee I have taken every opportunity to stress the need to improve it.

However, the Science and Education Department of the Party Central Committee and the provincial Party committees have failed to take any decisive steps in this direction. The Party has placed the universities of education and teacher-training colleges entirely in the hands of the provincial Party committees, but none of the chief secretaries and secretaries in charge of education has ever given a lecture at these universities. Some officials plead a lack of knowledge for failing to deliver a lecture at the universities. But this does not stand to reason.

Party organizations should totally abandon the practice of ignoring teacher training and intensify their guidance of the universities of education and teacher-training colleges.

The provincial Party committees must reinforce the teaching staffs at these universities and colleges and improve their ideological education and encourage them to take a more active part in the Party organizations, so that they teach in accordance with the requirements of the *Theses on Socialist Education*.

The provincial Party committees must provide these universities and colleges with ample laboratory and practical training facilities to improve teaching by means of visual aids and laboratory and practical training.

The proper combination of school and social education is very important in raising the quality of primary and secondary education.

At present no deviation is evident in our social education. Good films are shown; TV broadcasts are wholesome; there is nothing decadent, like vulgar jazz dancing and loafing about, as in other countries.

But at present there is something wrong with the organization of the schoolchildren's extracurricular activities. When they come home from school, they play football out in the streets or make mischief, because their parents are out at work.

The schoolchildren's extracurricular activities should be properly organized so as to stop them making mischief.

To this end, it is necessary to build pleasant children's parks everywhere. If many children's parks are built and provided with various facilities, the pupils will be able to go and play there and carry on a variety of out-of-school activities. It would be a good idea to assign Children's Union instructors to these parks to guide the children's extracurricular activities.

Many libraries for schoolchildren should be built and run properly.

Then, it will be possible to cultivate a love of reading in the pupils from childhood and thereby educate them.

At present, some personnel do not know how libraries should be managed, although it is not a very difficult task. In Pyongyang there are the Central Library and district and school libraries and all that is required is to run them properly. There is no need to build big, local libraries. Simply taking a few rooms of a house and installing books in them will serve the purpose.

In order to run the libraries well the state must provide them with plenty of books. However well a library may be built, if it has no books worth reading, the schoolchildren will not go there. Therefore, the state must publish a lot of books that will help in the education of the children and supply them to the libraries.

In order to run the libraries properly, it would also be a good idea to make pupils write synopses of the books they have read on a few sheets of paper and submit them together with the books when they return them to the libraries. This will put an end to the practice of returning books borrowed from the libraries without reading them, and enable the children to learn how to write a composition. Where necessary, pupils' libraries and schoolchildren's halls must be built.

It is of greater benefit to use materials provided by the state to build pupils' libraries or schoolchildren's halls rather than noodle houses. It is no less important to build them than it is to build schools.

Many scientific films should be produced and shown to the schoolchildren and many science lectures given. A scientific film show will provide them with a lot of knowledge about science. It would be a good idea, when schoolchildren are assembled in the cinema, for a teacher, well-prepared for the occasion, to give a lecture on science for about 30 minutes before the film is shown.

Good conditions should be provided for home education.

The home is a cell of society and home education is a form of social education.

Yet, there is now a snag in home education. Parents are not educating their sons and daughters, not because they do not want to, but because of a lack of time. They come home from work so late at night that they have no chance to talk to their children. Some working women are being compelled to do their job until eleven o'clock at night and to work even on Sundays. Some working mothers are even being mobilized in social efforts. Such being the case they have no time to look after their children and their homes.

In future sufficient time and proper conditions should be provided for parents to educate their sons and daughters.

On weekdays, except on Saturdays when they attend studies, the working women must be allowed to leave work unfailingly at seven or eight o'clock in the evening. In addition, the practice of mobilizing them for social work on Sundays must be totally eliminated, so that they can take care of their children at home and attend to their housekeeping properly.

Men should also be allowed to rest on Sundays. Those who are under the pressure of work can have a holiday in turn. On Sundays they should rest at home, educating their children, taking a walk with them and attending to their own personal hygiene.

The most important thing in raising the quality of education is to make a decisive improvement in the quality of higher education.

We are now striving to consolidate the material and technical foundations of the country and free the working people from difficult and arduous labour by fulfilling the three major tasks of the technical revolution as set out by the Fifth Party Congress. However, we are prevented from advancing forcefully in our efforts to implement these three major tasks because the qualifications of university graduates are low.

Many university graduates are incapable of managing the economy and ignorant of contemporary trends in scientific development.

Recently the Party Central Committee made an inspection of Kim Chaek University of Technology, the University of Construction and Building Materials and the Pyongyang University of Mechanical Engineering and found that they were in a deplorable state. Graduates from the University of Mechanical Engineering are unable to design a machine properly; they have not made an efficient machine.

Universities are not teaching welding properly, either.

Nowadays welding is essential for both the machine industry and the construction industry. This is an age of welding, so to speak. But graduates from the University of Mechanical Engineering and the University of Construction and Building Materials do not know how to handle a welding machine, nor do they have a clear knowledge of welding-rods. That was why the machine and construction industries

failed to bring about a revolutionary improvement in welding and retarded the fulfilment of the Six-Year Plan to a considerable degree.

The graduates of universities of agriculture are not well qualified either.

Directing agriculture myself since 1973, I have visited cooperative farms frequently, talking and listening to the farmers. I have also studied a lot of advanced farming methods which are being applied in other countries. In the course of this I have developed a farming method that suits our situation.

In our country agriculture is managed on scientific and technical principles in accordance with the Juche farming method. As a result, we harvest a very rich crop every year even under the severe influence of the cold front.

Until recently, however, universities of agriculture were teaching their students outdated farming methods, not the Juche farming method which we have developed.

During my on-the-spot guidance tours of Kangwon and South Hamgyong Provinces last year, I investigated the situation in the rural economy and learned that the graduates from universities of agriculture had neither a clear idea of the Juche farming method nor a good understanding of world trends in agriculture. This led me to suspect that the universities of agriculture were not teaching their students properly, so I had the textbooks of the Wonsan University of Agriculture examined. The investigation showed that these textbooks contained quite a few theories that were contrary to our Party's Juche farming method. This farming method requires that crops should be planted closely and that fertilizer should be applied at a number of different times to suit the biological characteristics of the crops. But one textbook in use at the Wonsan University of Agriculture said that close planting should be avoided because it would result in poor air circulation and that the whole amount of fertilizer for the rice crop should be applied by June 25.

When I was visiting North Hamgyong Province in the spring of 1976, I inquired into tobacco cultivation there. I learned that 12 tobacco

plants had been planted per *phyong* and that the yield was barely one ton per hectare. This was too low a yield to permit us to supply the people with sufficient tobacco. Therefore, I told the officials in charge of agriculture in the province to ensure that tobacco was planted closely. Later I studied a variety of information on tobacco cultivation and discovered that in a foreign country a high yield of tobacco was being attained by sowing 30 plants or more per *phyong*. By contrast, the textbook used in our universities of agriculture said that more than 12 tobacco plants sown per *phyong* would cause poor air circulation.

No wonder that the agriculturists who have been educated with such textbooks at these universities are unable to manage agriculture by the Party's Juche farming method.

The failure to improve the quality of higher education in the past was due mainly to poor Party and state guidance and to the senior officials in this field not doing their job properly and failing to exert themselves to implement the Party's education policy.

On the occasion of the 30th anniversary of the establishment of Kim Il Sung University, I addressed the university presidents and the teaching staff, stressing the importance of radically improving the quality of education. However, the senior officials in charge of education neither conveyed the speech to their subordinates nor did they make arrangements to implement the instructions I had given in this speech. These senior officials have idled away their time in their offices, instead of visiting the universities and giving them guidance.

Party organizations at all levels and the senior officials in the field of education should rectify the shortcomings in higher education as soon as possible and radically improve the quality of higher education.

In higher education it must be ensured that the students are carefully taught the latest breakthroughs in natural sciences.

Without finding proper solutions to the scientific and technological problems that arise in the building of socialism through the development of natural sciences, we cannot develop the country's economy nor attain the three major tasks of the technical revolution. Unless we develop natural sciences we cannot capture the material and

technical fortress of communism. Therefore, the institutions of higher learning must teach natural science subjects properly.

In particular, efforts should be made to raise the standards in basic science subjects such as mathematics, physics and biology.

Meanwhile, the students should be made proficient in handling modern machinery and equipment, including automatic control systems, through good teaching in mechanical and automation engineering.

Furthermore, full preparations should be made to introduce compulsory higher education.

We are now confronted with the extremely honourable yet difficult task of making the whole of society intellectual.

Making the whole of society intellectual is an inevitable requirement of socialist and communist construction. We must make every member of society an intellectual so as to eliminate any distinction between mental and physical labour and build a communist society. True, in order to build socialism and communism, the working class, having seized power, must transform society on its own pattern in all spheres—the economy, culture, ideology and morality. But communist society will not arrive simply because we have imbued all the members of society with working-class qualities.

As you all know, communist society is a highly developed, civilized society, the members of which will all work according to their abilities and be provided for according to their needs. Unless people in communist society have high standards of cultural and technological knowledge and morality, they are in no position to run a highly developed, communist society. So, we should work tirelessly to make the whole of society intellectual.

To do this we must provide universal higher education and turn everyone into a fully developed communist whose cultural and technological accomplishments are as high as those of a university graduate.

Higher education for all means that education in institutions of higher learning must be compulsory for every member of society. In other words, it means enforcing universal compulsory higher education.

In our country compulsory higher education is not something in the distant future. Because the country has not yet been reunified, we cannot put it into effect, but if only reunification was achieved it would be easy to enforce compulsory higher education. Even under the present circumstances, in which the country is divided, compulsory higher education is quite feasible as long as we have the Party and the government.

Since we are the first to present the question of compulsory higher education, its introduction will no doubt involve a number of difficult and complex problems. Nevertheless, it should not be treated as a vague notion. When Marx evolved the theory of communism in the last century, people had only a vague idea that it was something that would happen in the distant future. However, afterwards Lenin overthrew the capitalist system in Russia and conducted the socialist revolution, and socialism is now being built in many countries.

When in 1956 we suggested introducing universal compulsory primary education in this country, some people had only a vague idea of what this was. But we introduced it and followed it with universal compulsory secondary education. We have now enforced universal compulsory eleven-year education. Compulsory higher education, too, is not something that will be introduced in the far-distant future. If we put a lot of work into it and show determination, we will be able to effect it in the near future.

While consolidating universal compulsory eleven-year education, we must prepare well for the introduction of compulsory higher education so as to bring that into effect at some future date.

Needless to say, with universal compulsory eleven-year education now lying heavy on our hands, it is hard to introduce compulsory higher education right at this moment. Therefore, it should be introduced gradually county by county and province by province.

It is essential to improve factory colleges, above all else. It is impossible to enforce compulsory higher education simply by expanding regular universities. As there is currently a manpower shortage, we cannot afford to expand the regular universities. So, we

must improve the factory colleges to such an extent that everyone can study while they work.

If the factory colleges are to be improved and managed properly, the education programme should be well prepared and the teachers well qualified. Technicians in the factories and teachers at regular universities can be mobilized to teach at the factory colleges. When instruction in a social science subject is to be given at a factory college, a social science teacher can be invited from a regular university, and when a natural science subject is to be taught, a technician from the factory can give the lecture. If the provincial Party committees and administrative committees were to organize the work properly, the problem of providing teachers for the factory colleges could be solved easily.

At the same time as improving the factory colleges, we should set up a large number of higher specialized schools attached to the factories. In major industrial areas we must establish technical schools alongside senior middle schools so as to give the pupils technical education.

We have now built many automated factories, but the number of associate engineers and assistant engineers working there is low, so university engineering graduates are operating general automatic control panels.

If things were being done properly, such equipment would all be operated by skilled workers. In the future the colleges and higher technical schools should train a large number of skilled workers as well as associate and assistant engineers.

In addition, the state's backing and social support for education must be strengthened.

It is only by doing this and providing schools with laboratories and practical training centres and other educational facilities that we can educate the students in accordance with the principles of socialist pedagogy and bring them up as communist revolutionary workers equipped with working knowledge.

To strengthen state backing and social support for education, first of all, the attitude to education should be corrected.

We must reunify our divided country as soon as possible and build a

socialist and communist society where there is no exploitation and oppression and everyone is comfortably off. To do so, we should educate the younger generation well. We can say that the education of the younger generation is fundamental to deciding the destiny of the nation.

We are now raising 8,600,000 children and students at state expense, giving them free tuition. This is by no means a simple matter. But if we let difficulties frustrate our provision of free education, we will not be able to raise them properly. It is true that if we were to abandon free education and divert the money to the production of consumer goods, we would be able to improve the livelihood of the people a great deal. However, we must not simply spend money on the people's livelihood for the moment without taking into consideration the future prosperity of the country and the nation. Bringing up all the children and students properly is a very important job which paves the way for the prosperity of the country and the nation.

However, our officials now regard education as of secondary importance and show only half-hearted interest in giving state backing and social support to it. That is why the laboratories and practical training centres at institutions of higher education are poor.

The Party, with a view to improving the quality of higher education, has recently decided to use valuable foreign currency to import laboratory and practical training equipment for Kim Il Sung University, Kim Chaek University of Technology, the University of Construction and Building Materials, Pyongyang University of Medicine, and Sariwon University of Agriculture, and the University of Science.

Simply by resolving to do so and getting down to work, we can provide schools with enough good laboratories and practical training centres and other education facilities. As the economic foundations of our country are strong, it is not very difficult to equip schools in this way. If we call upon the working people to make and send to the schools such facilities as they need to educate the younger generation, the workers will provide motorcars, machine tools, and every type of machinery for practical training by conducting a campaign for

increased production. It all depends on how our officials work to develop education.

Once I conducted underground revolutionary work in a farm village. There were two old men in the village. One was very poor and the other well-off. The one who was living in poverty made up his mind to have his children educated and worked hard to ensure that they were all educated. On the other hand, the well-to-do man simply made his children work, without thinking of sending them to school, although he could well afford it.

We did enforce compulsory primary education and then compulsory secondary education, but this was not because we had plenty of funds. We regarded the education of the younger generation as a question affecting the future of the nation and, although we were poor, we were determined to introduce compulsory education.

But some countries have not introduced compulsory education because of the great expense.

All officials must hold a correct view of education and must not fail to provide the material foundations and other amenities for educational establishments of all levels up to universities.

We must take on the responsibility of catering to the material needs of central and local institutions of higher education. The state should take charge of those which are under central authority, and the provincial Party committees, provincial people's committees and provincial administrative committees should look after those in their own area. Of course, the state must provide the local universities with textbooks and such like. However, the provincial authorities should assume the responsibility for furnishing the local universities with facilities for laboratory and practical training and a good educational environment. In the provinces the support organizations for schools should be formed from industrial enterprises and cooperative farms, which must be held responsible for supplying the needs of the schools in their charge.

Industrial enterprises should make it a rule to send to the universities those machines and equipment they produce on an experimental basis.

A long time ago I said that when a new type of machine was made, it should be supplied first to the universities. But now the officials are wont merely to boast about a new machine being made, and never think of offering it to a university.

In future industrial enterprises should send the machines and equipment they produce on an experimental basis to the schools so that they can use them in practical training.

The provincial people's assembly should place educational matters on the agenda of its meetings and solve promptly any problems that arise in educational work.

A nonpermanent committee should be set up under the Education Commission and meet regularly. This committee should be made up of not only officials of the Education Commission but also the senior officials of other commissions and ministries, as well as scientists. Its task should be to discuss questions relating to educational work, including state backing.

Next, the Party's guidance of education should be improved so as to implement the *Theses on Socialist Education*. This is indispensable for rectifying any shortcomings in educational work in good time and developing education in accordance with the requirements of the theses.

All Party organizations should devote themselves to the implementation of the theses, considering this to be an important objective.

In order to improve Party guidance of education, the combined and joint operations of the organizational department, information and publicity department and education department of the Party should be efficiently organized. Socialist education is in essence the work of remoulding people and work with people to foster everyone as a communist revolutionary worker who is fully equipped with a revolutionary world view and considerable scientific and technical knowledge. Therefore, in order to ensure that the *Theses on Socialist Education* is implemented successfully, these departments of the Party should form a triad and take educational work firmly in hand and guide it. Since they deal directly with people, they should naturally conduct

the combined and joint operations together as a triad when guiding educational work.

In particular, the chief secretaries of the provincial, city and county Party committees should not concentrate only on economic work but take educational work firmly in hand and make it a function of their committees. But at present they are showing no concern for education and leaving it entirely to the secretaries in charge of information work or education.

For the purpose of improving educational work I have stressed many times that the members of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee and all other leadership personnel of the Party should visit institutions of higher education to deliver lectures and to settle problems arising in education. However, nobody has ever done this properly.

The provincial, city and county Party committees now have secretaries in charge of ideological and educational work, but they, too, are indifferent to education. Since the leading officials of the provincial, city and county Party committees pay no attention to education, Party policy fails to find its way into the educational institutions promptly and is not carried out effectively.

The chief secretaries of the provincial, city and county Party committees should regard education as an important aspect of Party work and improve their guidance of it.

It is necessary to review the implementation of the *Theses on Socialist Education* properly.

All Party organizations should work all the time to develop in depth the work of implementing the theses.

It would be a good idea, as the current plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee has proposed unanimously, for the 5th of September, the anniversary of the publication of the *Theses on Socialist Education*, to be fixed as Education Day. Students' Day should be abolished, once Education Day has been instituted. Because this country is a "country of education" and a "country of learning" where everyone studies, there is no need for Education Day and

Students' Day to be separate. You should not abolish the Anniversary of the Foundation of the Children's Union simply because Students' Day has been revoked. Since June 6, when the Children's Union was founded, is a historic day, this anniversary should be kept.

Even though Education Day has been instituted by this plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee, you should not simply observe it as just a holiday.

In celebrating Education Day every year, all Party organizations and educational institutions should make it a rule to review the work they have done to implement the *Theses on Socialist Education*. When Education Day comes round, the officials of all Party, government, administrative and economic organs and working people's organizations should review at a high political and ideological level the achievements and shortcomings in the year's efforts to implement the theses and take concrete measures to carry it through. And all officials should resolve to make the theses fully effective.

All Party organizations must see that the whole Party, all the people and the entire army study the *Theses on Socialist Education* in depth and digest it thoroughly. Only then can they discover ways of putting into practice the tasks that are set in it and carry them out one by one.

Not only the Party, administrative and economic bodies and educational institutions, but also the army should study the *Theses on Socialist Education*. The principles of socialist pedagogy are equally applicable to the People's Army. Without these principles soldiers cannot be trained as ardent revolutionaries, as communists. True, the technical subjects taught at universities may differ from those taught in the People's Army. But the principles of socialist pedagogy are the same.

The *Theses on Socialist Education* should be studied persistently over a long period of time rather than hurriedly. All Party organizations should see to it that it is studied tirelessly, step by step.

An intensive study of the theses is particularly important for cadres; otherwise, they will be unable to implement it thoroughly.

After the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*

had been published, our officials did not study it carefully. So, the policies set out in the rural theses were not carried out properly. As the senior officials worked with no clear understanding of the main idea of the rural theses, they did not follow up the completion of the irrigation programme with the work to mechanize farming. In order to make rural mechanization a reality, they should have produced a large number of tractors and carried out land realignment, but they did not take any steps to do this.

Since the implementation of the *Theses on Socialist Education* involves training all members of society to be communist revolutionary workers, it is a more difficult and complex matter than carrying out the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*. Therefore, all cadres should study the education theses even harder, gain a clear idea of its essence and make thorough ideological preparations for implementing it.

The *Theses on Socialist Education* is not an empty theory but a scientific theory that has been verified in practice. We advanced the idea of socialist education a long time ago and have accumulated rich experience and grown in conviction in the course of putting it into practice.

The *Theses on Socialist Education* contains many proposals which have either been translated into reality already in this country or are now being put into effect. So, if the entire Party, the whole country and all the people get down to work, the theses will be put into practice with success.

I hold the firm belief that with the full implementation of the *Theses on Socialist Education* you will develop education and take it onto a higher stage in keeping with the needs of the times.

**ON STRENGTHENING THE CHAPTERS
AND BRANCHES OF CHONGRYON
AND WORKING EFFICIENTLY
WITH THE PEOPLE FROM
ALL WALKS OF LIFE**

**Talk to a Group of Koreans from Japan Present
to Celebrate the 29th Anniversary of the Foundation
of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea
and a Delegation of Workers from Chongryon Chapters**

September 12, 1977

I am very glad to meet you, the members of a group of Koreans from Japan who have come to celebrate the 29th anniversary of the foundation of the Republic and also the members of a delegation of workers from Chongryon chapters, and I extend a warm welcome to you.

I will speak first about the state of socialist economic construction in the homeland.

This year the crops here are good. We were successful in our farming last year, but the results are even better this year. It is probably the first time in the history of our country that crops as excellent as those we have grown this year have been seen.

Many of the world's countries are suffering damage from the drought brought about by the cold front. In particular agriculture has suffered in those countries which have neglected to set up irrigation systems.

This year, the weather in our country too was extremely dry. In spite of this, the homeland has not suffered drought damage from the cold front.

In the homeland many irrigation projects have been undertaken in the past and, of late, the five-point policy for harnessing nature and the policy for using underground water have been put forward at plenary meetings of the Central Committee of the Party and a mass campaign has been conducted to complete dry-field irrigation and dig wells. During the dry season this year all the people joined the effort to water the crops. Because we took these effective measures to ward off drought damage, we have been able to raise a good harvest here, without suffering damage even though the spell of dry weather was prolonged. Since the irrigation system in our country is so good, dry weather is actually better for farming.

Some time ago we made an interim review of the farming situation this year, and learned that all the crops, including rice and maize, were promising. Let me dwell on rice as an example. The weight of 1,000 grains of rice was 25 grammes last year, but it is nearly 30 grammes this year. It seems to me that this year we will reach the goal of producing 8.5 million tons of grain which was set by the Party.

In the homeland harvesting will begin in a few days' time. We do have a problem, however, because we are short of rice and maize storehouses to cope with the good crops this year. Probably, we shall have to build more.

It is reported that 1,000 million people are going hungry throughout the world because of the food shortage. In our country, however, there is not a single person who goes without food or is hungry, although the meals are nothing special. If revolutionaries do not go hungry, that is enough. Anyway, how could they eat meat soup at every meal?

Because the reservoirs have not been full of water because of the drought caused by the cold front for the past few years, we have been unable to operate our hydroelectric power stations at full capacity. However, because we have constructed thermal power stations we are now able to meet the demands of the national economy for electricity.

In this way we have averted the effects of the cold front and are continuing with socialist economic construction successfully.

The prospects for foreign trade are also bright.

True, our trade with capitalist countries is not brisk. Although we have produced large quantities of cement, steel and other exportable goods, the capitalist countries are unable to buy them in sufficient quantities because they are experiencing an economic crisis. Some capitalist countries are unwilling to buy our goods and simply ask us to purchase theirs, adopting an unfair attitude towards our country. Recently we had talks with the second Korea-visiting group from the Dietmen's League for the Promotion of Japan-Korea Friendship, and on that occasion the head of their side proposed a trade agreement to our delegation. So, the head of our delegation told him: "It is good to develop trade; we also intend to export our goods; but the Japanese are unfair to us and are unwilling to buy our goods; this attitude is unfriendly; in such circumstances we shall not make a new trade agreement but simply renew the existing ones".

Our trade with the countries of the third world, too, is not being conducted on a wide scale. These countries are unable to trade with us in a big way because they are engaged in economic construction, freed only recently from imperialist colonial subjugation. Needless to say, those of them whose economic foundations are solid do buy small quantities of steel, cement and other similar materials from us.

If we are to develop trade with the capitalist countries, we must manufacture a great deal of those commodities for which their needs are so great that they have no choice but to buy them from us. We must produce and sell a large quantity of magnesia clinker, for instance. This is indispensable for the production of firebricks, but it is now in short supply throughout the world. Many countries, therefore, are in need of it.

Because the deposits of magnesite in our country are inexhaustible, we are able to produce any quantity of magnesia clinker for export. Its price is very high on the world market. That was why I gave magnesite, which is the raw material for magnesia clinker, the name "white gold".

Next year we shall embark on the Second Seven-Year National

Economic Plan, a new long-term plan. Since a draft of it has been discussed by the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee, the next procedure is for the Supreme People's Assembly to discuss it and adopt it as law.

Now, I shall touch on the international situation.

The present era is the age of independence. At present, the countries of the third world and many other nations are demanding independence, and so are the Communist and Workers' Parties of many countries. It is the basic trend of the present age for the people of the world to demand independence and for many countries to follow the path of independence.

Nowadays, the countries of the third world are united on the basis of independence and have joined together to become a powerful anti-imperialist revolutionary force of our times.

At the UN General Assembly last year, the US imperialists faced sharp protests and denunciations because they were opposed to the establishment of a new international economic order which had been proposed by the third world countries.

The imperialists fear the solidarity of the third world and non-aligned countries more than anything else.

The US-led imperialists are pursuing a policy of pitting the third world countries against one another by creating division and antagonism among them, and in particular they are working to prevent the unity of the Arab and African nations.

Although they have won their political independence, the countries of the third world have as yet failed to build their independent national economies. One cannot claim to have gained real independence if one is not self-supporting economically and is dependent on other countries, nor can one have one's say in the international arena. Newly independent countries are experiencing difficulties because they are lacking in national cadres and funds, and these days they are suffering a food crisis due to the crop failure brought about by the cold front.

Taking advantage of these economic difficulties the newly independent countries are experiencing, the imperialists are using

money and food in their schemes to divide and disunite third world countries and alienate them from each other.

In order to smash the imperialists' manoeuvres for division, alienation and disunity, the third world and non-aligned countries must strengthen their unity and cooperation. In the joint statement we published last August when the President of Yugoslavia visited our country, we stressed the need for the non-aligned and other developing countries to achieve wide-scale unity.

We intend to strengthen further the unity of the newly-emergent countries through the forthcoming international seminar on the Juche idea which is to be held in our country.

This seminar will be attended by many delegations and delegates from more than 70 countries and international organizations. Since the members of these delegations and the delegates are information workers, it is important to provide them with an ideological weapon for unity. We are endeavouring to strengthen unity with the progressive people throughout the world under the slogan of solidarity based on independence.

The present international situation, though complex, is developing generally in favour of the revolution. In spite of the imperialists' intensified moves for division and alienation, the progressive people of the world are heading towards unity.

In capitalist countries today the people's discontent with the capitalist system is growing because of the constant price rises and increases in the number of unemployed, brought about by the economic crisis. Therefore, if our work is good we shall be able to rally more people to the revolutionary cause.

Now, I shall refer to the work of Chongryon.

I should first like to extend my best wishes for the success of the 11th Congress of Chongryon which will be held in a few days' time.

Chongryon is fighting against not only the south Korean, but also the US and Japanese, reactionaries. It is smashing all the subversive activities and acts of sabotage perpetrated by our enemies and braving all obstacles and difficulties, rallied closely around our Party and the

Government of our Republic; it is struggling dauntlessly, even though it is fighting against not one but several reactionary groups. I consider its actions to be commendable and express my great appreciation.

Today I am very happy to meet you, the chairmen of the chapters of Chongryon.

The chapters and branches hold a very important place in the Chongryon organization. As I always say, it is important to build up the county, ri and factory Party organizations as well as the Party cells when strengthening the Party. By the same logic, it is important to build up the chapters and branches when strengthening Chongryon.

The branch is the basic organization and a cell of Chongryon. For a man to be physically strong, the cells which make up his body must be healthy. Likewise, the consolidation of the Chongryon organization requires the strengthening of its cells. Reinforcing the branches of Chongryon is like making the cells in a human body strong. That is why the Chongryon organization will grow in strength only when the branches which are its basic organizations and cells are consolidated and work efficiently. Chongryon must strive to build up its branches.

It is also important for the chapters of Chongryon to play a more significant role. Each one is a unit which guides the branches under it directly. Therefore, it is only when these chapters play a more significant role that branch work will be improved and Chongryon affairs will progress smoothly. In the homeland, efforts are concentrated on increasing the role of the county, the lowest unit of guidance, as set out in the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*.

The role of the chapter chairmen and other Chongryon officials must be enhanced.

Chongryon is working in specific conditions which differ from those in the homeland. At home all the people have been remoulded into socialist working people by means of the democratic and socialist revolutions and socialist construction in the 30 years plus since liberation. At present, our society is made up of the working class and the farming population and the latter will also be workers in the future

when they have been imbued with revolutionary and working-class qualities and when comprehensive mechanization has been introduced in the rural areas so that an eight-hour working day can be established. If this happens, our country will be a classless society.

In Japan where you live, however, there are not only the working class and the peasantry but also a number of other classes and strata. Although the officials in the homeland work only with socialist working people, you must work with people from all walks of life, including workers, peasants, medium and minor merchants and entrepreneurs and industrialists.

The Chongryon workers must thoroughly establish the mass line of our Party. Applying the mass line in the work of Chongryon means to rally together all the Koreans in the Chongryon organization. In other words, it means to unite all the Koreans who desire national reunification and fight in defence of national rights, but excluding reactionaries.

Needless to say, it is no easy task for Chongryon to implement the mass line. Violations of this line are frequently committed even by the officials working here in Korea. Our Party put forward a policy of reeducating all the people to introduce everyone into the communist society, but some officials are narrow-minded in their work with the people and fail to unite them properly. Therefore, the Party has to constantly educate and criticize officials.

Work with the people, with the masses, is particularly difficult and important. Without working well with the masses and uniting them, victory in the revolutionary struggle is impossible.

You Chongryon workers should work with the masses more efficiently than the officials in the homeland. Thus, you will rally to the Chongryon organization all our fellow countrymen who desire the reunification of the country and not its division and who are trying to make themselves Korean, refusing to become Japanese. In addition, you should educate the members of your branches to take pride in their socialist motherland, and teach them how to conduct information work and organizational work and how to work efficiently with the masses.

In conducting the movement to re-establish the Korean identity,

you should go among our compatriots to explain: “we Koreans have a socialist motherland of dignity, so why become naturalized in Japan and Japanese?; we Koreans can be prosperous by ourselves, so why do you forsake your own nation to live as a man or woman of another country?” In the course of this you should imbue them with socialist patriotism. Thus, you will educate all our 600,000 Korean compatriots in Japan in such a way that one person trains ten others, ten people a hundred, one hundred people a thousand and one thousand people ten thousand and rally them to the Chongryon organization.

In their work with the masses from every background, the Chongryon workers must never trample on the interests of individuals, but respect them.

Chongryon workers must strive hard to defend the socialist homeland and for national reunification. It is your important duty to carry out effective information work for the socialist homeland and to explain the policy of national reunification among our fellow countrymen.

You should mix with them and explain by comparison and in simple language so that they can understand: “we are opposed to the south Korean military fascist clique because they are trying to sell out the country to the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists and keep our country permanently divided into two; the ‘threat of aggression from the north’ about which the US imperialists and the Park Chung Hee military fascist clique raise such a fuss is a lie; the Government of the Republic has on more than one occasion stated that it would not ‘invade the south’ nor would it force any idea and social system on south Korea; the Government of the Republic intends to reunify the country independently by peaceful means on the basis of the three principles and five-point policy for national reunification; which do you think is just, therefore, reunifying the country independently and peacefully or keeping it divided into two for ever?” In this way you will ensure that all our compatriots understand clearly our Party’s policy for national reunification and realize that it is correct.

Chongryon must work well with south Koreans visiting Japan.

At present people from many Asian, African and Latin-American countries come to visit our country with the intention of learning from our experience in building socialism. Because of the false propaganda of the US imperialists and the Park Chung Hee military fascist clique, however, a considerable number of south Korean people have no proper understanding of our socialist system. You should tell the south Korean visitors to Japan precisely how false their noisy propaganda is and lead them to form an accurate understanding of our socialist system. Thus, you will ensure that, through them, the number of people who know about the socialist system established in our country will increase in south Korea.

Chongryon must work well with the Japanese people, too.

Since you are living in Japan, it is very important for you to work efficiently with her people. Chongryon can only defend itself from the enemy's subversive activities and acts of sabotage when the Japanese people come out in support of it and assist the movement of Koreans in Japan.

You should work well with Japanese workers, peasants, medium and minor merchants and entrepreneurs, intellectuals and teachers and persuade them to support Chongryon and our Party's policy for independent national reunification and to bring pressure to bear on their government to persuade it not to hinder reunification.

Whenever I meet Japanese people, I say to them: "what good will it do you if war breaks out in Korea?; you will rest easy when your neighbour is at peace, won't you?; so you should help the Koreans to achieve independent, peaceful reunification, instead of hindering it."

You should make a positive contribution to protecting and defending the socialist homeland and accomplishing the cause of national reunification by strengthening the chapters and branches of Chongryon and working skilfully with our compatriots in Japan and with the south Korean and Japanese people.

I am confident that you will work with devotion to consolidate the Chongryon organization, defend the socialist homeland and achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

**A LETTER OF GOOD WISHES
TO THE ELEVENTH CONGRESS
OF CHONGRYON**

September 26, 1977

The Eleventh Congress of Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan) is being held in an atmosphere of great patriotic enthusiasm on the part of the Korean compatriots in Japan and the great expectations of the people in your homeland. It is a momentous event which marks an important stage in the development of the movement of the overseas compatriots of our country and in the patriotic struggle of our compatriots in Japan.

On the occasion of this congress being held I would like to offer, on behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea and on my own behalf, our warmest good wishes to those attending this congress and to all our compatriots in Japan.

Over the last three years since its Tenth Congress, Chongryon has made some notable achievements in the implementation of our Party's Juche idea in every aspect of the movement of Koreans in Japan and has achieved brilliant success in the noble patriotic cause of national reunification and prosperity.

It has worked hard to establish the ideological system of Juche among its members. In this way it has trained its officials and our compatriots to be ardent revolutionaries and true patriots who are unflinching loyal to our Party and their socialist homeland and has built

itself up as an organization of our overseas citizens of a genuine Juche type.

The establishment of the unshakable ideological system of Juche and the achievement, based on this, of the unbreakable unity and cohesion of its membership are the most valuable success and the greatest victory it has ever achieved.

Chongryon has foiled, at every step, all the subversive acts and plots which its enemies at home and abroad have perpetrated with more viciousness than ever before, and it has rallied our compatriots in Japan more solidly behind our Party and the Government of our Republic and led the movement of Koreans in Japan confidently along the path to victory by organizing and mobilizing them efficiently.

Chongryon has upheld the national dignity of our compatriots in Japan, as proud overseas citizens of the Republic, and has resolutely defended their democratic national rights and has, in the course of this, won the deeper trust and love of our compatriots.

At this critical moment, when the nation is threatened with permanent division, Chongryon has fought with determination to frustrate the “two Koreas” scheme of the US imperialists and the south Korean puppet clique, strengthened the national unity of our compatriots from all walks of life in Japan and given powerful support and encouragement to the just, patriotic struggle of the south Korean people for social democracy and national reunification. In this way it has made a great contribution to hastening the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

Meanwhile, Chongryon has won greater support and sympathy for our people’s cause of national reunification by making strenuous efforts to strengthen its solidarity with the Japanese people and with other progressive people around the world.

Over the period under review, the Chongryon organization and our other compatriots in Japan have successfully carried out the historic tasks set by its Tenth Congress, displaying great courage in overcoming manifold hardships, and rendered a distinguished service that will shine in the glorious history of our nation.

All the victory and success achieved by Chongryon are the result of the devoted struggle of the Chongryon organization and our compatriots in Japan who are united closely in mind and will under the banner of the Juche idea.

It is a source of great national pride for the people in your homeland that Chongryon and our 600,000 compatriots in Japan are making such a great contribution to the cause of their homeland and nation by displaying burning patriotic enthusiasm.

I am highly appreciative of the unfailing loyalty of our patriotic compatriots who, as great champions of the Juche idea, are leading a worthwhile life and working hard to implement this idea in the difficult conditions of a capitalist society and offer my warm thanks to the Comrade Chairman, all the other officials of Chongryon and our compatriots in Japan.

At this time when the Eleventh Congress of Chongryon is being held, the general situation at home and abroad is developing very favourably for us.

The people in the homeland have further strengthened the political and economic might of the Republic and breasted another rise on the road to socialism and communism by carrying out the Six-Year Plan with success and accelerating the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions.

Under the brutal fascist oppression of the US imperialists and their minions, the south Korean people are fighting on dauntlessly for national reunification and social democracy. Through their struggle, the patriotic democratic forces of south Korea are being hardened and are growing steadily.

The whole world is heading towards independence; this is the trend of our times. Because of this, the international climate is changing greatly in favour of our revolution.

Our Party's Juche idea is arousing the great interest of the progressive people of the world, and the international prestige of our Party and the Government of our Republic is rising.

The US imperialists and their minions are becoming more isolated

with each passing day and are trying in every way possible to reverse the general trend. But no effort on their part can check the tide of history which is turning in favour of our people's struggle.

Chongryon must work harder to implement the Juche idea to the full, as the prevailing situation demands, and discharge its noble duty to the country and nation with credit.

Our Party's Juche idea is the sole guideline for the work of Chongryon and the decisive guarantee for success of the movement of Koreans in Japan.

For Chongryon to take a great stride forward in its patriotic campaign, all its officials and our compatriots should become fully immersed with the Juche revolutionary view of the world and rally with one idea and purpose closely around our Party and the Government of our Republic so that they fight unflinchingly for the glorious revolutionary cause of our people.

The basic task of the movement of Koreans in Japan is to fight to protect the democratic national rights of our compatriots in Japan and achieve the country's reunification, the cherished national desire of our people.

At a time when the US imperialists and their minions are blatantly scheming to create "two Koreas", the first and foremost patriotic task facing Chongryon is to fight to prevent the permanent division of the nation and achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the country at the earliest possible date.

Chongryon should frustrate the "two Koreas" plot of the national separatists at home and abroad, promote national unity among our compatriots in Japan from whatever walk of life and give total support and encouragement to the struggle of the south Korean people against fascism and for democracy and thus play a greater part in hastening national reunification.

Chongryon must strengthen its friendly ties with the broad sections of the Japanese people and other progressive people of the world so that the voice of international solidarity with our people's cause of national reunification will resound all around the world.

The enemy is manoeuvring more frantically than ever before to hurt Chongryon. In order to fulfil its mission in such circumstances, Chongryon must strengthen its organization so that it can brave any trial.

Chongryon must establish strict organizational discipline and strengthen organizational unity based on the ideological system of Juche, and pay particular attention to strengthening the basic organizations to which the masses of our compatriots belong.

Chongryon which is advancing boldly under the banner of the Juche idea with absolute faith in our socialist country will always be crowned with victory and glory.

I hold the firm belief that the Eleventh Congress of Chongryon will put forward programme tasks for its patriotic movement and make vigorous efforts to rouse all our compatriots in Japan to the sacred patriotic struggle to achieve the prosperity and development of the socialist homeland and accelerate the independent and peaceful reunification of the country and I heartily wish the congress great success in its work.

ON GIVING DEFINITE PRIORITY TO THE MINING INDUSTRY OVER THE MANUFACTURING INDUSTRY

**Speech at a National Meeting of Activists
in the Mining Industry**

September 29, 1977

Allow me first to express, on behalf of the Party Central Committee, the Government of the Republic and on my own behalf, our thanks to all Party members, workers, technicians and office workers who have worked with devotion in the mining industry.

In recent years, our mining industry has not been kept in advance of the manufacturing industry, and this has been a severe handicap to the overall development of our national economy.

The mining industry is the first stage of the industrial process. Without giving precedence to its development it is impossible to develop the machine industry and other sectors of the national economy properly. It is obvious that, if the mining industry fails to go ahead and supply sufficient raw materials, the manufacturing industry cannot produce smoothly. It is a rule in developing industry to keep the mining industry ahead of manufacturing. But this rule has not been observed either in drawing up the Six-Year Plan or in the course of executing it. Still the mining industry is lagging behind the manufacturing industry.

Because mining is not given precedence, iron ores are not being supplied to iron works in sufficient quantities to feed the blast furnaces

and increase the production of pig iron and steel. Production at machine factories is not on a proper footing because of a lack of steel. And non-ferrous ores such as wolfram are in short supply, so steel works are unable to produce high-speed steel properly. Nor are cables, electric appliances and various other kinds of machinery and equipment mass-produced because of the copper shortage.

In addition, the inadequate coal supply causes great difficulties in generating power and in transportation. In recent years our hydroelectric power stations have not been working at full capacity, because the reservoirs have not been full owing to the effects of the cold front. In such circumstances thermal power stations must become the major suppliers of electricity. But because the supply of coal is not satisfactory at present, the thermal power stations are unable to work at full capacity. Last winter, in North Hamgyong Province, the trains were unable to run properly for nearly a month, on account of the coal supply being inadequate.

At the cement factories production is not regular either, because coal and limestone are in short supply.

It is also because of the shortage of iron sulphide that only small quantities of sulphuric acid are being produced, and this is causing considerable difficulties in the production of fertilizer, vinalon, paper and staple fibre in the chemical industry. When the small amount of sulphuric acid actually produced is allocated to fertilizer production, vinalon production has to be suspended and vice versa. Last year, too, the supply of phosphate fertilizer to the rural communities was inadequate because the production of fertilizer was not at its normal level. We have built a large vinalon factory with a 50,000-ton capacity, as well as large chemical fibre mills in Chongjin and Sinuiju. But they are not operating at full capacity, because of the shortage of sulphuric acid, nor are they mass-producing vinalon and staple fibre, which then causes great difficulties in improving the people's standard of living.

So it can be seen that the failure to give precedence to the mining industry prevents the rapid development of the iron, power and chemical industries and agricultural production and the discovery of a

full solution to the problems of transport and of raising the standard of living of the people.

Most of the difficulties in developing the national economy and improving the people's livelihood can, in the final analysis, be attributed to the failure to give priority to the mining industry, the first stage of industrial production. The problems with the mining industry are the chief factor in obstructing the overall development of our national economy.

Therefore, at the consultative meeting of planning workers held in 1974, the Party Central Committee severely criticized the practice of neglecting the implementation of the Party's policy on giving priority to the mining industry over the manufacturing industry in carrying out the Six-Year Plan.

Since then our Party has stressed on many occasions that developing the mining industry on a preferential basis was the only way to develop the manufacturing industry and other sectors of the national economy properly. It has held many meetings with regard to concentrating primarily on the mining industry and adopted several decisions and given many assignments to the officials concerned. But the problems are still unresolved today.

Some senior officials of the Administration Council's commissions and ministries, and the Party secretaries, managers and chief engineers and other leading workers at the factories and other enterprises in the mining industry do not as yet clearly understand that the responsibility lies with them for the failure to give priority to the mining industry and the resultant hold-up in the development of the national economy as a whole.

Last spring, the thermal power stations had to suspend the operation of some of their generators, because of the coal shortage. So, in order to solve this problem I gave on-the-spot guidance at the coal mines in the Tokchon area and then acquainted myself with the situation at the coal mines in the Kaechon and Anju areas. In the course of this I learned a lot about the situation in the mining industry.

What, then, is the reason for the failure to keep the mining industry ahead of the manufacturing industry?

The main reason is that the officials of the Mining Industry Commission including the Mining and Coal Industry General Bureaux and the senior officials of the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council have not acted responsibly in their work, nor adopted the attitude befitting masters and have given no detailed organizational work and guidance for the preferential development of the mining industry.

It is true that in the past the state has not invested a great deal in the mining industry. But, in this field the best use has not been made of the funds provided. The less the amount of money is invested, the more closely the officials should study how it can be used effectively and concentrate on the most important matters. But instead they spread their money here and there. In fact, they have not done anything properly.

At present the officials in this sector are not organizing their work in detail and instead are dealing aimlessly with any trouble in their own way. So they do not know exactly where they must concentrate their funds and in which way to solve the problems. Figuratively speaking, this is similar to an army commander who does not know where to launch an assault to destroy the enemy.

The officials' inefficiency in directing and organizing the work of the mining industry is the most serious problem.

By guidance and organization in the field of production I mean materials supply, equipment management, labour administration and the arrangement of production. But the officials in the mining industry are not doing this work well because they have no idea of what is happening in the subordinate units.

Over the years the chairman of the Mining Industry Commission and the director of the Coal Industry General Bureau have not been well informed of the situation at the coal mines, and when we have questioned them about coal production, they have merely replied that they were suffering manpower and materials shortages. So we gave the coal mines additional manpower and materials. In the case of the coal mines in the Tokchon area alone, we sent hundreds of demobilized

soldiers to each of them. But this had little effect on coal production.

So, we had doubts and gave on-the-spot guidance there, making detailed enquiries into the conditions there, but it was not a manpower shortage that was the problem. In fact, the miners were not provided with enough drills and other minor tools and implements, so many of them were simply idling away their time.

Because of the shortage of saws and axes and other minor implements, some, while putting up props, were walking around for hours in search of axes or saws while others, whose job was to drive nails in the pit, were going round to get pliers and pincers. And each drill belonged to three or four miners. As I have said before on several occasions, every tunnelling worker must have his own drill. If so, he will make sure it is in good condition after work in the pit and use it again the next day. In this way he will be able to use it for a long time and increase production. But if three or four miners share one drill as is the case now, it will be impossible to do tunnelling ahead of coal cutting and increase production.

You are also inefficient in organizing the work to keep tunnelling in advance of other operations.

In order to give priority to tunnelling in the mining industry, a long time ago I presented the matter of creating a one-to-one manpower balance between tunnelling and mining. But the coal and ore mines still allocate only a small number of men to tunnelling but a large number to extraction. And they concentrate only on immediate production, instead of giving priority to tunnelling. They have not organized tunnelling properly; they do tunnelling at the beginning of the month and mining at the end. Because production is organized in this way, coal and ore output is high at the end of the month and fall at the beginning. In directing production at coal and ore mines, it is also necessary to follow procedures and rules just as when commanding a battle. If coal and ore mines neglect the principle of the one-to-one manpower balance, they will be unable to give priority to tunnelling and so avoid fluctuation in production.

The method you have adopted for evaluating how the plan has been

fulfilled in the coal and ore mines is inaccurate. You do not care about the results of tunnelling, but evaluate the success of the plan according to the amount of coal and ore produced. That is why coal and ore miners do not work hard to give priority to tunnelling.

You do not take good care of the equipment either.

The coal and ore mines do not look after their machinery and equipment properly, and discard equipment at will, some of which could be used again if it was repaired. Apparently the mines lack coal cars at present. But there are quite a few coal cars that have been abandoned; they can be used again if bearings are supplied and some repairs are made. These cars are thrown out, yet we could not simply keep turning out new coal cars however rich our country was. It will not do to treat equipment in this way.

You do not supply materials efficiently either.

At present the Administration Council is not organizing the work of producing the steel of a variety of specifications, nor is it allocating the steel with due care. In these circumstances, senior officials of the Ministry of the Metal Industry, as well as the leading workers at iron and steel works, are now inclined to produce only heavy items, instead of a variety of specifications, in an effort to fulfil their quotas in terms of tonnage. If steel production is conducted in this way, it will be wasteful no matter how much is produced.

Apparently the monthly steel output is considerable, but it includes only a small number of different specifications that are needed in the manufacturing industry. And because steel is allocated improperly, thick steel products are supplied where thin ones are needed and vice versa. As a result, a great deal of them cannot be used properly, but has to be put into store.

Although the officials of the Administration Council have been given instructions about supplying materials to the mining industry on a preferential basis, they are not executing them, and still conduct distribution on an egalitarian basis.

During our inspection of the coal mines in the Tokchon area, we instructed these officials to send 17,000 tons of steel to the coal

industry. But we were informed afterwards that in the account book 17,000 tons of steel were supplied but, in fact, the coal mines had received no more than 8,000 tons of which 3,000 tons were still in store because they were not of the required specifications. Apparently the Hoeryong Coal Mining Machine Factory received 800 tons; but only 300 tons could be used and the rest was put into store for the same reason. If these 500 tons of steel had been distributed properly, they could have been used to great effect. These mistakes are a result mainly of a misguided work attitude and bureaucratic red-tape. This is precisely the work method used by the officials of the Administration Council, commissions, ministries and the Ministry of Materials Supply.

I have already told the officials of the Administration Council on several occasions to work according to the methods we used during the anti-Japanese armed struggle. When we were short of food we collected provisions from every soldier and weighed them before we fixed the amount for the daily ration. And then we persuaded the soldiers to keep to that amount. So, once we even fought a battle for 20 days on only a five-day food ration. When we were short of ammunition, we also made it a rule for machine-gunners to fire a fixed number of shots and for the infantry men to charge the enemy position with a fixed number of rounds. In short, we managed our life assiduously. But the officials of the Administration Council and the commissions and ministries are not doing this.

In fact, it is not that steel is unavailable in our country. The trouble is that the steel we have is not supplied properly. However, no one is trying to find a proper solution to this problem. No one is distributing steel by calculating each ton of different specifications carefully. The same is true of the Vice-Premiers of the Administration Council, chairmen and ministers. No work will be done satisfactorily without meticulous organizational arrangements.

This is all the more so with the socialist economy because it is a collective economy. But our officials do not give economic guidance that conforms to the socialist economic system. The socialist economy

is a planned economy. Therefore, materials supply, labour administration and equipment repair must be done in a planned way. This is how to do all your work with credit. Anyone who does not work according to a plan is not qualified to manage the socialist economy.

There is no excuse whatever for our failure to give priority to the mining industry. Our country is rich in coal and ore. The point in question is that the senior officials of the Administration Council's commissions and ministries and other officials of the mining industry are poor at organizing and directing work. In particular, the chairmen of the commissions and the ministers of the Administration Council are not doing their work properly. What they must do is to direct materials supply, the regular inspection and repair of equipment, labour administration, the arrangement of production and so on. But they are not carrying out any of these duties properly.

The responsibility for the failure to give priority to the mining industry rests with the chairmen of the commissions and the ministers of the Administration Council, not with the workers. In fact, in no other country can such heroic workers as the Korean working class be found. Our working class is made up of people who are unfailingly loyal to the Party; they work only in accordance with the Party's instructions and devote themselves to the implementation of Party policy.

The Party organizations in the mining industry, too, have not done their work properly.

At present, the mining industry is lagging far behind the manufacturing industry and the responsibility for this rests largely with the Party organizations in this sector.

Most important of all, the Party organizations in the coal and ore mines have neglected political work. The Party secretaries at the mines in particular have not carefully organized their work with the managers, chief engineers and other officials so that they discharge all their responsibilities with the attitude of masters. The Party committees of commissions, ministries and the Administration Council have failed to do their work properly.

Supply services for the workers are unsatisfactory.

As has been evident in the past, the mining industry has never done anything properly; not the organization of economic affairs, nor Party work, nor supply services. That is why mining is now lagging far behind manufacturing.

This phenomenon has emerged in our country only in recent years. Formerly, there was not evidence of this in our economy, and it developed very smoothly. After the war our country produced a small amount of steel every year, and with this we constructed vinalon and polyvinyl chloride factories and many other important factories. At present we are producing several million tons of steel annually but we are still not meeting our needs for it in full. We are now experiencing a shortage of steel owing to the discrepancy between the mining and the manufacturing industry. The reason is that our leading officials do not fully adhere to the Juche idea of our Party, lack an attitude worthy of masters and initiative in their work, show no ability for organization and do their work carelessly.

Removing this discrepancy is the most important, pressing task facing us at present. Without ending this quickly we will make no headway in our work.

In order to eliminate this imbalance, we must develop the mining industry quickly. There is no particular problem in developing it rapidly. If we increase the production of iron ore, nonferrous minerals, limestone and coal, the mining industry will be able to move ahead.

Next year we are going to start work on the Second Seven-Year Plan, and we must concentrate great efforts on the mining industry from the first year of this new long-term plan onwards so as to keep it decisively ahead of the manufacturing industry.

This is the way to supply adequate iron ore to the blast furnaces and limestone to the rotary kilns for cement and also supply sufficient sulphuric acid to produce large quantities of phosphate fertilizer, vinalon and staple fibre. In this way alone can we improve the standard of living of the people quickly. No one must and can neglect this matter. It is the most important task confronting the mining industry today to remove once and for all the imbalance between the mining and

manufacturing industries by improving the former as soon as possible.

Over the period of the new Seven-Year Plan, the mining industry must produce annually 70 million tons of coal, 16-20 million tons of iron ores, as well as sufficient nonferrous mineral ores to yield one million tons of nonferrous metals. In particular it must mine a great deal of nonferrous mineral ore to produce copper and nickel and wolfram, molybdenum and other rare metals which are badly needed for the development of the national economy and the defence industry. It is only when the mining industry fulfils this task that it will be possible to operate all the existing factories on a regular basis and carry out the building needed for defence with greater success. With our existing industrial production capacity alone we are in a position to carry out this task with ease.

Above all, priority in the mining industry must be given to geological prospecting.

The geological prospecting sector must radically increase their efforts to ensure the long-term development of new mines and steady production at the existing mines as well as exploration. In this way it will secure the deposits of coal and ores to be mined at least for a few years.

In order to give priority to prospecting, this sector must be provided with a variety of modern drilling machines. In particular, measures must be taken to manufacture ourselves the drills which are capable of boring to a depth of greater than 1,000 metres, and investment in this sector must be continually increased.

You must give definite precedence to tunnelling at the coal and ore mines.

To this end you must strictly observe the principle of appointing tunnelling and mining workers at a one-to-one balance. In order to keep heading excavation going ahead, a three-to-two balance between the tunnelling and mining forces might suffice, if necessary. By observing this principle rigidly, you will be able to push ahead with production at coal and ore mines on a long-term basis.

Coal and ore mines should also continue to make every effort to

raise the rate of labour assigned to pit work.

Next, we should build permanent pits and furnish them with lighting facilities.

I have been told that the Tokchon Coal Mine has made the pits permanent and inside they are brightly lit, and this is a great comfort to the coal miners. Officials must spare no materials or expense to make the pits permanent and light them so as to make the inside of every coal and ore mine look like a palace. You must thus provide our working class with good working conditions to accord with socialist society.

For the development of the mining industry you must make the mining equipment large-sized and modern.

At the coal and ore mines presently the tendency to ignore low-quality ore and coal fields with thin seams and unfavourable mining conditions is prevalent. To eliminate this tendency, mining equipment must be made large and modern so that large quantities of coal and ores are extracted and processed. If you extract only high-grade ores and coal in places with good mining conditions and neglect low-grade ores and coal in places where the mining conditions are unfavourable, you will be unable to make effective use of the country's valuable resources nor will you overcome the fluctuation in production and you will be committing a crime against the younger generation. And that is not all. As industry in our country has been expanded considerably, if you only cling to the risky and conservative method of mining only high-grade ores and looking for favourable coal fields, you will be unable to meet the growing demands for ores and coal and will not keep the mining industry ahead of the manufacturing industry.

So, these days it is essential to switch over to using large mining equipment, and for machine factories to produce a large number of 1,000-hp winches, large grinders and other heavy equipment for coal and ore mines.

At the same time, you must step up modernization so that the production processes in the mining industry are mechanized and semi- and fully-automated.

In order to make modern and large-scale mining equipment the machine factories in the mining industry must work hard. We established the Mining Industry Commission and attached the General Bureau of the Machine Industry to it with the main purpose being to produce a lot more mining equipment of different types to suit our needs by making effective use of those machine factories which had been under the control of the former Ministry of the Mining Industry and the Ministry of the Electricity and Coal Industries and making them play a more significant role. The Mining Industry Commission must strengthen its guidance of the machine factories under its control and the officials at these factories must think boldly and throw themselves into the production of more large modern equipment.

In addition, they must increase the production of highly efficient equipment for transport.

The mining industry must not try to transport coal and ores with only electric cars and lorries. Since as yet no crude oil is being produced in our country, we must not rely on lorries to transport coal and ores, and with lorries and small electric cars alone it is impossible to dispose of coal and ores quickly when they are produced in large quantities. Therefore, the mining industry must mass-produce for itself a variety of highly efficient means of transport and also positively implement the policy of using cableways, conveyer-belts and pipelines for transportation.

The Mining Industry Commission does receive some conveyer-belts from the Ministry of the Chemical Industry. But in the future it must set up factories at which to produce the conveyer-belts needed by the coal and ore mines. And the commissions and ministries concerned must manage their belt factories properly and increase production. We have built a large belt-producing centre at the Amnongang Tyre Factory, and this must receive regular supplies of raw materials and also organize its work properly so as to produce a lot of conveyer-belts for the coal and ore mines.

The metal industry should make wire ropes for the coal and ore mines.

The most pressing problem in increasing coal and ore production rapidly is that every coal and ore miner must be provided with sufficient of the equipment he needs, including drills, saws, axes, pliers and pincers.

The Mining Industry Commission must ensure that every tunnelling worker owns one drill by the end of this year. The provincial people's committee chairmen and the provincial Party committees' chief secretaries must see to it that saws, axes and other small implements are produced in their own provinces.

All the coal and ore mines must register every miner's equipment and make it a firm rule to inspect daily by platoon how the workers are looking after their equipment as if reviewing ranks of armed soldiers. And they must establish a system of repair under which a general check on personal equipment is made once a week for prompt repair when needed. Equipment which has already been repaired must be kept in reserve for the miners to use when their own is being repaired.

The state must ensure the supply of large-size loaders, large compressors, pipes, rails and other equipment and materials which are needed by the coal and ore mines. First of all, it must promptly provide the Mining Industry Commission with 17,000 tons of steel, 16,000 tons of cement, 70,000 cubic metres of timber for pit-roof support and 1,000 cubic metres of timber for shaft construction. Pipes should also be supplied to the coal and ore mines. They are indispensable for sending air and water into the pits. Therefore, they must be supplied to the coal and ore mines on a preferential basis as soon as they are produced. Coal and ore mines should take good care of this precious equipment provided by the state and repair it quickly and keep it in good condition.

Supply services for the workers in the mining industry should be improved.

I have been told that some coal mines are not even supplying drinking water properly for the miners working down the pits. Officials must not show such indifference for the supply services for the workers.

The miners should be supplied with cooking oil, vegetables and meat. For the present, the mines must supply them with enough oil from next year onwards, just as the coal mines in the Tokchon area do. The Party organizations and people's government organs in the areas concerned must manage the supply services for the coal and ore miners in a responsible way.

The mining industry must intensify Party political work.

The Party organizations in this sector must explain to everyone that the most urgent task facing our Party at present is to eliminate the imbalance between the mining and manufacturing industries, that we must get rid of it within one or two years and that giving precedence to the mining industry is a prerequisite for successfully attaining all the targets of the new Seven-Year Plan. In this way all Party members, technicians, office employees and all other workers in the mining industry will acquire a master-like attitude in whatever they do with a high sense of pride and responsibility in taking charge of the first stage of industrial production and display their political enthusiasm and creative abilities to the full in order to efficiently perform the honourable, revolutionary tasks assigned by the Party.

In order to improve the mining industry rapidly, every official should display to a greater degree the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance.

In recent years, the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance has been less evident in our officials, the spirit which was displayed in the difficult days soon after liberation and the war. No one will achieve success in his work if he does not hold his own affairs dear and takes to sycophancy, looking up to others.

We must strongly oppose all kinds of wrong ideas of disliking and belittling our own things and thinking highly of foreign equipment. So, all officials must think of how they can produce the equipment they need themselves and display to the full the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance.

We must also conduct an ideological campaign against conservatism and fear of technology. Any forward movement is

hindered by people who hold to such ideologies. Therefore, we must continue with a strong ideological campaign against them among our officials.

In conclusion, I will speak briefly about supplying adequate amounts of coal to the thermal power stations so that they can operate at full capacity this winter, as well as about the adequate distribution of coal needed by the people.

Because of the long spell of drought this year the reservoirs at the hydroelectric power stations are not full. In such circumstances, normal production in the industrial sector this winter depends on whether we supply sufficient quantities of coal to the Pukchang, Pyongyang and factory-run thermal power stations and operate them properly or not.

The coal complexes in Tokchon, Kaechon, Sunchon and many other areas must concentrate all their efforts on increasing the production of coal to the maximum so that they can provide the thermal power stations with sufficient coal.

At the same time they must make meticulous organizational arrangements to supply coal to the people as well as to the creches and kindergartens in winter, so that the people suffer no inconvenience in their lives and no practice appears of making creche and kindergarten children sleep in cold rooms.

The Party Central Committee has great trust in all the Party members, workers and technicians working in the mining industry.

I firmly believe that the many comrades who are present at today's meeting and all other workers and technicians will work with devotion and a high degree of revolutionary enthusiasm, conscious of being masters, and thus contribute greatly to eliminating the imbalance between the mining and manufacturing industries as soon as possible and successfully carrying out the new Seven-Year Plan.

**A LETTER OF CONGRATULATIONS
TO THE TEACHING STAFF AND PUPILS
OF THE MANGYONGDAE
REVOLUTIONARY SCHOOL**

October 10, 1977

Today the people of our country and the officers and men of the People's Army are celebrating the 30th anniversary of the foundation of the Mangyongdae Revolutionary School at a time when we are marching ever more rapidly towards the complete victory of socialism and the independent reunification of the country under the red banner of the three revolutions.

On the occasion of this anniversary I extend my warmest congratulations to you, the teaching staff and pupils of the school, on the brilliant success you have achieved in training the future hard-core cadres for the revolution, guided by the Juche-oriented policy for the education of the children of our martyrs.

It is the noble duty and revolutionary obligation of communists to take care of the children of their comrades-in-arms who fell in the heroic battle on the glorious revolutionary road, and to educate and bring them up to be loyal to the revolution to the last.

Even in the difficult days immediately after liberation when the situation at home and abroad was very complex and when we were faced with particularly difficult revolutionary tasks, we paid close attention to educating the children of the revolutionary martyrs and founded the Mangyongdae Revolutionary School on October 12, 1947

on the basis of the Juche-oriented, revolutionary tradition of educating bereaved children, the tradition which was established amidst the flames of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle.

The foundation of the Mangyongdae Revolutionary School was a historic event in the development of our revolution and in the education of the children of our martyrs.

The foundation of the school provided us with a reliable training centre for producing the future hard-core elements that would carry forward the revolution unswervingly.

The Mangyongdae Revolutionary School has followed with pride the road of shining victory and glory over the 30 years since its foundation and carried out its noble revolutionary tasks with credit. In this way it has made some notable achievements for the country and the revolution.

Guided by the policy for educating the children of our martyrs, the Mangyongdae Revolutionary School has trained excellent hard-core cadres, established in them a firm revolutionary outlook on the world and equipped them with political, military and general knowledge. In this way it has made a great contribution to strengthening the ranks of the leadership personnel for the revolution.

Those who attended the school are now the hard-core elements holding important posts in the socialist country and the People's Army and are loyally performing their revolutionary duties.

The school has now become the ranks of loyal people who are imbued with the Juche idea, the monolithic ideology of the Party. It has developed into a hall of learning, a happy home for the children and a reliable centre for training future hardcore cadres which is provided with sufficient modern educational facilities and living conditions.

I take great satisfaction in the fact that you, the teaching staff and pupils of the school, have implemented the Juche-oriented education policy for the children of our martyrs so well over the past 30 years and thus contributed greatly to the development of our revolution. I think very highly of this.

Today our people are faced with the heavy yet honourable revolutionary tasks of achieving the complete victory of socialism and accelerating the historic cause of national reunification by promoting the three revolutions.

The duty and responsibility of the Mangyongdae Revolutionary School in carrying out the revolutionary tasks of our people are heavy.

The basic mission of the school is to train the children of our revolutionary martyrs as the future, able national cadres, well prepared politically and ideologically, militarily and physically.

The school must not rest content with the success it has achieved, but, bearing in mind the noble mission entrusted to it by the country and the revolution, implement the *Theses on Socialist Education* and the policy for educating the children of the revolutionary martyrs and thus discharge its revolutionary duty with honour.

First of all it must continue to develop the work of rooting the Party's monolithic ideological system deeply among its teaching staff and pupils and become imbued with the Juche idea.

You, the teaching staff and pupils of the school, must study the Juche idea closely and make it your flesh and bones and unshakable conviction, and thoroughly establish the revolutionary trait of championing and implementing Party policy to the last without condition and in the spirit of absolute devotion.

You must become acquainted with revolutionary traditions and become true revolutionaries who fight devotedly for the country and the people with no thought of abandoning their revolutionary honour whatever the storm or stress, by following the example of the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters of the past, and the heroes who displayed such boundless loyalty to the country and the revolution.

You must arm yourselves firmly with the revolutionary outlook of the working class and acquire a high degree of class consciousness. You must feel bitter hatred for all your class enemies including the imperialists and the landowners, capitalists and reactionary bureaucrats in south Korea, fight resolutely against them and never

forget the south Korean people who are suffering under the tyranny of the US imperialists and the Park Chung Hee puppet clique.

The basic duty of the pupils is to study hard.

All the pupils must make it their rule and habit to study and learn modern science and technology and military knowledge as well as developing a strong physique and excellent cultural skills. You must prepare yourselves as the reliable, true revolutionaries who will keep the revolution flourishing by taking up the cause where your parents left it.

The school must thoroughly implement the principles of socialist pedagogy set out in the *Theses on Socialist Education*, firmly establish Juche and the working-class line in its work, teach every subject in accordance with Party policy, correctly apply the heuristic method of teaching and combine theoretical education closely with practical training and education with productive labour, so that the pupils will become reliable builders of socialism and communism.

It must enhance the role of each course of study, the basic unit of education, raise the qualifications of the teachers, improve the educational environment and further modernize the educational conditions and facilities.

You, the teaching staff and pupils, must intensify the revolutionary organizational life and military service and establish iron discipline and order at the school, and put every aspect of its work and life onto a regular basis and manage it according to regulations.

Due to the US imperialists and their stooges' scheme to create "two Koreas" and their manoeuvres to ignite another war, the situation in our country is now tense.

You must oppose indolence and slackness and always keep yourselves prepared and alert in your work, in your studying and in your whole life.

You must strengthen revolutionary solidarity and display the noble, traditional virtue of unity between men and officers and between the army and the people to the highest degree, manage everything carefully under the revolutionary banner of self-reliance

and maintain a spirit of revolutionary optimism at the school at all times.

The revolutionary tasks facing the school are indeed honourable and worthwhile. We have great expectations of the school.

I hold the firm belief that as in the past, so in the future, too, all the teaching staff and pupils at the school will carry out their honourable revolutionary tasks successfully and live up to the expectations of the country and the people.

ON SOME TASKS FACING THE KOREAN DEMOCRATIC WOMEN'S UNION IN JAPAN

Talk to a Delegation of Korean Women from Japan

November 5, 1977

I should first like to welcome you warmly and congratulate, on behalf of the Party Central Committee and the Government of the Republic and in my own name, the Comrade Chairman of the Central Standing Committee of the Korean Democratic Women's Union in Japan and other officials of the Women's Union under Chongryon who have recently celebrated its 30th anniversary in grand style and are now on a visit to the homeland.

It gives me great pleasure today to be in the company of women cadres from Chongryon.

On this occasion I should like to express my great appreciation for the fact that you are working hard in Japan to protect and defend stoutly the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, your homeland, politically and ideologically and to ensure the national rights of the Koreans in Japan and democratic national education for their children.

In the homeland we always show a keen interest in the struggle which you are waging abroad. This is because you are fighting courageously in very difficult and complicated circumstances, having to smash all the subversive activities and acts of sabotage perpetrated by the US and Japanese reactionaries and the south Korean puppet

clique. Yours is a very worthy struggle. I am more than satisfied with your valiant efforts.

The present situation in the homeland is very promising.

This year the largest number of foreign visitors ever has come to our country since the foundation of our Republic. In particular, in Pyongyang a successful international seminar on the Juche idea was held this year. The Juche idea of our Party not only conforms to the interests of our people but also arouses a generous response from the people of the newly independent countries, the peace-loving people around the world and from the people of all those countries which advocate independence. This is a source of honour for our country, of pride for our Party and of great glory for our nation.

At present the people in the homeland are working hard to implement the three major tasks for national reunification proposed by our Party. We are fighting, first, to build socialism more efficiently in the northern half of Korea; second, to build up the revolutionary forces in south Korea by offering strong support to the movement of the people there for democracy; and, third, to launch a forceful international campaign to strengthen our solidarity with the peace-loving people around the world and with the revolutionary people fighting for freedom and independence, so as to bring pressure to bear upon the US imperialists to withdraw their troops and weapons from south Korea. Many solidarity committees supporting the reunification of our country have been formed in a number of countries.

I should like to refer first to socialist economic construction in the homeland.

We have achieved a great deal of success in socialist economic construction. Last year the Six-Year National Economic Plan as a whole was completely fulfilled in the motherland. We are still hard at work, although we have designated this year as a year of adjustment to make preparations for a new Seven-Year Plan, and next year we shall start on this Seven-Year Plan.

This plan is now being drafted and preparations are being made to elect deputies to the Sixth Supreme People's Assembly. I would like to

inform you that the Comrade Chairman of the Central Standing Committee of the Korean Democratic Women's Union in Japan has been nominated as a candidate to be the deputy for the Ryongchon constituency, North Phyongan Province.

The Supreme People's Assembly will be convened immediately after the election of its deputies; it will form a new government and discuss the Second Seven-Year Plan.

The main task of the new Seven-Year Plan is to step up the rate of making our national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientific, based on the foundations of the socialist economy which have already been laid.

The first and foremost task during this Seven-Year Plan is to accelerate the process of making the national economy Juche-oriented.

Making the national economy Juche-oriented means strengthening the independence and Juche nature of our national economy, based on the existing economic foundations.

Our experience shows that it is impossible to build a socialist economy properly unless we rely on our own strength and our domestic resources. So far we have worked hard to develop our national economy from the standpoint of Juche and have in fact achieved considerable success. However, we intend to advance and enhance the Juche character of our national economy still further, instead of resting content with what we have already achieved. In the future our country will develop its economy as a still more Juche-oriented one, based on the existing economic foundations and on our own raw materials, technology and cadres.

Another important task we must carry out during the period of the new Seven-Year Plan is to accelerate the modernization of the national economy.

One important aspect of this is to improve the implementation of the three major tasks of the technical revolution as we proposed at the Fifth Party Congress. In other words, we should work with greater efficiency to reduce the difference between heavy and light labour so as to make the heavy labour less arduous for the workers, diminish

the disparity between agricultural and industrial work so that the peasants, like the workers, will work eight hours, study eight hours and rest eight hours, and to free women from the heavy burden of housework.

During the Six-Year Plan we scored many successes in our efforts to carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution. The success we achieved in our endeavours to free the women from the heavy burden of housework was also great. In particular, we have built, at state and public expense, a large number of nurseries and kindergartens, something which was a particular concern for the women, and this has enabled us to bring the children up to be excellent masters of the future. However, on its own this is not enough to solve the problem of the emancipation of women completely. If we are to relieve them completely of household drudgery and enable them to play a full part in society and push one wheel of the revolution forward, we have to develop the food-processing industry, clothing industry and other sectors of light industry still further.

Yet another central task of the new Seven-Year Plan is to step up the rate of making the national economy more scientific.

In the past we were very short of our own cadres as a consequence of Japanese imperialist colonial rule, but we have trained a one million strong contingent of intellectuals. In spite of this, our cadres are not very experienced, and our science and technology are lagging behind those of the advanced countries.

Science and technology play an important part in socialist economic construction. We therefore intend to improve our work with scientists over the period of the new Seven-Year Plan and speed up the rate of making the various branches of the national economy more scientific.

This is the main orientation of our new Seven-Year Plan.

You will gain a more complete understanding of it when the policy speech to be delivered at the first session of the Sixth Supreme People's Assembly and the report on the Second Seven-Year Plan are issued at some future date.

Now I shall speak briefly about the struggle of the south Korean people against fascism and for democracy.

The south Korean people are still continuing their struggle for democracy in firm opposition to the fascist oppression and tyranny of the US imperialists and the Park Chung Hee puppet clique. It is not only the young people such as students, and the workers and peasants, but also religious men and even those who have previously served in the puppet government such as Yun Po Son, an ex-“president”, who are calling for democracy in south Korean society.

Where there is oppression, there is resistance, and where there is resistance, a revolution will break out. The south Korean people will become more aware of their situation with each passing day and will overthrow the fascist puppet regime, as they did the puppet Syngman Rhee regime in the past, and set up a new, democratic government. Once this has happened, our country will be reunified in a peaceful way in accordance with the three principles and five-point policy for national reunification proposed by our side.

Now I shall speak about the work of the Korean Democratic Women’s Union in Japan.

The Korean Democratic Women’s Union in Japan has achieved a great deal under the leadership of the Central Standing Committee of Chongryon. In particular, you have done much in the campaign to recover the Korean identity. You have devoted your energies to the education of our young compatriots who belong to the second or third generations of Koreans living in Japan, and prevented them from becoming Japanese, persuaded them to remain Korean and to protect and defend their national rights and their socialist homeland. I would like to express my gratitude once more to you for the great efforts you have made to recover the identity of the Koreans living in Japan.

The first major task facing the Korean Democratic Women’s Union in Japan is to build up its membership and cement its unity.

The most important factor for shattering the enemy’s divisive and subversive moves is unity. The Korean Democratic Women’s Union in Japan should do a good job of uniting Korean women from all walks of

life under the banner of unity. On the strength of this it can frustrate the destructive moves of the US imperialists, Japanese reactionaries and the south Korean puppet clique directed against Chongryon and itself.

You must be ever vigilant, bearing in mind that the enemy is viciously attempting to destroy Chongryon and your union, and you should work hard to cement the unity of your organization. All the organizations of the Korean Democratic Women's Union in Japan, including its Central Standing Committee, should form a strong union of all the Korean women in Japan behind Chongryon and our Party and the Government of the Republic.

You must work efficiently to train future cadres. You should train those women who are fully prepared from the revolutionary and class point of view, as future cadres so that they will continue the work of the Korean Democratic Women's Union in Japan from one generation to the next.

The Korean Democratic Women's Union in Japan should work hard for national reunification.

Your efforts in the struggle for national reunification are a great encouragement to the south Korean people, particularly the women, and exert a revolutionary influence upon them. The cause of national reunification can be successful only when the strength of the entire nation is directed towards it. Chongryon and the Korean Democratic Women's Union in Japan should therefore imbue the Korean women and our other compatriots in Japan with our Party's Juche idea and rally them as one so that they take an active part in the cause of national reunification, holding the firm conviction that the country can be reunified by the efforts of the Koreans themselves without any interference from foreign forces.

At the same time, the Korean Democratic Women's Union in Japan should improve its work with the women of Japan so that they render strong support to the movement of Koreans in Japan and form a correct understanding of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea.

Up until now your union has worked well with the women of Japan. I am most satisfied and think highly of the fact that you have

energetically conducted the movement of Korean women in Japan with the support and sympathy of the Japanese women, through working efficiently with them.

You must put more effort into your work with Japanese women so that they bring pressure to bear upon the Japanese reactionaries to cease their suppression of the movement of Koreans in Japan and so that they check and frustrate the subversive moves of the south Korean puppets. At the same time, you must ensure that the women of Japan exert a good influence upon their children and husbands so that they form a correct understanding of our country and support Korea's reunification.

The Korean women in Japan should visit the homeland frequently. It is a very good thing that on this occasion the Comrade Chairman of the Central Standing Committee of the Korean Democratic Women's Union in Japan has come here in the company of many workers from the standing committee. From now on, not only the officials under the central authorities but also many lesser officials should visit the homeland. The chairmen of the prefectural women's organizations should each lead a women's delegation or they may come in the company of the Japanese women who visit our country.

There is no problem in visiting the homeland. If you simply go to Beijing by plane, you will be able to reach Pyongyang by the plane which flies between the two cities twice a week. Many planes from different countries fly between Beijing and Tokyo. Therefore, if you leave Tokyo at an appropriate time to meet the plane bound for Pyongyang from Beijing, you will be able to get to the homeland in a single day.

You may also come to the homeland via the Soviet Union. We have a regular flight to Khabarovsk, so if you go there, you can catch this plane to get to the homeland. And if a large group of people is to come, they may travel on the ship *Mangyongbong*. So, as you can see, there are many routes to the homeland, so there is not the slightest difficulty getting here.

From now on you should organize frequent visits here for the

officials of the Women's Union and other women compatriots in Japan, so that they get to know the homeland well.

At the same time, it would be good if a lot of Japanese women were to visit our country. If any Japanese women express a desire to visit our country, you must strongly encourage them to do so.

The Japanese reactionaries issue false publicity to the effect that we will not open our door to them. However, the fact is that it is they who adopt restrictive measures because they fear that the Japanese will be imbued with the Red idea if they visit our country. We allow Japanese people to visit our country as frequently as they please.

Several years ago I met a delegation of women activists under the Japan Socialist Party who were on a visit to our country. They were all good people. Apparently they are now working well in Japan on our behalf. From now onwards you should send many Japanese women to our country.

People from all levels of society should be allowed to visit our country.

The young people of Japan, her journalists and other men of the press and many other people who have visited our country, are now working well on our behalf.

The Japanese people have only heard the evil propaganda concerning our country that has been spread by the south Korean puppets and the US and Japanese reactionaries. It is only by visiting our country and seeing the true situation here that they will understand that all the propaganda they have heard concerning our country is a lie. If those Japanese people who visit our country relate, when they are back at home, what they themselves have seen and felt, one person will be able to give ten others a full understanding of Korea, ten a hundred, a hundred a thousand and a thousand ten thousand. Then an increasing number of people will have a correct understanding of Korea. When this happens, the falsity of the enemy's reactionary propaganda will be completely exposed.

All the Japanese people from various social levels whom I have met when they were visiting our country, have expressed their admiration.

All the people of conscience, except those evil elements who deliberately tried to find fault with our country, have said that our country had made remarkable progress and was a good place to live.

European visitors to our country also express their admiration for the progress that has been made here.

Yesterday I met a delegation from the Portuguese Socialist Party. The head of the delegation told me: "Before now we've heard only evil propaganda concerning Korea. During this visit to Korea we have completely changed our opinion. Back home, we shall form a Portugal-Korea friendship association and a solidarity committee to support Korea's reunification, and we shall persuade the General Secretary of our Party to visit Korea at some time in the future. We shall also persuade him to take the initiative in raising the question of Korea's reunification at the international meeting of the heads of Socialist Parties to be held in Japan." What he said means, in effect, that as Europeans they had known nothing about Korea.

One country's president who visited our country not long ago, said: "You have built up Pyongyang, which was reduced to rubble during the Fatherland Liberation War, into a large, modern city in a matter of only 20 years. This is hard to imagine. Several hundred years would normally be needed to build such a city." He asked whether the Kumsusan Assembly Hall had been designed and built by Korean people, and said that his country had yet to build such an assembly hall; he added that should his country ever decide to erect such a splendid building at some time in the future, they would use our technicians.

Ours is a small country that has gone through three years of war. However, our people have been able to make rapid progress in such a short time because, as the people who defeated the US imperialists, they have worked with renewed courage, firmly rallied behind the Party.

By working efficiently with the Japanese people, we should get them to form a correct understanding of the Park Chung Hee "regime" and to render full support to the DPRK and the cause of national reunification.

The Park Chung Hee “regime” is supported by money provided by Japan and the United States. If the United States and Japan stop providing it with money and withdraw their support, this “regime” will not survive, but topple.

The year before last a delegation of Diet members from the Japan Liberal-Democratic Party, who are interested in our country, visited here. During my talk with them, I said: “Figuratively speaking, the Park Chung Hee ‘regime’ is like a horse-hair hat worn by old Koreans in the past. The hat will stay on a person’s head without being blown off if it is tied on with two strings. The US imperialists are playing the role of one of the strings that keep the Park Chung Hee ‘regime’ in place and the Japanese reactionaries are the other string. If one of the two strings is cut, the hat will be blown off by the wind. If the Japanese cut one string of the hat, the Park Chung Hee ‘regime’ will not survive and a democrat will come to power in south Korea. If this happens, Korea will be reunified peacefully without recourse to war. Why, then, are you supporting the Park Chung Hee ‘regime’?”

After hearing me out, one of the young members of the delegation said that they would cut one of the hat strings that kept the Park Chung Hee “regime” going. Hearing him, another man said that in the prevailing situation it would be difficult for them to cut one of the hat strings immediately, but that they could loosen it if they worked hard.

So I said: “It would be a good thing if you were only to loosen one of the hat strings. If you did this, the hat would be tossed about in the wind, and in the end the hat-like Park Chung Hee ‘regime’ would not remain in place. If you are to cut one string of the hat or loosen it, you should first make the Japanese reactionaries stop giving aid to the Park Chung Hee ‘regime’.”

The attitude of the delegation towards us following their visit to our country is not bad. A woman who visited our country in company with that delegation is also working well for us.

You must not only issue good publicity about Korea to the Japanese, but also work hard to persuade a lot of them to visit our country.

In conclusion, I hope that when you return to Japan, you will develop the work of the Korean Democratic Women's Union in Japan and take it to a higher stage, drawing on the experience gained in your work over the past 30 years, and thus achieve greater success in your activities to defend the democratic national rights of the Korean people in Japan, to protect and defend the socialist motherland in every way, to achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the country and to build a new world which is free from imperialism, exploitation and oppression.

ON SOME TASKS FACING THE KOREAN JOURNALISTS IN JAPAN

**Talk to a Delegation of Korean
Journalists from Japan**

November 20, 1977

It gives me a great pleasure to meet you today.

I should like first to express my gratitude to you, in the name of the Party Central Committee, the Government of the Republic and in my own name, for the great deal of work you are doing in the field of the press under Chongryon to defend the socialist homeland and the democratic national rights of the Korean compatriots in Japan and to achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

At present the situation in the homeland is very promising, as you have seen for yourselves.

All the people of our country are firmly united behind the Party Central Committee and the Government of the Republic. One hundred per cent of the electorate took part in the recent election of deputies to the Sixth Supreme People's Assembly and every one of them voted in favour of the deputies nominated. This has once again demonstrated to the whole world the indestructible unity and cohesion of our people who are closely rallied behind our Party and the Government of the Republic.

We intend to convene the first session of the Sixth Supreme People's Assembly on or around December 15. This session will form a new Government of the Republic and discuss the Second Seven-Year

National Economic Plan. I am now preparing the policy speech to be delivered to the Supreme People's Assembly. In this speech I intend to concentrate on some problems that arise in strengthening the people's government, including those of giving fuller play to democracy in state activities and opposing bureaucracy, as well as speaking about the basic tasks of the new Seven-Year Plan.

In the homeland the three major tasks set by our Party for national reunification are being implemented with success. These tasks are to build socialism successfully in the northern half of Korea, to offer the south Korean people's movement for democracy our full support and thus strengthen the revolutionary forces there and to support the international working-class movement and the national liberation struggle of the oppressed people, strengthen unity with the socialist countries, the countries of the third world and cement solidarity with the revolutionary forces of the world.

I should first like to refer to how socialism is being built in the homeland.

The three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural—are now being properly implemented here. The idea of carrying out these three revolutions is the one we have advanced for the first time. If we are to build socialism and communism, we must not fail to conduct revolutions in the ideological, technical and cultural fields.

The emancipation of the masses from class domination and subjugation is carried out through the socialist revolution, but freeing them from the fetters of outdated ideology, technology and culture is carried out through the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions.

The building of socialism and communism is no easy task because its aim is to make all the people prosperous. It would be a simple matter to build a society similar to a capitalist one where there is a distinction between the rich and the poor—some people are well-off and others are badly off. However, it is not at all easy to bring prosperity to everyone, feeding and dressing them all equally well and educating every one of them.

Even that country which carried out the socialist revolution dozens

of years ago, has not yet built a communist society.

Many complicated problems arise in the course of translating Marx's theory on the building of communism into reality. Our policy of the three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural—is the most legitimate policy for building socialism and communism, both in the light of the requirements that stem from the nature of socialist and communist society and of the practical experience of other socialist countries.

In the homeland we shall start to implement the Second Seven-Year National Economic Plan next year. The main task of this plan is to speed up the rate of creating a Juche-oriented, modern and scientific national economy. It can be said that our country has reached the stage where we are able to carry out this task because the firm foundations of an independent national economy have already been laid.

After the war we put forward the basic policy in socialist economic construction of giving priority to the growth of heavy industry while, at the same time, developing light industry and agriculture. At that time the anti-Party, counter-revolutionary factionalists who had wormed their way into the Party opposed this, arguing that no other country was following such a line in economic construction, and some foreigners questioned the feasibility of the idea.

Our Party and people, however, implemented this basic policy for socialist economic construction consistently over the years. We built our heavy industry on the rubble of war and reconstructed fine towns and villages in a short space of time. We also made great efforts to develop light industry and agriculture. In particular, during the Six-Year Plan we have built a large number of light industry factories.

We have also made great progress in the fields of science and technology. Furthermore, we have trained a large army of intellectuals one million strong, with the result that we are now able to manage our national economy admirably with our own technical cadres.

We have conducted socialist construction on a planned basis and have got all the working people to arm themselves fully with the Juche idea and give full play to their revolutionary enthusiasm and creative

abilities in socialist construction. As a result, our country has developed to such an extent that there is no comparison between its past and its present.

All this testifies to the legitimacy of the lines and policies proposed by our Party in the past—the basic line of socialist economic construction, the line of the three revolutions, the three major tasks of the technical revolution set at the Fifth Party Congress and others.

I believe that, being members of the press, you are well acquainted with the recent developments in socialist construction in the homeland.

Our country is not facing any economic difficulties. The only difficulty, if any, is that we cannot sell our goods to foreign countries as soon as they are produced.

In many of the world's countries output is falling because of difficulties in supplying raw materials, fuel and food, and factories have closed down and many people have lost their jobs. Because of the economic crisis worldwide other countries cannot afford to buy our goods. As a result, we are unable to sell, as we would like, the lead, zinc and iron which we once used to export in large quantities. Moreover, their prices are falling. Some countries are attempting to buy our goods at a low price and sell their own at a high one.

Moreover, we cannot export, when we want to, even those goods which we otherwise could, because we have only a few large cargo ships.

In the past we traded in the main with socialist countries. However, at present we are conducting extensive trade not only with these countries, but also with the countries of the third world and with capitalist countries. We therefore need many large cargo ships.

In the past we did not build many large cargo ships because we relied mainly on the railways to trade with socialist countries. So we have only a few cargo ships. On top of that, we cannot obtain more even if we had the money because the major powers have monopolized the world's shipping to transport the provisions they are buying from other countries. This is causing us some difficulties in our foreign trade.

We intend to mass-produce and sell those goods which are urgently needed by other countries. For instance, we can export as much magnesia clinker as we want. Magnesia clinker is essential for the metallurgical industry. Apparently the deposits of magnesite, the raw material for producing magnesia clinker, have been practically exhausted throughout the world. Therefore, all the countries with a developed metallurgical industry want to buy magnesia clinker from us. Japanese also seem to want to buy it from our country. The number of countries who want some is now very large.

The deposits of magnesite in our country are inexhaustible. If we mine it in large quantities and increase the production of magnesia clinker, we shall be able to increase the rate of economic construction by developing foreign trade rapidly by selling it abroad.

A bumper crop is witnessed in our farming every year. Currently many countries are having to buy a large amount of food from others because their crops are poor. But our country is free from any worries about food because here a rich crop is reaped from one year to the next.

It is of the greatest importance to ensure that we gather a rich harvest and find a complete solution to the food problem even though we shall have to postpone other matters for a short time. There is no compromise with an empty stomach. We are concentrating on the solution of the food problem, always devoting great efforts to agriculture; we gather a good harvest every year and store up large quantities of provisions.

This year, too, the whole nation has assisted the rural areas and thus another bumper crop has been reaped. Through my talk with the senior agricultural officials of various provinces I have discovered that the crops are good throughout all the provinces except the northern part of North Hamgyong Province which has suffered some damage from the drought because irrigation has not yet been fully established there.

Judging from the level of development which our industry and agriculture have attained, I believe that we will succeed in making our national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientific. The new

Seven-Year Plan can therefore be said to have been drawn up on the principle of self-reliance.

Now I shall refer to the question of the revolution in south Korea.

The south Korean revolution has experienced many ups and downs. This was because the internal forces of the south Korean revolution were not strongly organized and US imperialist spies were able to worm their way into its organization.

Let us examine this from the historical viewpoint. Pak Hon Yong entrenched himself in the party as a spy of the US imperialists, and disrupted the south Korean revolution. He made no effort to join with the forces in south Korea with which he could have done so. He did not collaborate with the People's Party headed by Ryo Un Hyong, even though that, too, would have been possible. As a result, this party was destroyed because of the enemy's repression.

Later the Progressive Party was formed in south Korea and worked fairly well. Jo Pong Am, head of this party, fought Syngman Rhee in the "election" for the puppet presidency. He won a large number of votes because he advocated the peaceful reunification of the country. Frightened by the rapidly spreading influence of the Progressive Party among the south Korean people, the US imperialists and their minions murdered Jo Pong Am and forcibly dissolved the Progressive Party. Spies had also entrenched themselves in this party and secretly kept the enemy informed of what was happening in it.

After the Progressive Party had been dissolved, a popular uprising took place in April 1960, and following this, other progressive political forces made their appearance, in the course of which the Socialist Mass Party came into being. However, this party was also destroyed because of the actions of the spies within its ranks and also because of brutal suppression by the enemy. As a result, the good influence of the April 19 Popular Uprising did not extend far.

Following the dissolution of the Socialist Mass Party, the Revolutionary Party for Reunification was formed by Comrade Kim Jong Thae and other south Korean revolutionaries. Comrade Kim Jong Thae was a fine revolutionary with a steadfast revolutionary ideology.

However, hypocrites wormed their way into the party because he failed to select its members carefully when forming it. And owing to their betrayal, many of the party members were arrested and slaughtered at the hands of the enemy. At present the Revolutionary Party for Reunification is fighting hard against the continued repression of the US imperialists and their minions.

The present situation of the revolution in south Korea is promising. The discontent of the south Korean people with the US imperialists and the Park Chung Hee puppet clique is mounting with every passing day. Worship for and fear of the United States are gradually being dissipated and their anti-US, anti-Japanese feelings are rising. Not only the workers, peasants, young people and students, but also religious men in south Korea are fighting against the US imperialists and the Park Chung Hee dictatorial “regime”

In spite of this, there are no leaders, hard-core elements, in south Korea who can unite the people under an organization and take the initiative in leading their anti-US, anti-fascist struggle for democracy. For this reason their struggle is not showing much success.

The most important thing to do is to train the leadership core elements of the revolution in south Korea. It is only when these core elements exist that they will be able to work out a correct strategy and tactics according to the developments in the situation and to fight in a flexible way. If leading core elements are made up of genuine revolutionaries who are determined to accomplish the south Korean revolution themselves, they will be able to achieve their aim through one person educating and uniting ten, ten a hundred, a hundred a thousand and a thousand ten thousand.

In the past I conducted an underground struggle, was imprisoned and also waged an armed struggle. The experience of my 20-year revolutionary struggle against the Japanese shows that if we have core elements made up of communist revolutionaries of a Juche type, it is possible to conduct a revolution by rallying many sympathizers and young people.

You may think that it will take a long time for steadfast communist

revolutionaries to develop in south Korea. But that is not the case at all. It is not only elderly people with long experience in the revolutionary struggle who can become such revolutionaries. I did not start my anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle when I was an adult, but in my teens. A man is more courageous when he is young. Therefore, young people must be trained as sturdy communist revolutionaries. If there are trained leading hard-core elements for the south Korean revolution, it will be possible to make that society democratic at an early date and hasten the historic cause of national reunification.

If democracy in south Korean society and the reunification of the country are to be achieved the work of the united front should be efficient. Recently the former Foreign Minister of the south Korean puppet government issued a statement declaring his intention to seek refuge in the United States. Judging from this, he seems to be a good man. Previously he was opposed to communism. However, now he seems to be thinking of the need to reunify the country. From now on, we should be efficient in forming a united front with such people as he.

If we are to work effectively as a united front, we must not fail to build up our own revolutionary forces based on the strength of the working masses. If we have no reliable revolutionary forces of our own, we shall achieve no success in our work in the united front.

If the entire nation fights in firm unity, we will be able to achieve the cause of national reunification. The reunification of the country is not something hazy. If south Korean society is made democratic, it will be quite possible to reunify the country in accordance with the will and desire of all the Korean people.

To proceed, I shall refer briefly to the matter of forming solidarity with the revolutionary forces of the world.

The position of our country in the world is now incomparably more elevated than at the time immediately after the foundation of the Republic and during the Fatherland Liberation War. During the Fatherland Liberation War our country received support only from socialist countries. However, at present it is enjoying the support and sympathy of many countries around the world, including the socialist

countries and the third world. In particular, it is receiving full support from the newly independent and socialist countries.

Although the US imperialists are attempting to disunite other countries and alienate them from one another, the countries of the third world are supporting the revolutionary struggle of our people and following an independent road.

Now I shall speak about some tasks facing the Korean journalists in Japan.

First, you must work hard to ensure that your press activities are lawful, because you are carrying them out in the enemy camp.

The reactionaries are obstructing and keeping watch on your press activities all the time. You should therefore work hard to adhere to the lawful position you have already won in your press activities.

To this end, you must work closely with Japanese journalists. Needless to say, being journalists from a capitalist society, they do have some limitations. But they have also some progressive ideas. During my talks with many Japanese journalists, including those from the *Asahi Shimbun*, *Yomiuri Shimbun* and *Mainichi Shimbun*, I have discovered that they are determined to defend justice. One Japanese visitor to our country asked me always to regard him as a fighter who is standing with the Korean people in the ranks of their just struggle.

If your work with Japanese journalists is effective, you will persuade them to sympathize with and support our country and to bring pressure to bear on the Japanese reactionaries so that they cease their unfriendly acts against our country. Moreover, if you receive the active support and encouragement of the Japanese journalists through working effectively with them, the Japanese reactionaries will not be able to disrupt your press activities without reason.

Secondly, you should drive home to the Japanese people, the south Korean people and the patriots and Korean compatriots in Japan the reactionary nature of the enemy's moves to create "two Koreas".

The Japanese people believe that if they persuade their country to recognize the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, they will be helping our country. Recently I have met many Japanese people, and

they have all said that they would launch a campaign to make Japan recognize the DPRK. Needless to say, this is a good thing. However, there is still the danger that they will fall prey to the enemy's plot to create "two Koreas".

Having put forward the "theory of cross recognition", the US imperialists are now subtly attempting to create "two Koreas". We should be ever vigilant against this. If our work with other countries is not effective, many of them will be taken in by the enemy's scheme to create "two Koreas".

At present many European countries intend to recognize both north and south Korea. Because of this, of late our Party has regarded it as an important policy in its external activities to give the world a clear understanding of the true nature of the enemy's plot to create "two Koreas".

You should explain this fully to the political circles and other people in Japan, so that they fully support our country's reunification, not falling prey to the US imperialists' insidious plot to create "two Koreas", which is designed to divide our country permanently like Germany and create two countries.

At the same time, you must work among wide sections of the Japanese people so that they make the Japanese government desist from obstructing the reunification of our country and from giving aid to the fascist dictatorial "regime" in south Korea.

When the delegation of interested Diet members from the Japan Liberal Democratic Party visited our country in 1975, I explained to them the true nature of the south Korean "regime".

At that time I told them: "The Park Chung Hee 'regime' does not have the support of the people. Figuratively speaking, the Park Chung Hee 'regime' is like the horsehair hat which Koreans used to wear in olden times. The hat will remain on the head only when it is tied by two strings. The US imperialists play the role of one string of the hat—the Park Chung Hee 'regime'—and the Japanese reactionaries play the part of the other string. If one of the two strings is broken, the hat will not stay on the head. In the same way, if either the US imperialists or the

Japanese reactionaries discontinue their support, the hat-like Park Chung Hee ‘regime’ will not remain in place.”

Upon hearing what I said, one of the members of the delegation said that they would break one of the two strings of the hat which kept the Park Chung Hee “regime” in place. Another member said that in the prevailing situation it would be difficult for them to do so immediately, but added that if they worked hard, they would at least be able to loosen it.

What they meant by their statement that they could loosen one of the two hat strings was that they would prevent the Japanese government from giving effective “aid” and support to the Park Chung Hee “regime”. So I said: “It would be good if you at least loosen one string of the hat. If you do just that, the hat will be tossed about in the wind and will be blown away in the end”. Upon hearing this, they all applauded.

We think that you will provoke a favourable response in the Japanese people so that they oppose the Park Chung Hee “regime” and support Korea’s reunification, if you explain to them our Party’s policy for national reunification and, at the same time, offer them a detailed and vivid description of the crimes of the Park Chung Hee clique which is now oppressing the south Korean people, selling the country out and which has abducted Kim Dae Jung, and also tell them of the other despicable acts committed by the south Korean “regime”.

You can conduct good information work because in Japan there are such a large organization as Chongryon, our schools and press and information institutions and many other channels of communication. It is a fact that you have achieved great success in your information work by publishing a great many newspapers, magazines and other publications. In spite of your success, you must not rest content, but conduct a more detailed and forceful information campaign among the Japanese people against the enemy’s scheme to create “two Koreas” so that they will offer us active support.

Thirdly, you must provide a good explanation to the south Korean people of our Party’s policy for national reunification.

There should be two aspects to your work with the south Korean people. On the one hand, you should educate them in progressive and revolutionary ideas, and, on the other hand, give education in patriotism to those who have been taken in by the anti-communist propaganda of the Park Chung Hee puppet clique, so that they become aware of the need to reunify the country in concert with the communists.

If we are to reunify the country, we should get the people of south Korea to cease their opposition to communism and unite with the communists. The country will never be reunified if the socialism which is being built in one half of the country is rejected or opposed. The problem of the country's reunification can be solved only when the north and the south unite on the principle of great national unity transcending any differences in ideas, ideals and social system. You must stress this in particular in your information work.

I have met many Korean compatriots from the United States visiting the homeland. They have been exposed to a lot of anti-communist propaganda and nearly all of them have anti-communist ideas.

I told them: "If you oppose communism, our nation will inevitably be divided permanently into two. There is no question about this. We do not object to your believing in Christianity. Nor should you oppose our adherence to communism. This is the only way that you and we can live together as one nation. If we oppose what you believe and if you reject what we have faith in, how can we live together as one nation?" After hearing me out, they told me that it was difficult for them to say that they would unite with the communists immediately, but that some time in the future it would be right to do as I said.

When talking with foreigners, too, I have said on more than one occasion that we have no intention of forcing communism on south Korea.

In my talk to the delegate from the south Korean side who visited Pyongyang to take part in the high-level political talks between the north and the south, I told him that we have no intention of forcing

communism on south Korea and that south Korea, too, should not try to impose its ideology on the northern half of Korea. At first the south Korean delegate said that the north and south could not unite because they were poles apart. So I rebuked him, saying that this allegation did not stand to reason because ours was a nation sharing the same blood and living on one and the same territory, and I proposed to him the three principles for national reunification. I said: “First, the country should be reunified independently without relying on any external forces and without any interference from abroad. Ours is a resourceful nation with a five thousand year long history. So there is no reason for us to reunify the country with foreign interference. Second, we should promote great national unity, transcending any differences in ideas, ideals and social system. Let us unite by leaving communism, our belief, and your own belief as they are. Third, the country’s reunification must be achieved by peaceful means without recourse to force of arms. If the north and south fight each other, everything we have built will be destroyed, won’t it?” The south Korean delegate fully supported and approved of my three principles for national reunification, saying that he accepted them as they stood.

After that, a delegate from our side visited Seoul and reiterated the three principles for national reunification to the person in authority in south Korea. At the time we proposed that the North-South Joint Statement be published with the three principles for national reunification as the keynote, if he agreed to them. However, he said that he could not publish the North-South Joint Statement immediately, although he did approve of the three principles. So it was only some time later that the North-South Joint Statement with the three principles for national reunification as the keynote was published. Probably the south Korean authorities delayed it in order to obtain the approval of the Americans.

I also held talks with a number of south Korean representatives who visited Pyongyang some time later. While the north-south high-level political talks were in progress, the south Korean authorities clamoured for “confrontation accompanied by dialogue”, “competition

accompanied by dialogue” and “coexistence accompanied by dialogue”. So I told them that the north and the south must unite instead of “being in confrontation with each other while talking”, that they must collaborate instead of “competing with each other while talking” and that they must unite the country instead of “coexisting while talking”.

At the same time I also referred in detail to the ways in which the north and south could collaborate. I told them: “The north and south should cooperate in many spheres. Let us start with economic cooperation. The northern half of Korea is very rich in mineral resources. In the Musan Mine alone there are deposits of iron ore amounting to thousands of millions of tons. Let us develop the mines jointly; we shall provide the equipment and you should send your people to the northern half instead of selling labour to other countries like West Germany and Brazil. Currently you are buying ore from far-off countries. Would it not be better if you were to develop mines jointly with us and use the ore mined from them?”

I also told them: “You are now replacing the thatched roofs of your rural houses with plastic tiles after obtaining a huge loan from Japan, allegedly to launch the ‘new village movement’. You will not improve the life of the peasants by undertaking this type of project. To do so, you should first undertake irrigation projects. We have vast experience and many technicians in this field because we have already undertaken many irrigation projects. We shall send you irrigation equipment and technicians, and you should contribute the manpower. It is only when irrigation projects, afforestation and water conservation are carried out in south Korea that the peasants there will prosper.”

I also proposed that the north and south should cooperate in fishing. I told them: “At present the south Korean fishermen are catching a small amount of fish in distant waters. So the south Korean people do not have fish to eat. Every year in the pollack season huge shoals of pollack teem into our East Sea because that is where the warm and cold currents meet. But we catch only some hundreds of thousands of tons at the most. So what about allowing the south Korean fishermen to

catch fish in the fishing grounds of the northern half of Korea?”

I also proposed that the north and the south conduct trade between each other. I told them: “Why can’t you conduct trade with people who are of the same nation as you, when you are doing so with other countries? We can provide you with coal, nonferrous metals and many other things. Would it not be better for you to give us what you can in exchange for what you obtain from us? It is only when the north and the south cooperate in the economic field in this way that our country will cease to be divided into two, and will be reunified.” The south Korean representatives agreed to our proposals on north-south economic cooperation, saying that we were right on all counts.

Afterwards, however, the south Korean authorities proposed that the north and south jointly develop Mt. Kungang as a tourist resort, refusing to put any of our proposals on economic cooperation into effect. Their proposal was aimed at involving us in making money by building hotels and offering *kisaeng*, loose women entertainers, to foreign tourists, as they do in south Korea.

You should provide a detailed explanation of our Party’s policy for national reunification, including the three principles for attaining it, to the south Korean people and to the Korean compatriots in Japan who are being influenced by the south Korean puppet clique. At the same time, you should expose to them all how the enemy supports our proposals at the north-south talks, but opposes them behind the scenes. By doing so, you will ensure that they form a correct opinion that the country can be reunified only when they unite with the communists and that it is only when the country is reunified that the whole Korean nation will live as well as the peoples of other countries, and that they take an active part in the struggle to achieve national reunification.

You must also give wide publicity to our Party’s policy for national reunification among the Korean compatriots in the United States and among the people of Japan.

Fourth, you should conduct effective information work relating to the socialist motherland among the Japanese and other people around the world.

At present the work of our officials in the external information sector is poor. I meet people from many countries, including heads of state. They all say that there is not enough of our information abroad. We are poor at publicizing our country to the Europeans, too.

One particular president who visited our country recently said: "Korea has made incredible progress. Pyongyang has been built into a marvellous city. Other countries could not build such a city even in several hundred years. However Korea has built Pyongyang, which was reduced to rubble in the war, into a pleasant city in a matter of just over 20 years. Such a miraculous achievement can be witnessed nowhere else in the world. In spite of this, the people of Europe still do not know much about Korea." So I expressed my wish to him that the news agency of his country should give wide publicity to our country. All the heads of state of other European countries who have visited our country, have also expressed their admiration.

You should conduct extensive information work concerning the homeland abroad.

In the homeland we are experiencing difficulties in our external information work because not many of our people are good at foreign languages. So we are now launching a campaign to teach them, but I think it will take some time before a full solution to this problem can be found.

Under such circumstances you should make a large quantity of information material to send abroad and distribute it to many countries, particularly the newly-emergent countries. Almost all the newly-emergent countries were formerly colonies of such countries as Britain, France and Spain. Therefore, it would be a good idea for you to send these countries a large quantity of publications in English, French and Spanish. The total population of the Arab countries is 150 million. Therefore, you must also conduct extensive information work for them.

In external information work it is important to produce a large quantity of material rather than a wide variety.

If you provide many of the world's people with a correct

understanding of our country and if you demonstrate how unreasonable is the US imperialist occupation of south Korea through efficient information work abroad, we shall win more supporters and sympathizers for our revolution and hasten national reunification by bringing international pressure to bear on the US imperialists to compel them to withdraw from south Korea.

I hope that upon your return to Japan you will convey thanks to the journalists under Chongryon on behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea, the Government of the Republic and in my own name.

LET US BUILD UP THE STRENGTH OF THE PEOPLE'S ARMY THROUGH EFFECTIVE POLITICAL WORK

**Speech at the Seventh Congress of Motivation Workers
in the Korean People's Army**

November 30, 1977

Comrades,

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic and as Supreme Commander, I would like first to extend warm greetings to all the comrades present at this Congress of Motivation Workers in the Korean People's Army.

I also congratulate you warmly on the successful proceeding of this congress.

I wish to take the opportunity today to touch upon the current policies of our Party, on the problem of intensifying political work in the People's Army and on a few points that the soldiers of the People's Army must abide by in their military service.

1. ON OUR PARTY'S POLICY FOR ACHIEVING THE INDEPENDENT, PEACEFUL REUNIFICATION OF THE COUNTRY

Our Party is following a three-point policy for achieving the independent, peaceful reunification of the country. To this end our

Party is striving, firstly, to further strengthen the socialist position of the northern half of Korea by accelerating socialist construction; secondly, to offer active support and encouragement to the south Korean people in their struggle for democracy; and thirdly, to strengthen our solidarity with the revolutionary peoples all over the world, particularly those of socialist states, third world countries and non-aligned nations. Our Party considers it very important to carry out these three tasks of building socialism well in the northern half of Korea, of supporting the revolutionary struggle of the south Korean people and of strengthening solidarity with the revolutionary forces of the world.

What is of primary importance in the struggle for independent and peaceful reunification is to build socialism in the northern half of Korea with success.

Socialist construction in our country is making good progress, moving from one success to the next.

We are conducting three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural—in order to build socialism.

The fundamental aspect of the ideological revolution is to imbue the whole of society with the Juche idea through the education of all the people. Previously we have worked hard to promote the ideological revolution, with the result that all the people have been fully imbued with the Juche idea, the revolutionary idea of our Party, so now the Juche idea is pervading the whole of society. This is a great achievement for our Party.

I am very proud that all our people, particularly the workers, cooperative farmers, working intellectuals and men of the People's Army are fully armed with the Juche idea and united as one man behind the Party.

In those countries where the ideological revolution is neglected, various negative phenomena have become evident. In some countries the people are ideologically degenerate and rotten, which gives rise to a variety of social disorders.

A high mountain only displays its full grandeur when compared to a

small hill. In the same way the achievement of our Party looks truly great and worthy of pride when it is seen against the background of these other countries. In our country all the people are fully armed with the monolithic ideology of the Party and closely united around the Party and they move as one upon the Party's word of command. Nowhere else in the world are such a great Party and a great people as ours. That is why the socialist countries, third world nations and non-aligned states envy our country.

This year many heads of state visited our country, and they were struck with great admiration for the way in which our people were united solidly around the Party and for their great revolutionary enthusiasm. One president who visited our country stated that nowhere else in the world could a people be found who were so closely united and who had such great revolutionary enthusiasm as the Korean people and added that a party with such a people had nothing to fear. He also marvelled at the extremely high rate at which socialist construction was progressing in our country, and on seeing how we had built such a grand and modern city as Pyongyang on the rubble of war in only 20 short years, he said that such a high rate of construction was quite inconceivable in his country. Socialist construction progresses rapidly in our country because the workers, peasants, working intellectuals and the officers and men of the People's Army, firmly united around the Party, rose up as one in response to the Party's call to work with a high degree of revolutionary enthusiasm.

It is true that some shortcomings are revealed in our work. But these shortcomings are incidental to our rapid advance and are caused by attempting to do too much. We continue to criticize such shortcomings and we are putting them right.

The great success of our Party in the ideological revolution is beyond comparison. Just as Mt. Paektu towers high above a range of lesser peaks, so our achievements are prominent and defy all comparison with those of other countries.

The information and motivation workers of the People's Army should take great pride in the achievements of our Party in the

ideological revolution and tell all Party members and soldiers about them.

Alongside the ideological revolution, the technical and cultural revolutions are also forging ahead.

The main goal of the technical revolution is to accomplish the three major tasks set by the Party at its Fifth Congress.

In no way do we regard technological development simply as technical reconstruction or as an economic task, but as a revolution, a political task. After taking power and freeing the working people from exploitation and oppression through the socialist revolution, communists are confronted with the important task of freeing them also from heavy labour. Relieving the working people of the need to do heavy labour and removing the essential differences between the different kinds of work is, in itself, a revolution. That is why at the Fifth Party Congress we defined the three major tasks of the technical revolution to be to narrow down considerably the distinctions between heavy and light work and between agricultural and industrial work and to free women from the heavy burden of housework.

To accomplish the three major tasks of the technical revolution, we are now endeavouring to make the work easier in the mining and other industries where the work is hard and injurious to health. In the countryside we are endeavouring to ensure that farm work is done with machines, electricity and chemicals, so that the farmers need work only an eight-hour day like factory workers, and are able to do their work unaffected by seasonal changes and the vagaries of the climate. We are also promoting the work of freeing women from the heavy burden of household chores.

We have built a great many nurseries and kindergartens throughout our country and thus provided a full solution to the matter of allowing the women to join the rest of society and work without any worries. The nurseries and kindergartens are accommodating more than 3,500,000 children, and we are bringing up all of them at state and public expense.

Today the women of many countries are not having many children,

even though they might want to, because they are worried about bringing them up and supporting them. The women of our country, however, have no such worries. In other countries the women regulate how many children they have because of economic considerations, but this is not the case in our country. Our women are only ever advised to practise birth control to protect their health.

In the future we are going to free the women from even having to cook and liberate them completely from all domestic chores, through the rapid development of light industry, particularly the food industry. This is the final step in the emancipation of women. It is only when they are freed from exploitation, oppression, personal subordination and inequality, and then even from the burden of housework, so that they can push forward one wheel of the revolution on an equal social footing with men, that the emancipation of women will be complete.

We should promote the technical revolution without let-up and eliminate all distinctions in labour, including the discrepancy between physical and mental labour, and achieve the complete social equality of all the working people. This is one assault in the last battle and a great revolutionary task we should carry out for building a communist society.

I will not dwell at length on the cultural revolution because it was clarified in all its aspects in the *Theses on Socialist Education* published at the 14th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee a short time ago.

The cultural revolution in our country is different from that in other countries. It is aimed at making all the working people master at least one technical skill and at turning all members of society into intellectuals. That all the members of society should build up a large store of knowledge and reach advanced technical levels is essential for building a communist society, the most civilized and developed of societies. Accordingly, the cultural revolution is also one round in the last fight to build a communist society.

Universal 11-year compulsory education has now been established here. In the future we will set up more study-while-you-work colleges

to provide higher education for all the working people. This is an original and great aim of the cultural revolution that has been set by our Party.

As you see, the tasks of the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions formulated by our Party are revolutionary tasks that are independent, creative and communist, and the three red flags of the three revolutions, carried forward by our Party, are the greatest flags of the revolution.

Today I will not describe to you the concrete achievements of socialist economic and cultural construction, such as the number of power stations and factories we have built and the schools we have expanded. I believe you know all about these things through the newspapers, magazines, radio and television.

The soldiers of the People's Army should be fully aware that our Party's line of the three revolutions is correct and must feel due pride and a great sense of self-respect that all the people in our country are united firmly around the Party and have endeavoured staunchly to build up the northern half of the country into a reliable base of the revolution, a base of communism.

United in one body with all the people, the soldiers of the People's Army should turn out with them in the struggle to carry the honourable tasks of the three revolutions to a successful conclusion.

For the independent and peaceful reunification of the country, the south Korean revolution should be conducted while socialism is being built in the northern half of the country.

The south Korean revolution can be won only when the south Korean people are awakened to revolutionary awareness. The most important task facing the south Korean revolution is for the south Korean people to overthrow the military fascist dictatorship through a resolute, anti-fascist struggle for democracy and to isolate the American imperialists, who are backing the south Korean puppet clique, in the international arena.

The irregularities and corruption committed by the south Korean puppet clique are something much talked about throughout the world.

Even the US Congress has been creating a fuss about the graft case of the south Korean puppet clique.

The south Korean puppet clique is made up of extremely vicious villains. They have raised a loan from the Americans and are using it to bribe Americans. These days the American imperialists' military bosses, such as the Secretary of the Army, their air force commander and other commanders, visit south Korea frequently, because the south Korean puppet clique lines their pockets with the money borrowed from America and supplies them with *kisaeng*, women entertainers. If their sole reason for visiting south Korea was to give military guidance, the American imperialist war bosses would not need to go there dozens of times every year. The Americans are now complaining about the bribery committed by the south Korean puppet clique because they have discovered the true nature of their actions. It is no bad thing that this bribery is being denounced within the United States.

The south Korean puppet clique is now isolated not only from the south Korean people but also from its allies and masters. True, some American reactionaries do support it, but the vast majority of the American people and democrats are exposing and condemning its fascist despotism, its suppression of human rights, its irregularities and corruption. This is a great help to the democratic movement in south Korea.

Today the south Korean people are continuing their struggle against fascism and for democracy despite the harsh fascist oppression of the puppet clique. The voices demanding the overthrow of the military fascist dictatorship are growing ever louder among the workers, peasants, young people, students and even the religious people and the upper strata in south Korea.

Under such circumstances we should support the south Korean people in their anti-fascist democratic struggle in every way possible so that they overthrow the military fascist dictatorship and drive out the American imperialists, and establish a basis for the independent, peaceful reunification of our country.

Strengthening our solidarity with the revolutionary forces of the

world is the consistent policy of our Party in the struggle for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

In recent years the work of strengthening solidarity with the revolutionary forces of the world has also been going very well.

Our country has upheld independence as a thoroughly independent nation and has won the support and sympathy of all the world's people. All the progressive people of the world, particularly those of the socialist, third world and non-aligned countries, support our Party's Juche idea and its line of political independence, economic self-sufficiency and self-reliant national defence, and wish to learn from them. Today the voices raised in support of our country are ringing out around the world. This shows how right is our Party's independent line and it is a great encouragement for us in our revolution.

When our Party first put forward its line of political independence, economic self-sufficiency and self-reliant national defence under the banner of independence, there were some people who sneered, wondering how a small, divided nation could advance independently, and there were many waverers, too, even within our own ranks. Today, however, everybody supports our Party's independent line and envies it.

A delegation from one socialist nation who visited our country a short time ago expressed their envy for the Korean people on seeing the independent national economy built by the Korean people, who were dealing with all problems by themselves, in accordance with their own needs. I think they were sincere in what they said. If we were to live without independence, tied to another country, even though we had carried out the socialist revolution and established the socialist system, what did we have a revolution for?

The president of one third world country who visited our country asked me what it meant to maintain independence. I replied that when we eat something, we chew and swallow it if it is palatable and spit it out if it is unpleasant. When we adopt a foreign way or do something, we must always ensure that it conforms to the conditions in our country. This, I told him, was what it meant. Now, whenever this

president meets people from our country, he tells them that President Kim Il Sung said that one should eat what is tasty and spit out what is unpleasant and he also tells them that he himself holds fast to this principle.

All of the world's countries aspire to independence. Capitalist countries call for it, not to mention the socialist countries, third world countries and non-aligned nations. That is why I have stated that ours is the age of independence.

Our Party's Juche idea serves as a great banner in strengthening solidarity with the revolutionary forces of the world. Because our Party's Juche idea displays such great vitality in the international arena and commands the sympathy and support of the world's people, the solidarity between our country and many other nations is growing stronger every day. Today the relations between our country and the revolutionary forces of the world have strengthened as never before. This is another great achievement for our Party.

In general, the three major tasks for realizing national reunification, that is, socialist construction in the northern half of Korea, supporting the south Korean people's democratic struggle and strengthening solidarity with the revolutionary forces of the world are all progressing well and smoothly in line with the wishes of our Party.

I hope that upon returning to your units, you will convey this to all the officers and men of the People's Army.

2. ON STRENGTHENING POLITICAL WORK IN THE PEOPLE'S ARMY

I would like to emphasize to you the need for strengthening political information and motivation work, you who are the information and motivation workers holding an important position in the political work of the People's Army.

Political information and motivation work should be given precedence in all activities, including Party work. In any undertaking, political work should go first and then the organizing work should follow.

Giving priority to political work in all activities is a basic policy and an important work method of our Party.

The revolutionary struggle and construction work are undertakings which the people themselves should carry out of their own accord. Unless we draw on the enthusiasm of the masses of the people by giving priority to political work, we cannot move a single inch forward in the revolutionary struggle and construction.

In capitalist society there is no need for political work. The capitalist uses money to make people work, so money is everything to him. If the workers do not work, he does not pay them and sacks them instead. Therefore, the working people in capitalist society have to work to survive.

However, in socialist society the situation is different. In our country everyone has the right to eat from the moment he is born, and everyone is free from any worries about his livelihood. Therefore, in socialist society it is impossible to make the people work by force or money. In socialist society political work must be given priority to ensure that all the people work willingly, understanding the reason why they should work. This is the only way to induce them to work well with enthusiasm.

The same is true of the People's Army. Whether political work is given precedence or not is decisive of the fighting results of a unit. In a unit where the political work is conducted properly, all the soldiers will fight valiantly in high spirits, clearly aware of their duties, and will always win the battle. But the unit in which political work is not given priority and in which there is no careful organization, will be unable to win the battle.

Our achievements in the anti-Japanese armed struggle, in the Fatherland Liberation War and in the work of building up the people's armed forces in the postwar years were all brought about by giving

priority to political work. Experience has shown us that only when political work goes first and is then followed by careful organization will success come in all undertakings.

Today the ranks of the People's Army have been expanded to a greater degree than ever before. The basket has become larger and is carrying great numbers of people of different levels of ideological consciousness. Therefore, it is a matter of the greatest urgency to improve political work.

How, then, shall we conduct good political work in the People's Army?

Firstly, it is necessary to intensify the education of the soldiers in the Juche idea.

Our Party has set the task of immersing our whole society in the Juche idea. So education in the Juche idea should also be intensified in the People's Army so that all the soldiers, from the commanders down to the men, are fully educated in the Juche idea.

The most important thing in equipping the soldiers with the Juche idea—the revolutionary idea of our Party—is to educate them better in the principles of Juche. This is essential for making every soldier clearly aware of the justice of the Juche idea and use his independence and creativity fully in accordance with its demands. In the People's Army, education in the principles of Juche should be promoted so that everyone is fully equipped with its revolutionary principles. In this way we shall help them to overcome bravely every difficulty they encounter during their military and political training and in fulfilling their revolutionary tasks, and prepare them well ideologically to fight at the risk of their lives for the Party and the leader, for their homeland and their people, for the revolution.

In order to arm the soldiers with the Juche idea, education in Juche principles and revolutionary traditions should be properly combined.

It is clearly stated in the Party Rules that our Party has inherited the glorious revolutionary traditions of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. Founded and matured during a protracted revolutionary struggle our Party is now powerful, sound, strong in its adherence to

communism, and capable of leading all the other revolutionary organizations with a high degree of skill.

Our People's Army, too, has inherited the glorious revolutionary traditions of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle. It is the successor to the Korean People's Revolutionary Army. After liberation, the Korean People's Revolutionary Army became the Korean People's Army.

By educating the soldiers of the People's Army in revolutionary traditions we shall show them clearly how their revolutionary forerunners and heroic soldiers fought, shedding their blood and laying down their lives, for the Party and the leader, for their country and their people, during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle and the Fatherland Liberation War. In this way we shall convince all the soldiers that it is a great honour to fight for the Party and the leader, for their country and their people, and induce them to fight unyieldingly to the last drop of their blood, as their revolutionary forerunners did.

An important aspect of educating them in revolutionary traditions is to ensure that they study in depth the *Reminiscences of Anti-Japanese Guerrillas* and novels based on revolutionary traditions. You should not read these just for the sake of entertainment. They are textbooks for the revolutionary education of the people. The information and motivation workers, who are responsible for political work in the army, should understand these works fully and study them deeply.

Secondly, it is essential to intensify the soldiers' class education.

I have spoken on numerous occasions about the need to strengthen the soldiers' class education, but I do not think there is any harm in mentioning it once more today for the purpose of emphasis.

The enemies who are confronting us now are the American and Japanese imperialists. In future we may have to fight these imperialists and the "regime" of the landowners and capitalists in south Korea.

But those who fought the Japanese and American imperialists in the past have grown old and their hair is turning grey, and our young people know little about imperialism and have not suffered from exploitation and oppression under the landowners and capitalists. Our

younger generation has never seen the Japanese imperialists or the American scoundrels, and does not understand, either, the true nature of landowners and capitalists.

This being the case, any failure to give a proper class education will mean that the younger generation is unable to fight the enemy valiantly. Therefore, the class education of the soldiers in the People's Army must be intensified.

One important aspect of this class education is to teach the soldiers not to forget the past when exploitation and oppression were rife.

Above all else it is important to teach every soldier how the Japanese imperialists oppressed our nation and how the American imperialists committed aggressive acts against our country. The Japanese imperialists occupied and ruled our country for 36 years, oppressing and exploiting our people harshly, and then the American imperialists invaded the northern half of Korea and slaughtered our people ruthlessly. This must be made known to every man in the People's Army.

Another important aspect of teaching them about the past is to make sure that they realize how the landowners and capitalists exploited and oppressed our people.

The younger generation is ignorant about the past, when our people were exploited and oppressed, so the young people believe that human society was always fine and decent, just as it is today. In the People's Army the soldiers should be educated not to forget the past, so they realize that the earlier society was not as good to live in as the socialist society of today, and that their revolutionary forerunners fought and shed their blood to build this fine society of ours. Only by doing this will every soldier be fully determined to fight to avoid exploitation and oppression as practised by the landowners and capitalists.

In order to make the soldiers understand imperialism, landowners and capitalists, class education should be given continuously, using graphic description such as novels, films, television and the like.

The novels *The Sea of Blood* and *The Flower Girl* are good material for class education. *The Sea of Blood* depicts how the

Japanese imperialists cruelly massacred Koreans and how our people fought back. And *The Flower Girl* depicts how the landowners oppressed and exploited the peasants in olden times. *The Sea of Blood* will stir up hatred for Japanese imperialism and *The Flower Girl*, hatred for landowners. Every soldier should be encouraged to read many revolutionary novels such as *The Sea of Blood* and *The Flower Girl*.

Another important aspect of class education is to teach the soldiers to think of south Korea.

South Korea covers half the territory of our country and is inhabited by more than half of the population. It was seized by the American imperialists and it is being coveted anew by the Japanese militarists. Just as our people were exploited and oppressed by the Japanese imperialists, landowners and capitalists in the past, so today our south Korean compatriots are being mercilessly exploited and oppressed by the American imperialists and their minions. Therefore, we must never forget south Korea for a single moment.

The information and motivation workers in the People's Army should make sure that the soldiers understand clearly how harshly the south Korean people are being exploited and oppressed by the American imperialists and their minions, so that they have a sense of responsibility, and regard their revolutionary tasks as fulfilled only when they have reclaimed the other half of our country that has been seized by the American imperialists.

Thirdly, all the soldiers should be taught to love their socialist homeland.

When I say that the soldiers should be made to love their homeland, this is not simply because their parents, brothers, sisters, wives and children live there. The main reason is that here we have a socialist system which provides for the well-being of our people.

Our socialist homeland is the best of any country in the world; it is free from exploitation, oppression and taxation, and all the people work and study and are entitled to free medical care here. In other words, our socialist homeland is the country of Juche, politically independent,

economically self-sufficient and self-reliant in national defence.

In the People's Army education in socialist patriotism should be intensified, so that every soldier loves his socialist homeland devotedly and defends it staunchly against any enemy invasion.

Fourthly, all the soldiers should be taught to hold a firm conviction in the victory of communism.

Communist society is a society that is good to live in; there are no classes and all the people work according to their abilities and are provided for according to their needs. In the People's Army all the men should be taught to believe firmly in the victory of communism and fight actively to build a communist society.

3. THE TEN RULES TO BE OBSERVED BY THE SOLDIERS OF THE PEOPLE'S ARMY IN THEIR MILITARY SERVICE

The People's Army is governed by a number of regulations, including internal and disciplinary regulations, which must be observed by the soldiers. But as yet some military personnel do not behave properly during the time of their military service, as required by army regulations. There are some soldiers who breach army discipline, soldiers who fail to protect the people's property and there are commanders who do not care for their men.

Although the Anti-Japanese Guerrilla Army had virtually no military regulations to speak of, every guerrilla observed military discipline, none laid hands on the people's property and the commanders loved their men like their own brothers. The People's Army has inherited the shining revolutionary traditions of the Anti-Japanese Guerrilla Army. From the time when the Anti-Japanese Guerrilla Army was founded, the history of the People's Army is 46 years in length. So, why is it that shortcomings that do not accord with military regulations are revealed

among the men of the People's Army?

The main reason lies in the fact that political work is sluggish in the People's Army.

We have taken a series of measures to do away with a variety of shortcomings, such as bureaucracy, in the People's Army through making political work more intensive and to strengthen the army, making it an invincible, revolutionary armed force. In particular, we have emphasized the need to strengthen the company, the basic army unit, in order to consolidate the ranks of the People's Army, and the Party Central Committee and the Party Committee of the People's Army have organized short courses and done a great deal of work to strengthen the companies.

However, political work in the People's Army is still below standard and soldiers still infringe army regulations. If the soldiers do not obey them, the regulations will not help towards tightening up discipline; they will become useless.

Today, as General Secretary of the Party Central Committee and Supreme Commander of the People's Army, I would like to set out the ten rules that should be observed without fail by all the soldiers of the People's Army during their military service.

Needless to say, it is impossible to cover everything in these ten rules, so they cannot serve as a substitute for army regulations. But I think it is necessary to put into definite terms the most fundamental points that the men serving in the People's Army should bear in mind and observe without fail at all times and in all places.

The ten rules to be observed by the soldiers of the People's Army during their military service are as follows:

One; the soldiers of the People's Army should always obey military regulations.

In order to observe military regulations to the letter the soldiers should learn these regulations in full, particularly internal and disciplinary regulations.

Two; the soldiers of the People's Army should be familiar with their weapons and always look after them properly.

To the soldiers their weapons are as precious as their own lives. If soldiers are to fight well, they must know how to handle their weapons properly, must always keep them clean and look after them. Those who have a pistol should look after it and be good marksmen, those who have an automatic rifle should be experts with it and should keep it in good condition, and those who have a machine gun should be skilled in its use and keep it operational. Those who are equipped with rifle-grenade and other grenade launchers should do in the similar way. The same applies to artillery, aeroplanes, warships and rockets. Every soldier has his own weapon. The driver's weapon is his car. Therefore, all the soldiers of the People's Army should be proficient in handling their weapons and should always look after them.

Three; the soldiers of the People's Army should carry out military orders without fail.

They should carry out the Supreme Commander's orders unconditionally and thoroughly at all times and whatever the circumstances, and establish the habit of never failing to carry out the orders of the commanders—the Minister of the People's Armed Forces, their corps commanders, divisional commanders, regimental commanders and battalion commanders—that are issued in accordance with the orders of the Supreme Commander.

Four; the soldiers of the People's Army should carry out without fail the assignments given by Party and political organizations.

They should carry out to the letter the tasks allotted by the Party Central Committee and the assignments given them by Party and League of Socialist Working Youth organizations of all levels in order

to carry out the decisions and instructions of the Party Central Committee.

Five; the soldiers of the People’s Army must strictly guard the secrets of the state, the army and the Party.

Secrecy is essential to the revolutionary army; strict secrecy is vital for winning a battle. If any details of a military operation are leaked, the failure of that operation is virtually certain. Therefore, all the soldiers of the People’s Army should strive to avoid any leakage and strictly guard state, military and Party secrets.

Six; the soldiers of the People’s Army must obey the law and order of the socialist state.

Unlike capitalist law, which defends the interests of a minority of exploiters, our country’s socialist laws serve to protect all the people—workers, peasants, soldiers and working intellectuals—and to defend their interests. Since the soldiers of the People’s Army have taken up arms to protect the life, property and interests of the people, they should observe socialist law and order more conscientiously than anyone else.

Seven; the soldiers of the People’s Army should undertake all military and political training and study hard.

You all know everything about this matter, so I shall not go into it further.

Eight; the soldiers of the People’s Army should love the people and should never damage their property.

The People’s Army is a workers and peasants’ army that serves the people. Its soldiers cannot exist apart from the people. “As fish cannot

live without water, so guerrillas cannot live without the people” was the motto of the Anti-Japanese Guerrilla Army. Without the people, the People’s Army cannot exist, nor is there any need for it to do so. Our People’s Army is an army that was founded to protect the interests of the people. So, however great their needs, the soldiers of the People’s Army should not touch other people’s property, not so much as a needle, a piece of thread or a straw rope.

In order to prevent the soldiers infringing upon the interests of the people, it is important for political workers in the army to understand their feelings and conduct their work accordingly.

I would like to relate to you an episode from the days when we were fighting the Japanese.

This happened when I was leading the guerrilla army on an expedition into north Manchuria. One night we were on the march and passed a large melon field, and the sweet smell of ripe melons wafted over to us. All eyes turned towards the field, and all our mouths were watering. I realized that if we carried on past that field, some of the men might help themselves to the melons, so I gave the order to stop and rest. I sent my orderly to see the owner of the field to ask him how much he would charge for all the melons in the field, and to buy them all. The owner asked for 50 *won*, but we paid him 100 *won* for all the melons. We let the guerrillas help themselves and eat their fill before going on our way. The guerrillas were delighted, and the owner of the field said that the guerrillas were respectable people, and he never told a soul that we had passed that way.

Some of the political workers in the People’s Army today do not take parental care of the men; they do not understand the mentality of the soldiers.

I have heard that one small unit became alienated from the people because some soldiers were tempted into eating some fresh maize, and this was due to the failure of the commanding officers to perceive and meet such trifling needs. The reason for this is that the political instructor, political commissar, and unit commander were ignorant of what was in the soldiers’ minds. It would not be difficult to realize that

when the young maize ears are ripe, soldiers would wish to eat some. So if you contact a nearby cooperative farm in advance and procure some newly-harvested sweetcorn, boil it and give it to the soldiers, they will cause no argument with the people.

Nine; the soldiers of the People's Army should protect state property and military supplies and strive to use them economically.

Under our socialist system all property belongs to the people. A bridge, a tree and military supplies are also the people's property. Therefore, all soldiers should protect state property and military supplies and learn to use them carefully and to exercise strict economy.

Ten; the soldiers of the People's Army should love their comrades like brothers and establish genuine unity between superiors and subordinates in the army.

On the occasion of the 25th anniversary of the foundation of the People's Army I spoke about the need to establish a fine tradition of revolutionary comradeship in the People's Army. As I said at the time, revolutionary comradeship is what gives our People's Army its invincible strength. A true spirit of revolutionary comradeship throughout the People's Army is what makes the soldiers able to fight side by side in the same trench at the risk of their lives and to always overcome the enemy. All soldiers should make a deeper study of my speech and strive to the utmost to establish the true spirit of revolutionary comradeship. Officers should love their men, the men should respect their officers, and everyone should be attached to his comrade and united as brothers.

All the soldiers of the People's Army should adhere to these ten rules.

If all servicemen bear these ten rules in mind, at all times and in all places, whether at table or on the march, and regard them as their

guiding principle, there will be no breaches of discipline.

In future information, motivation and political workers of the People's Army should conduct good political work among the soldiers based on these ten rules, and thus improve military and political training and military service in all its aspects.

Today the role of the information and motivation workers is very important for the People's Army to carry out all its tasks. Therefore, they should exert themselves to accomplish their honourable mission, displaying a true sense of responsibility.

If the information and motivation workers are to do their job efficiently, they must, first and foremost, understand our Party policy and military line clearly. On its own this will enable them to acquit themselves well in their work.

Information and motivation workers must be exemplary in their own military service. Fine words can have little effect if they are not supported by deeds. Only model service will enable them to do their job really well.

I hold the firm belief that through improving their political work the motivation workers attending this congress will mark a milestone in developing our People's Army into a revolutionary armed force, every soldier of which is a match for a hundred foes.

LET US FURTHER STRENGTHEN THE PEOPLE'S GOVERNMENT

**Speech Delivered at the First Session
of the Sixth Supreme People's Assembly
of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea**

December 15, 1977

Comrade Deputies,

The elections to the Sixth Supreme People's Assembly of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea have been held successfully in an ebullient atmosphere; the three revolutions are in full progress on all fronts of socialist construction and the entire people are making great efforts to achieve the reunification of the country and the nationwide victory of the revolution.

The industrial and all the other workers and citizens went to the polls, displaying a high degree of political consciousness and revolutionary ardour as masters of the people's state power and they voted one hundred per cent for the candidates. In this way they expressed their unequivocal and wholehearted support for the Government of the Republic and demonstrated once again to the world the unbreakable unity and cohesion of our society, based on the Juche idea.

I offer my heartfelt thanks to all the people for their unreserved support for and deep trust in the Government of the Republic which they expressed in the recent elections, and to the Comrade Deputies who have been elected to the Supreme People's Assembly for

entrusting us with the honourable, but enormous responsibility, in accordance with the will of the entire people, of forming a new Government of the Republic so that we can continue to conduct state affairs.

Nothing is more honourable and worthwhile than to enjoy the confidence of the people and to serve them faithfully. The new Government of the Republic will carry out its honourable mission faithfully and so live up to the deep trust and great expectations placed in it by the masses of the people, and will work energetically for the welfare of the people and the prosperity and development of the nation, for the victory of the cause of socialism and communism.

In the five years since the election of the Fifth Supreme People's Assembly the revolution and construction in our country have made great progress. Because all our people, under the correct leadership of the Government of the Republic, worked with soaring revolutionary enthusiasm, the Six-Year Plan, the far-reaching programme of socialist construction outlined at the Fifth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea, was carried out with success and the three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural—developed further. As a result, the material and technical foundations of socialism have been strengthened and the might of the Republic has increased markedly in all spheres.

Our people are now in a position to push on with building socialism and communism, with the pride of being victors and believing fully that the future will be bright.

Today our people are confronted with the solemn tasks of attaining the ambitious targets of the Second Seven-Year Plan and achieving, at the earliest possible date, the complete victory of socialism and the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

We should carry out our honourable revolutionary tasks successfully by further strengthening the people's government, a powerful instrument of the revolution and construction, and enhancing its functions and role in all spheres.

1. THE MASSES OF THE WORKING PEOPLE ARE THE GENUINE MASTERS OF THE STATE AND SOCIETY

Comrades,

The masses of working people are the subject of history and the motive power behind social progress. The history of mankind is the history of the struggle of the working masses for independence; the creative activities of the masses underlie the development of history and social movement. The masses change nature and improve society, and also create material wealth and develop culture. There can be no society without the masses and history cannot develop unless the masses play their proper role.

Ever since their appearance on the stage of history the working masses, as the subject of history, have been the focal point of all social movement. In spite of this, their position and role have not been identical in every society. With the class differentiation of society and the rise of the state, the position and role of the people came to be determined by whether or not they held power in the state.

State power is political authority and the primary factor that determines the position and role of the people. In exploiter society only the exploiting classes which wield state power have authority and they exercise total power, while the masses of the working people that are deprived of state power enjoy no freedom or rights whatever, and remain mere objects of exploitation and oppression. Only in a socialist society where they hold power in their own hands, do the working masses become the true masters of the state and society. In a socialist society their right to independence is fully assured, their great creative ability is brought into full play and everything in society serves them.

The revolution is a struggle for independence, and independence is guaranteed by state power. The people's right to independence finds full expression through state power. Accordingly, if the working masses are to gain complete independence, they should become the masters of political power before anything else. It is only by becoming the genuine masters of the state and society with power in their hands that they can successfully solve every problem that arises in the revolution and construction. That is why the question of power is the fundamental question in the revolution.

In the past our people waged a hard and unswerving struggle for their right to be masters of the state and society, for their sovereign power, and found a brilliant solution to the question of power by establishing the people's government.

Our people's government is a precious revolutionary asset gained only after a prolonged and bloody struggle. Although it was established 30 years ago, the historical roots of the people's government in our country lie way back in the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle.

The glorious anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle fought by our people under the guidance of the Korean communists was a struggle for national liberation and independence and, at the same time, a struggle to establish the power of the working people. In the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle we laid down, on the basis of a scientific analysis of the tasks facing our revolution and the social-class relations in our country, the Juche-oriented line of building a government—to establish the people's government based on the worker-peasant alliance led by the working class and resting on the united front of the broad masses. Following this line, we set up the people's revolutionary government, a unique form of power, in the guerrilla bases, thus gaining precious experience in setting up the people's government.

Drawing on this experience, we found a fine solution to the power problem in a short space of time after the liberation of the country, by successfully frustrating all the obstructive moves of the enemy, both at

home and abroad. The people's government that was established amid the high revolutionary enthusiasm of the people after liberation was a splendid embodiment of the line of building the people's government outlined during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle and was the direct successor to the people's revolutionary government formed in the guerrilla bases.

Our people's government is a Juche-based revolutionary government which we have chosen, set up and run for ourselves to suit the actual situation in our country in accordance with the requirements of the Korean revolution and the desire of the working masses.

With the establishment of the people's government our people became the true masters of the state and society, taking power into their own hands for the first time in history and so they gained control of a powerful weapon for the revolution and construction.

Ever since its foundation, the people's government has stoutly defended the freedom and rights of the working masses and guided the revolutionary struggle and construction work of our people towards glorious victory.

The main task facing our people's government was to set up a new, progressive social system. The people's government drew up its fighting programme which consisted of the tasks of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution and carried out democratic reforms with success, including the agrarian reform. It thus abolished the old colonial and semi-feudal social system and set up the people's democratic system. Following up the democratic revolution, the people's government embarked on the socialist revolution. Within a short space of time after the war, it completed the socialist transformation of production relations in town and country areas and built, in the northern half of Korea, a solid, advanced socialist system free from exploitation and oppression. Our country's socialist system is the best social system and it effectively guarantees the working people their rights as masters of the state and society and safeguards their interests in every way.

One of the major revolutionary tasks the people's government must

carry out is economic construction. Holding high the slogan of self-reliance in economic construction, our people's government carried out with honour the Party's Juche-oriented line of building an independent national economy. In this way it put an end to the economic backwardness inherited from the old society and successfully built a powerful independent socialist national economy on the ruins of war, transforming our country into a socialist industrial state with a modern industry and developed agriculture. The independent socialist national economy built through the heroic efforts of the working masses is the solid material foundation that fully guarantees the political independence of our Republic and a happy life for our people.

From the very outset, our people's struggle to build a new society was conducted under difficult circumstances. The US imperialists and their minions continued their aggressive moves and provocation. Implementing our Party's revolutionary line of self-reliance in national defence, the people's government created the revolutionary armed forces in good time and established a reliable all-people system of defence with the People's Army as its core. By relying on this system, national defence was fully safeguarded. When the US imperialists launched an aggressive war against our young Republic, the people's government, as the banner of national freedom and independence, the banner of the people's struggle, aroused the People's Army and the people throughout the nation to perform heroic deeds and in this way the great victory in the Fatherland Liberation War was assured. After the war it crushed every one of the enemy's moves in his unceasing efforts at provocation and fully defended the security of the country and our revolutionary achievements.

Ever since it was established, our people's government has travelled a road of relentless struggle and glorious victory and registered immortal achievements which will shine for ever in the history of our country.

Through this difficult and complex revolutionary struggle, the people's government has grown in strength and developed into an

indestructible, militant and powerful revolutionary government. As the revolution and construction have progressed, the political and economic foundations of the people's government have been further strengthened and its functions and role markedly enhanced.

As the most revolutionary and independent socialist power, our people's government is today leading the just cause of our people confidently along the road to a magnificent victory.

Now that the people's government has been established, our working masses are firm in maintaining their position as masters of the state and society and play their role properly in the revolution and construction. Under the people's government, the working people's right to independence is guaranteed in full and their creativity is given full scope.

All our people—workers, peasants and working intellectuals—have a deep awareness and sense of responsibility as masters of the state and society, and are working today with complete devotion for the prosperity and development of the country and the victory of the socialist and communist cause. With the position and role of the working masses being raised, the strength of the people's government is increasing further and the revolution and construction are making rapid progress.

Now that the masses of working people have become the genuine masters of the state and society they are working with a high degree of independence and creativity. Herein the superiority of our socialist system and the firm guarantee for all our victories can be identified.

With the foundation of the people's government the true dignity and rights of man were restored. Having enjoyed an independent and creative life to their heart's content under the tender care of this government, our people have become keenly aware of its advantages and value from their own experience in life. Today all our people have implicit trust in the people's government and place their whole destiny in its hands. They are filled with a firm resolve to fight on unyieldingly to the last, united firmly around this power, for the final victory of the revolution.

2. THE PEOPLE'S GOVERNMENT SHOULD SERVE THE MASSES OF WORKING PEOPLE

Comrades,

Our people's government is a genuine people's power; it represents the interests of the working people and serves them.

In our country sovereign power is vested in the workers, peasants, soldiers and working intellectuals, who exercise it through the organs of the people's government. The organs of power at all levels up to the Supreme People's Assembly are elected directly by the people and made up of representatives of the working people. Therefore, the organs of the people's government can never be ruling organs that dominate and rule the people, but must, as a matter of course, be the servants of the people that are devoted to the interests of the working masses.

It is the honourable mission of the people's government to serve the working masses faithfully. The people's government should recognize its duty to be to safeguard and protect the interests of the working masses, and the officials of the people's government bodies should be the servants of the people.

In order to discharge its mission as the servant of the people, the people's government should give full scope to democracy in state activities.

Democracy is the basic mode of state activity that serves the masses of the working people. It is only by introducing democracy fully in state activities, that it is possible for the working masses to maintain their position securely as masters of the state and society and to enhance their role in the revolution and construction.

In short, democracy is a form of government through which the will of the masses of working people finds full expression. In other words,

democracy precisely means that the state formulates its policies in compliance with the will of the broad sections of the working masses, particularly the workers and peasants, carries them out according to their interests and provides them in practice with genuine freedom and rights and a happy life.

The masses of the working people play the decisive role in the development of society; in any society they make up the overwhelming majority of the population. Therefore, true democracy consists in government which ensures that the will of the working masses formulates state policy and that everything is dedicated to their interests. Government which safeguards the interests of a small, privileged circle without regard for the interests of the working masses can, under no circumstances, be identified with democracy. The world knows only one genuine democracy and that is democracy for the working masses, socialist democracy.

In capitalist society, where state policy is decided according to the will and interests of the exploiting classes, there can never be true democracy. Capitalist society is a society in which the minority rules the majority. The so-called “democracy” in capitalist society, bourgeois democracy, is “democracy” for the minority and, therefore, is not democracy in the true sense of the word.

In capitalist society there can be no democratic freedom and rights at all for the working masses. The imperialists go on about “equality for all men” and “freedom of the individual”, but, in reality, these are downright lies. How, in capitalist society, where all state power and the means of production are concentrated in the hands of a few capitalists and money decides everything, can there possibly be equality between the multimillionaires and the poor working people and what kind of freedom can there be for the oppressed and exploited working people? The “democracy” loudly proclaimed by the imperialists is a sham democracy, and the “equality”, “freedom” and everything they come up with are nothing but camouflage designed to hoodwink the working masses and hide the reactionary nature of their bourgeois dictatorship and the anti-popular nature of the capitalist system.

Genuine democracy can only be effected in a socialist society where the working masses are the masters of the state and society.

The socialist democracy that exists in our country today is the best form of democracy which affords genuine freedom and rights, extensively and in practice, for the masses of the working people in all spheres of state and social activity.

In our country all state policies accord with the will and interests of the working masses, and the workers, peasants and all the other people enjoy a most dignified and happy life to the fullest degree.

Our working people take an active part in state administration as masters of the country, and all share the equal right to elect and to be elected, irrespective of sex, occupation, property status, education, political views and religious beliefs. Furthermore, they enjoy wide freedom and rights of speech, press, assembly, demonstration and all other social and political activities.

Our working people are granted the right to work and rest by the state, and everyone chooses his occupation according to his desire and abilities, works to the top of his bent in a secure position, and displays all his energies and talents in doing useful work for society and for himself. Our state bears the responsibility for providing all the material conditions for the people to obtain food, clothing and housing, and has introduced universal compulsory free education and free medical care. Thanks to these popular policies of the state, all our people are equally prosperous and free from any worries about food, clothing and shelter and about education and medical treatment.

Full social and political rights and material and cultural welfare are not only legally ensured for our people by the Socialist Constitution but also firmly guaranteed by an advanced socialist system and a sound independent national economy.

In our country, where socialist democracy has been realized extensively, all the working people, as equal members of society, work for the common good, mutually respecting and closely cooperating with each other.

Our people have become fully convinced from their actual

experience that socialist democracy is the only true democracy that affords genuine freedom and rights and a prosperous and enlightened life for the working masses.

We should make the most of the advantages of socialist democracy, and give fuller scope to it.

In order to give full scope to socialist democracy, it is necessary to enlist the working masses widely in the work of the people's government and steadily enhance their role in state and political life.

The working masses are entitled by right to participate in the work of the people's government since they are the masters of state power. What is more, it is an important duty for them to do so. We should strengthen the organs of power at all levels with fine representatives of the workers, peasants, soldiers and working intellectuals, and further improve the system and method of work of the people's government bodies so as to provide broad sections of the people with ample opportunity to participate in the work of the people's government. Along with this, we should constantly educate the working masses and increase their political awareness so that they all conscientiously and enthusiastically take an active part in state and political life as masters of state power. Thus, we will ensure that the policies and activities of the people's government accurately reflect the will and needs of the working people and thoroughly defend their interests. In other words, the policies of the people's government should always be policies for the working people and of the working people.

The organs of the people's government should have faith in the strength of the masses and rally them and arouse their revolutionary enthusiasm and creative wisdom. In this way the masses of working people will be encouraged to defend their dignity and rights and achieve their desires and ideals through their own efforts.

In order to give full scope to socialist democracy, it is also necessary to build the socialist economy and culture efficiently.

Building the socialist economy and culture successfully is the practical guarantee for providing the working masses with democratic freedom and rights and a happy life.

We should improve the guidance and management of the national economy, steadily consolidate and develop the economic system of socialism and push ahead with socialist economic construction, so that output increases rapidly in industry, agriculture and all other fields of the national economy and the material and technical foundations of socialism are further strengthened. By doing this we will make the people's life more prosperous overall, eliminate the distinctions between the working people's living standards and between their working conditions and guarantee fuller social equality and freedom for all the working people.

We should step up the development of socialist culture and thus further consolidate and develop the advanced education and health systems already established in our country, and introduce a variety of new cultural measures for the people, so as to provide everyone with a more affluent and cultured life.

The organs of the people's government, as the housekeeper in charge of the economic life of the country and the livelihood of the people, should improve and strengthen its guidance and assistance in economic and cultural construction and organize and carry out in a responsible manner the work of improving the material and cultural life of the people.

In order to give full scope to socialist democracy, it is essential to combat resolutely all manner of hostile acts detrimental to the interests of the masses and to socialist democracy.

Socialist democracy presupposes the dictatorship of the working people over their class enemies. Consequently, it is accompanied by an acute class struggle. Since the day when the world witnessed the emergence of socialist democracy, the imperialists and their minions and the overthrown class enemies have all along made, and are still making, every attempt to vilify and undermine socialist democracy.

Today the imperialists, particularly the bosses of the US imperialists, posing as the "champions" of democracy and human rights, are working more feverishly than ever to slander socialist democracy and stage an anti-communist campaign against the socialist

system. Clamouring for the “defence of human rights”, the imperialists are attacking the socialist countries. This is as shameless and ridiculous an act as that of a thief crying “stop thief”.

In the world today, it is actually in the Western imperialist countries and the satellite states of imperialism where social inequality is most prevalent and the oppression of the people and violation of human rights are most shocking. It is only logical that in capitalist society, devoid of democracy, the masses should enjoy no human rights. In capitalist society the working masses have no human dignity and political rights whatever. They are denied even the elementary right to survive. If there is any “human right” at all in capitalist society, it is the right enjoyed by a small privileged circle to bleed the working masses white for its own enrichment and prosperity and to oppress and despise the people.

As for the imperialists’ loud cries about the alleged “suppression of human rights” in the socialist countries, it is a justified step to defend democracy from its adversaries for a socialist state to take sanctions against hostile elements and villains who violate democratic order and try to wreck the socialist system. The “human rights” espoused by the imperialists are human rights not for the people but for the people’s enemy and the “freedom” they want is not the democratic freedom of the people but the freedom of the imperialists and their minions to continue their subversive activities.

Just as we communists do not conceal our Party loyalty, so we do not hide the class character of democracy. Socialist democracy is by no means a supraclass democracy that affords freedom and rights even to hostile elements who oppose socialism and to the villains who infringe upon the interests of the people. Socialist democracy means precisely ensuring the freedom and rights of the broad masses of people—workers, peasants and working intellectuals—while restraining the handful of class enemies.

We should adhere to the class stand and revolutionary principles in all spheres of social life and suppress the hostile and evil elements that encroach upon the interests of the people. In particular, we must deal a

resolute counterblow at the imperialists' anti-communist intrigues that they conduct under the plea of the "defence of human rights", and should frustrate all attempts to defame socialist democracy at once.

When we defend socialist democracy stoutly from the mischief caused by the class enemies within and without and fully practise democracy in all fields of state activity, our people's government will be further strengthened and the people will enjoy a happier and more prosperous life.

3. LET US FIGHT AGAINST BUREAUCRACY

Comrades,

In order to strengthen the people's government further and enable it to fulfil its mission, bureaucracy must be combated.

Bureaucracy is an anti-popular method of government used by the officials of the old society to oppress and exploit the people. Bureaucracy is the direct antithesis of democracy, and is not to be tolerated on any account in the activities of the people's government which serves the people. It is only when the people's government organs rid themselves entirely of bureaucracy that they can positively defend the interests of the people and serve the working masses faithfully.

Fighting against bureaucracy in the work of the people's government is always an important matter because the government bodies are organs of power. The organs of the people's government are of the dictatorship of the proletariat, and officials of government bodies conduct their work on the authority of the state. Therefore, there may appear among those government officials who lack a revolutionary world outlook, practices of infringing on the people's interests by abusing their power and of acting in a bureaucratic manner.

From the very inception of the people's government we made bureaucracy a major object of our struggle and have combated it persistently. Thanks to the proper guidance of the Government of the Republic and the efforts of the government workers, bureaucracy has generally been eliminated. But because the old way of thinking still lingers in the minds of officials, the danger of bureaucratic practices still remains. If we get carried away by the success we have achieved so far and neglect the struggle against bureaucracy to the slightest degree, bureaucracy may reappear at any time.

Bureaucracy is manifested in forcing upon the masses anything that runs counter to their will and in acting to the detriment of the interests of the people. No matter what an official's intention may be and how it may be expressed, if he imposes on the masses anything that goes against their will and encroaches on the interests of the people, that is bureaucracy.

A leftover from the old society, bureaucracy presents an obstacle to the people's government in fulfilling its mission and does considerable harm to the revolution and construction.

The harm of bureaucracy lies, above all, in paralysing the independence and creativity of the masses. By imposing unreasonable things willy-nilly on the masses, in disregard of their will and wishes, bureaucracy violates the people's rights of independence and dampens their revolutionary ardour.

Bureaucracy also does serious harm by alienating the working masses from the people's government. In giving peremptory orders to the masses and shouting commands at them and acting against the interests of the people, the bureaucrats discredit the people's government in the eyes of the masses and stand in the way of uniting the broad masses around the Government of the Republic.

When some individual officials act bureaucratically in socialist society, where all activity is organized and all branches are interlinked organically, it will have a serious effect on work in many fields and the consequences will be grave.

We should intensify the struggle against bureaucracy continuously

and wipe it out thoroughly in the work of the organs of the people's government.

The struggle against bureaucracy is a struggle to do away with what remains of the old society and to strengthen the people's government further, a struggle to safeguard the interests of the masses by giving full scope to socialist democracy. All the officials of government bodies should regard the struggle against bureaucracy as an important revolutionary task in fulfilling their duty as servants of the people, and conduct this struggle with a high degree of political awareness.

In order to eliminate bureaucracy the officials of the organs of the people's government should mix with the masses, lend a willing ear to their wishes and conduct all work in their interests.

It always goes against the will and interests of the people for an official to sit in his office and do his work from a subjective point of view without mixing with the masses. It is only by mixing with the masses that an official can gain a correct understanding of the real situation and keep himself fully acquainted with the will and desires of the people.

The will and desires of the masses represent the highest principles determining all the activities of the people's government. The organs of the people's government should keep in touch with the masses, listen attentively to the opinions of the people and shape all policies in conformity with their requirements. Before adopting any decision or issuing any directive, they must always visit the lower levels, conduct a detailed study of the true situation, hold close consultations with the masses, and make the people's interests the first consideration in organizing and conducting all work.

If the officials of the organs of the people's government are to mix with the masses and work in their interests, they should apply the Chongsanri method thoroughly.

The Chongsanri method is the most people-oriented and revolutionary work method based on the Juche conception of the masses.

The officials of the organs of the people's government should have

a correct understanding of the masses and visit them to work, study and live with them. They should on no account be bureaucrats who lord it over the people, simply issuing orders and commands, nor should they be special beings who are detached from the masses. They should always live together with the people, eating and dressing alike, and be their partners through thick and thin. They should also listen to the voice of the people, satisfy their needs promptly, teach them and learn from them and educate them to rise up to carry out their revolutionary tasks. When they become one with the masses, working and living with them with one mind and one purpose, they will become better acquainted with the needs of the people and serve them more faithfully.

Guiding and managing the socialist economy properly is an important duty of the organs of the people's government. In guiding and managing the economy, these organs should strictly observe the principle of collective leadership which reflects the will of the broad masses.

The socialist economy is a highly socialized, large-scale economy, and the masses are its owners. Therefore, it is only by implementing the principle of collective leadership in the guidance of the economy to encourage the broad masses to take an active part in economic management that it becomes possible to manage the socialist economy on a scientific and rational basis in the interests of the people.

In order to avoid subjective, arbitrary decision-making and implement the principle of collective leadership in the guidance and management of the economy, it is necessary to apply the Tsean work system. In conformity with the demands of the Tsean work system, the organs of the people's government should enlist the producer masses in economic management on a broad scale, mix with them to mobilize their collective wisdom and creative enthusiasm for the solution of all problems.

The elimination of bureaucracy requires that the officials of state and economic organizations should abide by socialist law.

Our socialist law is the basic implement of state administration that

has been created by the people themselves to safeguard the interests of the working masses. In our country today all the people are fully guaranteed their democratic liberty and rights in all spheres of state and social life in accordance with socialist law. When the observance of socialist law is strengthened to make all state and economic cadres meticulous in their observance of it, bureaucracy which is prejudicial to the interests of the masses will be eliminated and the democratic freedom and rights of the people ensured more fully.

The organs of the people's government should ensure that the observance of socialist law is strengthened among state and economic cadres to make them observe the legal order of the state willingly, guard the interests of the masses jealously and strive hard to become true servants of the people.

The basis of the observance of socialist law is the legal provisions and regulations. The organs of the people's government should make legal provisions and regulations for the various fields of activity in accordance with the Socialist Constitution and constantly improve them as the situation develops.

It is the sacred duty of every citizen to respect socialist law and observe it conscientiously. State and economic cadres should conduct all their work in accordance with the requirements of the laws and regulations and serve as models for the masses in observing the legal order of the state and the socialist way of life.

In promoting the observance of socialist law it is important to increase the role of the committee for guidance in law observance.

An important duty of this committee is to exercise legal control over the leading personnel of the state and economic institutions to prevent them from abusing their power and create a revolutionary atmosphere of law observance throughout the whole of society.

The socialist law-observance guidance committee should improve the education of the officials of the state and economic institutions to encourage in them the spirit to obey the law. The Socialist Constitution and other legal provisions and regulations of the state should be explained to heighten the law-abiding spirit of the officials in state and

economic institutions so that they observe laws and regulations of their own free will.

The socialist law-observance guidance committee should resolutely combat any instance of breaking the law. This committee should always supervise how the cadres of state and economic institutions observe the legal order of the state and should take strict legal sanctions against any officials who break the laws and regulations, behave bureaucratically or infringe on the interests of the people. Thus, the law can be used to keep bureaucracy in check and thoroughly protect the interests of the working masses.

Comrade Deputies,

Next year we will embark upon the Second Seven-Year Plan.

The main objective of this plan is to further strengthen the economic basis of socialism and raise the people's standard of living still further by making the national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientific at a rapid pace.

By the end of the Second Seven-Year Plan we shall be producing annually 56,000-60,000 million kWh of electricity, 70-80 million tons of coal, 7.4-8 million tons of steel, one million tons of nonferrous metals, 5 million tons of engineering goods, 5 million tons of chemical fertilizers, 12-13 million tons of cement, 3.5 million tons of aquatic products and 10 million tons of grain; we shall have reclaimed 100,000 hectares of tideland; and we shall have more than doubled today's production figures in many fields of the national economy.

The new Seven-Year Plan is a sweeping plan of economic construction for firmly equipping all branches of the national economy with modern technology and further increasing the economic strength of the country, and is a splendid blueprint for accelerating the historic cause of the building of socialism and communism.

When the new long-term plan is fulfilled, remarkable progress will have been made in our people's struggle for the complete victory of socialism, and the people as a whole will enjoy a happier and more prosperous life in all aspects—political, economic and cultural.

The country and people should rise together in an all-out effort to

carry out the Second Seven-Year Plan and launch a vigorous drive ahead throughout the nation to reach the ambitious targets of this new long-term plan.

In order to fulfil the Second Seven-Year Plan successfully, we should keep strictly to the line of the three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural. The promotion of the three revolutions is a strategic policy pursued consistently by our Party in socialist construction; the thorough implementation of the line of the three revolutions constitutes the decisive guarantee for the brilliant fulfilment of the new Seven-Year Plan. Government bodies of all levels and the entire people should effect a new, great upswing on all fronts of socialist construction by continuing their energetic efforts in the three revolutions.

The economic foundations already laid in our country are strong indeed and their production potentials are enormous. If we make effective use of these economic foundations, we can boost production considerably, develop the country's economy as a whole more rapidly and carry out the new long-term plan successfully without any need for large investment. We should further strengthen the existing economic foundations, equip the economy with modern technology and display its potential to the full.

We should apply the revolutionary principle of self-reliance more thoroughly over the period of the new Seven-Year Plan. All the working people should arm themselves fully with the Juche idea and display to the full the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance so that they discover what is in short supply and produce what we lack, and in this way successfully carry out the new Seven-Year Plan based on our own power, skill and resources. "Let us show more spirit of revolutionary self-reliance!"—this is our revolutionary slogan for the new Seven-Year Plan.

The entire people should turn out as one man and fulfil the Second Seven-Year Plan, thereby demonstrating once again to the whole world the heroic spirit of our people.

Comrades, the Government of the Republic is a genuine defender

of the democratic freedom and rights of our people and a revolutionary banner for the independence and prosperity of the country. With the strengthening and development of the people's government, our people will become happier and more dignified and our country will prosper and develop without limit.

In the future, too, as in the past, all the people should place deep trust in the people's government they have elected, implement its policies in every way and make every effort to strengthen and develop it.

Our people are invincible because, under the correct leadership of the Government of the Republic, they have taken power into their own hands and are continuing to fight for justice.

Let us advance vigorously, holding up high the banner of communism, the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea, and rallied closely around the Government of the Republic, for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country and the victory of the revolution across the nation, for the cause of socialism and communism.

**ON THE SECOND SEVEN-YEAR PLAN
(1978-84) FOR THE DEVELOPMENT
OF THE NATIONAL ECONOMY
OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE'S
REPUBLIC OF KOREA**

**Ordinance of the Supreme People's Assembly
of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea
Adopted at the First Session of the Sixth
Supreme People's Assembly**

December 17, 1977

Under the sound leadership of the Government of the Republic our people have achieved the marvellous success of fulfilling the Six-Year Plan, a magnificent programme of socialist construction set by the Workers' Party of Korea at its Fifth Congress.

Our people have pushed ahead with the three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural—and achieved an uninterrupted increase in the rate of building the socialist economy, and in this way have met all the targets of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule. The Six-Year Plan in industry was fulfilled a year and four months early, before the 30th anniversary of the foundation of the Workers' Party of Korea, in terms of total output value, and agriculture reached the target set for grain production under the Six-Year Plan two years early.

Between 1971 and 1976 industrial output grew at a high average annual rate of 16.3 per cent, greater than the rate envisaged, and in

1976 the overall volume of industrial production increased 2.5 times compared to the figure for 1970.

The country's bases for fuel, power and raw materials were strengthened, the key branches of heavy industry, such as the metal, engineering and chemical industries, as well as light industry, were developed rapidly, a better balance was achieved in the infrastructure of industry and its independence and technical foundation were noticeably strengthened.

Over the period of the Six-Year Plan the material and technical foundations of farming were consolidated beyond any comparison and the most scientific, Juche-oriented methods of farming, suited to the conditions in our country, were devised and introduced extensively into agriculture. As a result, grain output increased markedly from one year to the next in spite of the extremely unfavourable weather conditions caused by the cold front.

Great progress was also made in every other sector of the economy, such as transport and capital construction.

Over the period of the Six-Year Plan we achieved success in the three major tasks of our technical revolution which aimed to reduce appreciably the distinctions both between heavy and light labour and between agricultural and industrial work and to free our women from the heavy burden of domestic chores. Because we promoted the drive for technical innovation in all spheres of the national economy, particularly industry and agriculture, we made great progress in freeing the working people from the need to do heavy and harmful labour, and generally their working conditions have improved markedly.

Immense success was also achieved in building up socialist culture. The state placed strong emphasis on education and thus the objective of creating a million-strong army of intellectuals set by the Fifth Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea was reached, and universal eleven-year compulsory education, the most developed system of compulsory education, was introduced well ahead of schedule. This was a splendid achievement. Great strides were made

in developing science and technology, and our socialist national culture and art blossomed and developed.

On the basis of our brilliant success in building the socialist economy and culture and thanks to the Government's popular policy for promoting the welfare of the working people, the material and cultural standards of living of the people have risen considerably and, in particular, the living conditions of the farmers and the rural population have improved greatly.

The successful fulfilment of the Six-Year Plan is another worthy achievement and a great victory for our people in their struggle for socialism and communism.

With the triumphant fulfilment of the ambitious targets of the Six-Year Plan the foundations of our independent socialist national economy have been strengthened immeasurably and the revolutionary base of the northern half of Korea has been consolidated in all its aspects.

In the course of the magnificent struggle to carry out the Six-Year Plan all our working people have become fully immersed in the Juche idea and, on the basis of this, are yet more closely united both in thought and purpose, and this has accelerated the process of making our whole society revolutionary and working-class.

Our people are now in a position to promote the revolution and construction with greater vigour and with the pride and confidence of victors and, on the basis of the impressive successes they achieved in the Six-Year Plan, to embark on a new long-term plan of a higher order.

The Supreme People's Assembly of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea has considered the Second Seven-Year Plan (1978-84) for the Development of the National Economy and is unanimous in its approval of it, agreeing that the new long-term plan is a scientific and dynamic one that conforms to the essential needs of our revolution and construction to hasten the independent, peaceful reunification of the country and the complete victory of socialism.

1. THE BASIC TASK OF THE SECOND SEVEN-YEAR PLAN

The principal task of the Second Seven-Year Plan is to further strengthen the economic foundations of socialism and to raise the standard of living of the people still higher by introducing Juche, modern techniques and science into the national economy at a rapid pace.

Making the national economy more Juche-oriented, modern and scientific is the decisive factor in promoting socialist construction and increasing the economic strength of our country.

During the Second Seven-Year Plan the independent structure of the national economy will be further strengthened through developing the economy in a more diverse and comprehensive way by relying on our own strengths and our own resources. To this end it is necessary to exploit and use our rich and varied natural resources effectively and to create new industries.

Under the new plan, comprehensive mechanization and automation will be introduced extensively in all sectors of industry; agriculture will be industrialized and modernized; and the modernization of our whole economy will be promoted, so that all the working people can do their work in greater comfort and still produce more wealth.

Scientific research should be given priority and the development of science must be strongly encouraged so as to place all production-technical processes, production methods and management in all fields of the national economy, particularly industry and agriculture, onto a more scientific basis.

2. TASKS FOR THE DIFFERENT SECTORS OF THE NATIONAL ECONOMY

1) INDUSTRY

The central task facing industry is to make the best use possible of its existing foundations and, at the same time, to expand them so that the Juche character of our industry is built up and to continue to modernize and introduce scientific breakthroughs in all sectors of industry.

Over the period of the new Seven-Year Plan output will increase 2.2 times—the output of producer goods will grow 2.2 times and that of consumer goods 2.1 times.

To develop the power industry and consolidate our own power base by relying on domestic resources is an important task to make the national economy more Juche-oriented and modern.

The power industry will be developed much faster than other industries, so that by 1984 our output of electricity will have reached 56,000-60,000 million kWh annually.

Over the period of the new long-term plan, large-scale thermal power stations will be built while the generating capacity of the existing ones will be increased, and many new thermal power stations will be erected to provide heating for the major cities and to use the surplus and waste heat in factories.

As for new hydroelectric power stations, the work on the Taedonggang, Wiwon and Huichon No. 2 Power Stations now under way will be accelerated and completed early, and small, medium-sized and large hydroelectric power stations will be built.

Mining should be kept decisively ahead of other industries in order to further strengthen the country's independent bases for fuel and raw-material production.

By the end of the second seven-year period the annual output of coal will have reached 70-80 million tons, iron ore 16 million tons and the output of nonferrous metal ores will be increased to reach the target of a million tons of nonferrous metals a year.

While the major coal mines are rebuilt and enlarged, the work to open new, large ones will be done quickly and the development of medium-sized and smaller mines will be vigorously promoted.

Mines with promising, large deposits, such as the Musan and Komdok Mines, will be rebuilt and greatly enlarged and new mines, small, medium and large, will be opened.

A great deal of effort will be put into prospecting for both our present and future needs, and the construction of drifts and pits and rock breaking and the removal of overburden will be given definite priority at the mines, and shafts and tunnels will be modernized and reinforced for permanent use.

Modern, large mining equipment will be made so that comprehensive mechanization and automation can be promoted at the mines, and scientific methods of prospecting, hewing and dressing suited to the geological characteristics of our country and to the natural features of our minerals will be widely introduced.

In order to increase the economic strength of our country it is essential to develop the metal industry rapidly to meet our demand for making the national economy Juche-oriented and modern.

Over the second seven-year period great and steady efforts will be put into developing the iron and steel industry. Thus, by 1984 the output of pig iron, granulated iron and crude steel will have reached 6.4-7 million tons, steel 7.4-8 million tons and rolled steel 5.6-6 million tons.

While our existing potential for producing iron and steel is put to the best possible use, more up-to-date metallurgical and rolling equipment such as large blast furnaces, large oxygen converters and continuous cold rolling mills will be installed, so that our iron and steel works are expanded on a large scale.

Great and continuous efforts must be made to increase the

independence of our iron and steel industry. The proportion of domestic coal used for coking must be increased, the capacity for producing crude steel should be greatly expanded and reduced ball ore introduced widely in steel production.

At the iron and steel works, outdated techniques will be replaced, automation, semi-automation, closed-circuit television and remote control introduced extensively, and the latest breakthroughs in science and technology applied widely in all production processes, from the preliminary treatment of ores, iron and steel making and rolling to the production of metal goods by a second process.

The output of nonferrous metals will be increased considerably by adapting and strengthening our smelters and building new, modern smelters. The production of aluminium from domestic raw materials will be developed, and the output of rare and pure metals increased.

Engineering, the very heart of industry, is the key to fulfilling the new long-term plan. In order to accelerate the modernization of the national economy by developing the technical revolution in depth, innovations must be made in the engineering industry.

Under the new long-term plan, the engineering industry will be developed rapidly and by the end of this period, the annual output of engineering products will have reached 5 million tons.

Great emphasis will be placed on the production of machine tools, and by 1984 the annual output of these will have reached 50,000. In particular, the production of heavy, special, semi-automated, automated and single-purpose machine tools will be markedly increased.

The factories for producing heavy equipment will be expanded and improved. Thus, the production of large-capacity generating equipment such as large hydroelectric and thermal power turbines and generators and 220-ton boilers will be increased, as will the production of heavy-duty lorries such as the *Jaju* and *Konsol*, and various kinds of heavy machinery for mining and nature-harnessing projects such as 300-hp bulldozers, 4-cubic-metre excavators and multi-purpose excavating machines; full sets of equipment will also be made and

supplied for the new, modern factories and enterprises.

Over the period of the new plan tractor factories will be improved so as to bring the annual output of tractors up to 45,000. The production of rice-seedling diggers and transplanters, rice harvesters including combine harvesters, humus-grown maize-seedling transplanters, maize harvesters and various other types of farm machinery will be greatly increased.

In line with the extensive introduction of semi-automation and automation in many sectors of the national economy, the electronics and automation industries will be developed rapidly so that their output increases and a decisive improvement is made to the quality of the various automation devices and equipment and gauges, including electron tubes, semiconductors and integrated circuits.

Great efforts will be concentrated on the shipbuilding industry, so that many large cargo ships—20,000-ton, 50,000-ton and 100,000-ton freighters, 20,000-ton factory ships, 5,000-ton cold-storage transport ships and such fishing boats as 3,750-ton stern trawlers will be built. Certain technical ships such as self-propelled dredgers and cranes will also be built in large numbers.

A vigorous drive for technical innovation will be launched in engineering so as to introduce assembly lines, automation lines and production machine tools into serial machining processes, to bring about a sharp increase in the proportion of work done by pressing and stamp forging methods in mechanical engineering, and to develop welding techniques so that they can be applied widely.

Specialization and cooperation will be developed on a wide scale in machine production, and rigid discipline for giving priority to cooperative products enforced.

The rapid development of the chemical industry is important in expanding raw-material bases for industry and in confirming the economic independence of our country.

Over the period of the new Seven-Year Plan, the output of chemical fertilizers will increase 1.6 times, agricultural chemicals 2 times, synthetic fibres 1.8 times and plastics 2 times.

While our chemical fertilizer factories are modernized and extended, a new base for the production of double superphosphate will be set up and a potash fertilizer industry, relying on domestic raw materials, will be created.

New agricultural chemicals factories will be built to produce effective weed killers such as assorted herbicides, DCPA and Cimadin, as well as insecticides and disinfectants. Thus, we will meet our needs for agricultural chemicals by ourselves.

Our bases for producing synthetic fibre and plastics will be expanded and, at the same time, the new Orlon factory will be completed at an early date and new plastics factories built. In this way considerable growth will be seen in the output of synthetic fibres and plastics. More small- and medium-size chemical factories will be built to produce a variety of chemical products in large quantities for light industry.

A solid base for the synthetic rubber industry which will use our own raw materials will be established so that a large quantity of rubber will be produced and the output of processed rubber goods will be increased.

The acid, alkali and carbide industries which constitute the basis of the chemical industry, will continue to be developed and the output of salt, essential for making soda, will be increased rapidly.

Emphasis will be placed on the production of medicines and medical appliances, so that over the period of the new plan the output of medicines, including organic synthetic medicines and traditional medicines, will be increased 2.1 times and the output of medical appliances will double.

In order to ensure the success of the huge-scale construction envisaged in the new Seven-Year Plan, the building-materials industry will have to be expanded.

While the method of floating preliminary calcination is introduced widely and more calcining kilns built at the cement factories, more cement factories will be built, so that by 1984 our annual output of cement will have reached 12-13 million tons.

The bases for producing building materials, such as plate glass, metal fittings, chemical building materials, building tiles and light fittings that are needed for finishing buildings, will be set up so that their output is increased radically. The production of glass fibre roofing boards will be developed. Every province will build up its own, more reliable factories to make pipes, wires, sanitary and other fittings, and all the provinces, cities and counties will consolidate their local bases for producing building materials so as to make building materials and fittings in large quantities for their own use.

The production of magnesia clinker will be increased greatly. To this end the work of expanding the Tanchon Magnesia Factory will be brought to an early conclusion and a new, large factory for the production of magnesia clinker will be built.

In the timber industry, rotation felling will be introduced on a large scale to increase output; the output of chipboards and wood-fibre boards will be increased; and the wood chemical industry will be developed so that comprehensive and effective use is made of timber.

Afforestation will be increased and over the period of the new long-term plan more than 170,000 hectares of fibre and pulp wood forests and over 340,000 hectares of oil-bearing forest will be established.

In order to raise the standard of living of the people to a higher level in the seven-year period, impressive innovations should be made in the production of consumer goods by putting a great effort into developing light industry.

The speed of the spinning machines should be increased and they should be modernized to increase their capacity to the maximum and, meanwhile, a new Orlon spinning mill will have to be built. Thus by 1984 our annual output of textiles will have reached 800 million metres. The knitwear and clothing industries will grow to satisfy the increasing demands of the people for knitted garments and clothing of all types.

The problems we have with cooking oil and sugar must be solved by industrial methods using our own raw materials. A process for

separating maize germs will be properly established at all the riced corn flour mills and assorted feed factories and the maize-processing capacities of the cornstarch factories expanded to extract a large amount of oil. A reliable Juche-oriented base for the production of *oktang* sugar will be established, so that in 1984 the sugar output from domestic sources will exceed 300,000 tons.

Close attention will be paid to the production of nutriment for the children to ensure that a greater quantity of nutritious foodstuffs are supplied to them according to their ages in months and years.

The footwear industry will be developed further and its output will have reached 100 million pairs of shoes. The production of a wide variety of quality household goods and other consumer durables will be expanded rapidly and innovations will be introduced into the production of sundry goods that are used daily. In this way the people's requirements for daily necessities will be met in full.

The paper mills now being built will be completed quickly and new, modern paper mills built, so that the output of paper will have increased more than 1.8 times by the end of the Second Seven-Year Plan.

The Party's policy for combining the development of large, centrally-run industries with small- and medium-sized local industries must be implemented to the full. During the new long-term plan period output from local industry will increase 2.4 times. For this to happen, local raw-material bases should be strengthened and local industry modernized.

The rapid development of the fishing industry is important and indispensable for raising the standard of living of the people.

By 1984 the output of marine products will have reached 3.5 million tons, 2.7 million of which will be fish.

In the East Sea, a proper combination of inshore and deep-sea fishing should be established, and in the West Sea, small- and medium-scale inshore fishing should be expanded to catch greater quantities of different kinds of fish.

At the same time as increasing the number of fishing boats, we must

modernize our fishing fleet and make all the boats general-purpose ones. The output of fishing equipment will show a very high rate of growth.

Fish and other seafood culture will be conducted on a wide scale in shallow waters, natural lakes, reservoirs, tidal marshes and rivers.

The capacity of the refrigerating plants in producer areas will be expanded and fish-processing plants modernized in line with the increase in the catch. Thus, the output of frozen fish will increase 1.8 times, salted fish 3.1 times, dried fish 1.9 times and pickled fish 2.1 times.

2) AGRICULTURE

The central task facing agriculture is to achieve the industrialization and modernization of farming and to introduce intensive, scientific methods into agricultural production. To this end, large-scale projects for harnessing nature must be carried out and the technical revolution in the rural areas accelerated.

Over the period of the Second Seven-Year Plan, unremitting efforts will be made to increase grain output and attain the goal of producing 10 million tons a year, and the production of vegetables and oil-bearing and industrial crops will be considerably increased.

In order to increase the output of grain and other farm produce markedly, our five-point policy for harnessing nature should be fully implemented.

The campaign to obtain water from below the ground and to build reservoirs will continue with vigour so that we complete the irrigation of dry fields.

Over the period of the new long-term plan, 150,000 hectares of fields will be terraced and land realignment generally completed across the country. Every field will be made more fertile.

Continual efforts will be made in forest and water conservation. A mass campaign for improving our rivers will be launched, many

tidewater control dykes built and more agricultural drainage work carried out.

While solid material and technical foundations are laid for large-scale tideland reclamation, 100,000 hectares of tidal marshes will be reclaimed by concentrating on those projects already begun and on new projects that will be started where the natural and geographical conditions are favourable and where the work can be finished comparatively quickly.

To achieve the goal that has been set for grain production and to develop agricultural productivity rapidly, the technical revolution in the rural areas must be accelerated.

Over the period of the new plan, many tractors will be supplied to the rural areas so that their number is increased to 10 per 100 hectares of cultivated land by 1984, and more lorries and farming trailers will be produced.

By 1984 the application of chemical fertilizers per hectare will exceed 2 tons, the proportion of phosphate and potash fertilizers will have increased considerably and the supply of various microelement fertilizers will also have been increased.

A larger quantity of effective herbicides and other agricultural chemicals will be supplied to the rural areas to kill weeds by chemical methods on all cultivated land and to protect the crops more effectively against all diseases and insects.

In order to increase the output of grain and other crops rapidly, farming methods must be scientific and suited to our climate, soil and crops, and agricultural production must be made intensive through the full implementation of Juche-based farming methods.

Over the period of the new long-term plan, poultry and livestock farming will continue to develop so that the annual output of meat is raised to between 800,000 and 900,000 tons. The output of both eggs and meat will be increased to the maximum by running state chicken, duck, quail and pig plants steadily and, at the same time, more small- and medium-size duck or pig sections will be introduced at the cooperative farms, and the drive to raise domestic animals such as

chickens and ducks at cooperative farmhouses will be pushed ahead continuously.

By the end of this period the output of fruit will have topped 1.5 million tons annually. We will achieve this by speeding up the introduction of mechanization and chemical methods in fruit growing and establishing a scientific and Juche-based system of technical care in tending fruit trees.

3) TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATIONS

Over the period of the Second Seven-Year Plan one important task facing the transport sector is to introduce unit-train and container transport, and extend combined rail-road-and-water operations to meet the rapidly growing demands of the national economy for transport.

Unit-train service stations and industrial railways will be fully equipped and goods transport organized more efficiently so that unit-train transport can handle more than 60 per cent of our total rail goods traffic.

Plenty of good-quality, standard containers will be manufactured for carrying bulk goods such as nonferrous ore concentrates, cement, chemical fertilizers and grain, as well as light industrial goods.

In order to increase our rail transport capacity, more lines will be electrified, important sections and marshalling yards partly or fully automated and in addition a rapid increase will be made in the production of electric and diesel locomotives and heavy-duty and various specialized goods waggons.

Over the period of the new Seven-Year Plan the Kanggye-Hyesan-Musan railway will be completed and many other new lines built.

In road haulage, the number of lorries and trailers will be increased and short- and long-distance transport fleets strengthened to satisfy the rapidly-growing demands on road transport.

As for water transport, coastal and river transport will be developed

and new, modern harbours built. In this way the capacity to transport goods will be increased, and more of our own shipping will become available for export and import.

In the new plan period it is envisaged to build more cableways and conveyor-belts and to advance rapidly the second-stage project for the Musan-Chongjin pipeline to transport ore concentrates as well as new pipelines including those for naphtha transport.

Telegraph and telephone facilities will be modernized, the output of radio transmitters increased, and the achievement of introducing a nationwide TV system consolidated and developed.

4) CAPITAL CONSTRUCTION

With a view to strengthening the economic foundations of socialism and further raising the standard of living of the people, a great and continuous effort must be made in capital construction.

In the new seven-year period more than 80 per cent of our total investment in capital construction will go into building industrial, agricultural, transport and communications and other production facilities, and vast funds will also be allocated for building houses, schools, scientific research institutes and cultural and health service facilities.

Capital construction will be carried out intensively with a definite order of priority and particular stress will be laid on the projects that are most vital to achieving the main goals of the new long-range plan and to raising the standard of living of the people.

In order to ensure the success of the massive construction projects, construction units should be regularized, construction work specialized, and a unified system of guidance thoroughly established for the building enterprises so as to ensure steady improvement in their efficiency.

We will ensure that design institutes are specialized and that guidance for design work is strengthened, so that design is kept well

ahead of construction and the most rational and least expensive designs are prepared in good time.

The level of industrialization in capital construction will be increased. Over the period of the new Seven-Year Plan, prefabricated building will account for 70 per cent of industrial construction, 90 per cent of housing construction, 70 per cent of public building construction and more than 60 per cent of the construction of other structures.

Bases for producing structural parts and light filling materials will be improved, components will be made larger and lighter and, in particular, prefabricated room-size panels and boxes will be employed extensively in housing and public buildings.

A variety of modern small, medium and large building machines will be supplied in greater numbers in order to realize the comprehensive mechanization of construction, and new techniques and advanced work methods will be widely introduced for faster and better-quality construction.

5) EDUCATION, SCIENCE AND CULTURE

An important task in education is to perfect our socialist system of education which is the most advanced and excellent of its kind and take socialist education work onto a new and higher level by fully implementing the *Theses on Socialist Education*.

The highest quality will be ensured by the universal 11-year compulsory education, to raise all the pupils and students as Juche-type communists who are fully equipped with the essentials of a revolutionary world outlook, a sound basic knowledge of nature and society and at least one technical skill.

Many working people's senior middle schools will be set up at factories, enterprises and farms and they will be run efficiently, so that all the working people reach the standard of education of a senior middle school leaver and learn at least one modern skill.

In keeping with the demands of the present situation, the quality of training of our own cadres will be radically improved to create a larger number of able technicians and specialists who are firmly committed to the Juche idea and well-versed in modern science and technology.

New, up-to-date science and engineering subjects will be introduced at colleges and universities, and the scale of technical training in some key industries, such as mechanical and electronic engineering, agricultural biology and food engineering, will be increased rapidly.

Over the period of the new long-term plan, the study-while-you-work system which embraces factory colleges and factory higher specialized schools will be strengthened and it will be promoted to display its advantages to a fuller degree.

Many new school buildings will be constructed for the institutes of higher and general education, all the schools will be provided with good experimental and practical facilities, and students and children's palaces, students and children's halls and Children's Union camps will be built in many more areas.

As for scientific research, Juche will be thoroughly established in scientific research work and efforts will be concentrated on solving the pressing scientific and technical problems that arise in socialist construction.

Research work into urgent problems that arise in making the national economy more Juche-oriented will be intensified, such as the problem of developing industry using domestic fuel and raw materials.

Mechanical engineering will be developed further to devise and produce efficient, modern machinery and equipment suited to the conditions in our country and, in particular, any new scientific and technical problems that arise in developing the electronics and automation industries will be tackled.

Research will go on into producing better varieties of rice, maize and other major grain and industrial crops, and on increasing the rate of growth and cold-resistant qualities of the crops.

New scientific fields will be opened up and the latest scientific and technical breakthroughs introduced in a way commensurate with the situation in our country.

The number of scientists will be increased, their standards raised and diverse, modern laboratory equipment and pilot plants will be provided for them.

In the fields of culture and art a greater number of revolutionary and militant literary and artistic works of a high ideological and artistic quality will be created. They will include works based on the glorious revolutionary traditions of our people and works accurately depicting the exciting realities of grand socialist construction.

Over the period of the Second Seven-Year Plan film studios will be equipped on more up-to-date lines, a scientific and educational film studio and a Grand People's Study House built, and more libraries, theatres and culture halls will be erected throughout the country and furnished with modern equipment.

6) THE STANDARD OF LIVING

Over the period of the Second Seven-Year Plan the standard of living of the people should again be raised as the economic foundations for the prosperity and development of our country and the future welfare of the people are made more solid by maintaining a proper balance between accumulation and consumption.

In this period, alongside the simultaneous improvement in the standard of living of the workers and the farmers, serious attention will be paid in particular to the farmers' living conditions so that their livelihood will be improved evenly in the mountains and on the plains.

Under the new plan the prices of consumer goods will be further reduced as the output of consumer goods increases and the cost of manufactured goods falls.

More state funds will be allocated so that social and cultural measures can be introduced to benefit the working people, thus

developing the buds of communist distribution.

Over the period of the new Seven-Year Plan, modern housing will be erected for between 200,000 and 300,000 urban and rural families every year, the central heating system will be expanded in Pyongyang and introduced in all provincial centres and many other towns. Thus, the working people's living conditions will be improved.

Over this period, turnover in retail trade will increase 1.9 times in line with the rapid growth of production and the increased purchasing power of the working people.

Commodity supplies to the major industrial and rural areas will be improved and, in particular, the sale of delicatessens, consumer durables and a wide variety of sundry goods will increase markedly to cater to the working people's various demands for commodities and also to their convenience.

In public health, universal free medical care should be fully guaranteed, the policy for preventive medicine implemented, and the district medical care system developed, so that medical services for the working people are improved still further.

Over the period of the new plan, the number of preventive treatment groups will increase 1.3 times and hospital beds more than 1.2 times.

City and county people's hospitals will be better equipped to make them general hospitals with all the specialized departments, more specialized hospitals, preventive medicine hospitals and maternity homes will be built, and medical appliances and facilities will be modernized.

Alongside modern medicine, traditional Oriental medicine will be developed. The central and provincial traditional hospitals will be extended and such departments in city and county people's and industrial hospitals will be improved.

At the same time as consolidating the successes already achieved in the nursing and upbringing of children, more nursery schools will be set up and well maintained, and children's wards will be properly managed so that our little ones are brought up better and their health is improved.

* * *

The Second Seven-Year Plan is a magnificent programme of economic construction that will further increase the strength of the independent socialist national economy through accelerating the rate of making it Juche-oriented, modern and scientific, and it is a marvellous blueprint for hastening the historic cause of building socialism and communism.

The new Seven-Year Plan envisages a high growth rate in production and the undertaking of construction work on an unprecedented scale, and makes it imperative to harness all the people's strengths and talents and every bit of production potential in the country for building socialism.

In order to carry out the Second Seven-Year Plan successfully, the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions must be promoted by making unstinting efforts.

These three revolutions are essential to the continuous revolution and must be advanced until communism has been built, and the thorough implementation of the line of the three revolutions is the decisive guarantee for success in the fulfilment of the Second Seven-Year Plan.

The task facing us is to continue the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions on all fronts of socialist construction and thus bring about uninterrupted progress and new innovations in construction and production.

Over the period of the new Seven-Year Plan, the revolutionary principle of self-reliance should be embodied more fully in socialist construction.

It is a requirement of the Juche idea to fight one's way through the difficulties that lie ahead with faith in one's own strength and by relying on one's own abilities, and this is a policy consistently pursued

by our people in the revolutionary struggle and in construction. By arming themselves with the Juche idea and giving full scope to the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, all our officials and working people should discover what it is we are short of and make those things which we lack, and thus carry out the Second Seven-Year Plan successfully by relying on their own strengths and on their own skills and resources. In all units and all industries the slogan “Let us show more spirit of revolutionary self-reliance!” must be upheld.

In order to ensure the success of the ambitious tasks of the Second Seven-Year Plan it is imperative to guide the economy and manage the enterprises properly in line with the economic laws of socialism and socialist principles of economic management.

All state and economic organizations and economic executives should use their best efforts to bring the enthusiasm and unflinching creative wisdom of the masses into full play. To do so they need to meet in full the requirements of the Taean work system in guiding and managing the economy and, in particular, to keep political work, work with the people, well in advance of every other kind of work. Meanwhile, they should organize economic work most scrupulously so as to produce and build more with the manpower, equipment and materials available. This calls for making the fullest possible use of all production capacity and potential and for practising strict economy.

Fulfilling the new Seven-Year Plan will further the progress of our people’s struggle for the complete victory of socialism and provide all our people with a happier and more prosperous life in every field of politics, the economy and culture.

The Supreme People’s Assembly is convinced that the Second Seven-Year Plan will be fulfilled triumphantly under the sound leadership of the Government of the Republic and through the heroic struggle of all our working people, who are firmly united on the basis of the Juche idea.

**LET US WAGE A MORE VIGOROUS
CAMPAIGN TO SMASH THE “TWO KOREAS”
PLOT AND REUNIFY THE COUNTRY**

Talk to a Delegation of Chongryon Officials

December 22, 1977

I am very glad to meet you today and to know that you have visited the homeland and are going to return in good health.

I am not going to talk to you at length because I think you must already have heard about the situation in the homeland from the officials concerned.

As you know well from having attended the First Session of the Sixth Supreme People's Assembly which was held a short time ago, in the homeland we embark on the Second Seven-Year National Economic Plan next year. I firmly believe that our people will fulfil the plan successfully by displaying to the full the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, as they have done in the past.

The thoughts and purpose of our working class are presently very good and all the people are fully equipped with the Juche idea and rallied closely as one around the Party. Such being the case, if all the working people display their revolutionary enthusiasm and creative talents in their work, they will be fully able to fulfil the plan ahead of schedule, as they did with such credit in the Six-Year National Economic Plan formerly.

Because I believe that all the problems that concern you must already have been spoken about, I should like to say a few words about

some problems relating to national reunification.

Many people in the world hold the mistaken view that our country must be divided into two states like Germany. Both the United States and Japan insist on this.

That was why at the Pyongyang mass meeting to welcome the Party and state delegation from the German Democratic Republic, I stated that although the partition of Germany was reasonable, the division of our country was unwarranted. This speech has produced a major sensation in the press of Japan and the United States.

Germany, a country which ignited the Second World War, was partitioned as a consequence of the war. At present West Germany is a capitalist state with highly developed monopoly capital. In some scientific and technical branches she is more developed than the United States. Therefore, Germany may re-emerge as a force of aggression if she is reunified and grows stronger as a militarist state, and so the wish of the European countries is that she will remain partitioned.

However, the circumstances in our country are different and there is no reason for it to remain divided. Ours is a country which has never invaded another country, and which had to win liberation from Japanese colonial rule. The countries which neighbour us do not consider that our country may invade another country even after reunification. It will also be a good thing for them if our country is reunified, rather than remaining divided and in a state of conflict.

Our people were deprived of half of their country by the US imperialists for no reason. To regain it is the sacred national right of our people.

At present the progressive people the world over, to say nothing of all the Korean people, desire the reunification of our country. But the US imperialists, Japanese militarists and south Korean puppet clique are strongly opposed to the reunification of Korea. They are clamouring for so-called “cross recognition” and “simultaneous admission to the UN”, a product of their wild ambition to divide our country in two permanently like Germany.

We could never legally perpetuate national division by entering the

UN as “two Koreas” or allowing the large countries to make “cross recognition”. If we tolerate the enemy’s scheme of “simultaneous admission to the UN” and “cross recognition”, we will never achieve national reunification, and the enemy will be able to justify the division of Korea by saying to our younger generations and the people of the world that the division of our country into “two Koreas” had been made in accordance with the demands of the Korean people themselves. Therefore, we can on no account tolerate their moves to create “two Koreas”.

We should make every possible effort to thwart the “two Koreas” plot of the US imperialists and south Korean puppet clique and to reunify our divided country.

You should work skilfully with the south Korean people, above all else, to encourage them to fight boldly against the scheme of the enemy for “two Koreas”.

Since our country is small, it will be impotent if it is divided, and south Korea will become a permanent colony of the US imperialists. At present the south Korean people are not aware of this. Although we have stated on several occasions that we will not force communism on south Korea, they still believe that communism will be forced on them when the country is reunified.

Two different systems can exist in one country. The association of progressive mayors exists in Japan, even though it is a capitalist society, doesn’t it? In one case, even in a capitalist country some part of the country is occupied by a progressive group and the other by a right-wing group.

We do not intend to liquidate the south Korean capitalists after national reunification. In fact, there is no major capitalist in south Korea. If there are any, they are comprador capitalists, not monopoly capitalists.

We intend to reunify the country by means of instituting a north-south confederation under the name of a single state, leaving the socialist system in the northern half of Korea and the present system in south Korea intact for the time being.

If our small country is reunified, it will be in a position to develop into a powerful country and all fifty million Koreans will be perfectly able to enjoy a happy life. Our country abounds in mineral and marine resources. The south Korean puppet clique is now trying to develop the continental shelves in collaboration with the Japanese reactionaries, but national reunification will enable the Koreans to do such things well by themselves. If we develop these shelves, we shall be able to obtain from them great quantities of a variety of resources, including crude oil. In addition, when measures are taken to prevent pollution, it will be possible to catch plenty of fish even in the seas off south Korea. There are also large quantities of mineral resources in our country which have not yet been prospected.

You must offer a satisfactory explanation to the south Korean people, telling them that our country must not be divided into “two Koreas” and that national reunification is the only way to make all the people eat good food and live happily without being subordinated to another country. In this way, you should ensure that they fight boldly against the enemy’s “two Koreas” plot, with the clear understanding that division is the path of slavery and national ruin as well as the way to being deprived of half the country by the US imperialists.

At the same time, you should arouse international public opinion in support of Korean reunification so as to check and frustrate the “two Koreas” plot. This is the immediate task facing you in smashing the plot and achieving national reunification.

Next, you should help the south Korean people to launch a strenuous campaign to achieve national reunification based on our three principles for national reunification.

I put forward these three principles when I met the south Korean delegate who came to Pyongyang to attend the north-south high-level political talks. I met him personally to speak about them because he had told our officials that his side also intended that the question of national reunification should be solved by the Koreans themselves sitting around a table, without relying on the United States.

Firstly I told the south Korean delegate that the country’s

reunification should be achieved independently by the Koreans themselves without relying on foreign forces and without any interference from them, secondly that great national unity should be promoted, transcending any differences in ideology, ideals and social system and thirdly that national reunification should be realized by peaceful means, without recourse to arms, and that any war between the north and the south would lead to the destruction of every building and to the death of numerous people, which, therefore, would be terrible.

At first, the delegate doubted if the two sides could be merged because one had a socialist system and the other a capitalist system. So, I said to him that our nation would prosper if it was united and the two sides cooperated, so there was no reason for us not to do this, and that we must achieve great national unity and national reunification, transcending any differences in ideology, ideals and social system, regardless of whether the people in the northern half espoused communist ideas and Marxism-Leninism and the south Korean people believed in “Christ” and “God”.

After hearing me out, he said that my statement was very good and expressed his complete agreement with it. Hence the three principles for national reunification and, a short time later, the publication of the North-South Joint Statement.

Even after the publication of this statement, the main content of which was the three principles for national reunification, the south Korean authorities said that the “UN forces” were not foreign forces and that the “Anti-Communist Law” could not be repealed. Although they themselves proclaimed their agreement with the three principles for national reunification, they turned around and betrayed them.

Even after that, I met and talked with other representatives of the south Korean side when they visited Pyongyang. I said to them: “You are now trying to ‘confront’, ‘compete’ and ‘coexist’, while on the other hand, holding talks but you should refrain from doing so; the north and the south should unite, instead of being in confrontation; there is no point in dialogue if we are in confrontation with each other

because the aim of talks is to achieve unity; we must collaborate instead of competing; there is no need for us to compete, debating which is better, socialism or capitalism; and even if we wanted to compete, we could not do so anyway because our principle is to make everyone prosperous and yours is to make the poor poorer and the rich, richer.” At the same time, I laid down the conditions for collaboration between the north and the south.

Firstly, we proposed the joint exploitation of mineral resources. I told them: “At present south Korea is selling a large number of people as slaves to West Germany, Brazil and many other countries in the world, and going to the lengths of selling children abroad. This must stop and instead you must send them to the northern half of Korea; the north has vast mineral deposits including iron ore and nonferrous minerals; the iron ore in Musan, Phungsan and other northern areas alone amounts to thousands of millions of tons; we could not mine all of it in several hundred years; so, let us exploit these mineral resources jointly, you providing the manpower and we supplying equipment; you have to buy iron ore from distant foreign countries because you are short of it having built an iron works in Pohang, so it is a good idea for us to develop iron-ore mines jointly and you will take the ore for your own use.”

Then, I proposed that we should help them to undertake irrigation projects in south Korea. I told them: “You are replacing the straw-thatched roofs of farmhouses with plastic tiles under the plea of conducting the ‘new village movement’, funded by a loan of two billion dollars from Japan, but if you were to conduct that movement in good earnest, you would give the land to the peasants and carry out irrigation projects, in order to make them prosperous; how will you pay off the loan of two billion dollars from Japan once you have spent it?; so, you should abandon this movement and let us undertake irrigation projects in south Korea so as to enable the peasants to raise good crops; because these projects are not carried out in the south, even light rainfall causes flooding and a short spell of dry weather brings about a drought every year, doesn’t it?; we have vast experience in irrigation

and are now helping with irrigation projects in many African countries; we shall provide the technicians and equipment, so you should supply the manpower; then we shall be able to construct irrigation systems in south Korea rapidly.”

I also explained the way to improve the living conditions of the south Korean fishermen. I said: “The East Sea of our country is teeming with fish because cold and warm currents meet there; in winter there are several million tons of pollack there alone, but we can catch only a few hundred thousand tons; therefore let us allow south Korean fishermen to enter our fishing grounds to catch fish; we will provide them with adequate protection; when they are overtaken by a storm, we shall evacuate them to somewhere safe, and we will provide them with food and water when they have run out; their living conditions will improve if they are allowed to catch fish in the fishing grounds of the northern half of Korea.”

I told them that if the north and the south were to cooperate in a variety of projects one by one, beginning with those things that are possible, national reunification would be hastened.

The south Korean representatives said that the cooperation we had proposed between the north and the south was fine. But, after their return to south Korea, they abandoned all our proposals and instead proposed the joint development of Mt. Kumgang for tourism.

At present the south Korean authorities are clamouring that they have earned one hundred million dollars or two hundred million dollars every year through their tourist industry. As for what they call tourism, it is to raise money by offering *kisaeng* girls to foreigners.

The south Korean people and democrats are not familiar with the proposed collaboration between the north and the south. It is because the south Korean puppet clique has not informed the people there of it and instead conducts false propaganda that states it is all untrue.

The south Korean puppet clique is now conducting false propaganda among the people in the south that nothing has been built in Pyongyang, that the streets are swarming with beggars.

As you have seen, Pyongyang has been built up into an excellent,

modern city, and in our country there is no unemployed or starving person nor are there any shoeshine boys in the streets. Of course, as yet we cannot live prosperously. In the northern half of the country, however, none of the people have any worries about food, clothing and housing, and they can study to their heart's content, and receive free medical treatment when they are ill. If the south Korean people witness such things here in the north, they will all say that our socialist system is fine.

At the time of the north-south Red Cross talks, there was some affair about the south Korean representatives and their company who had come to Pyongyang trying to give fountain-pens and notebooks to our primary school pupils. But our schoolchildren said, "We have all the school things we need and so you must give them to the south Korean children who are unable to study because they have no money and have to polish shoes." On hearing this, the representatives and their company from south Korea were greatly moved, so I am told.

The head of the delegation of the south Korean Red Cross Society who came on the visit to this city, was a former resident of Pyongyang, and asked to go and see the spot where his house had formerly stood. His house had been somewhere on the present Chollima Street, so he visited the site but could not find it because the street had been rebuilt so well.

When in Seoul to hold talks, our Red Cross representatives cleaned their hotel rooms, polished their shoes and put their bedding in order, themselves. The servants at the hotel who saw this, changed their opinion of us, communists. They said that the communists were all good people upon witnessing their behaviour.

It seems to me that at the time of the Red Cross talks, the south Korean journalists and hotel staff were greatly impressed by our people. After compiling the information on the Red Cross talks, the south Korean puppet clique believed that all the south Korean people would be won over by us if the talks were held in the north and the south alternately, so they proposed holding the Red Cross talks at Panmunjom. These facts show that in the talks and contact between the

north and the south, we can exert as favourable an influence as we want on the south Korean people.

It is not true that the failure to reunify our country is due to any sharp antagonism between the north and the south. The reason lies in the fact that the south Korean puppet clique is not trying to reunify the country, and the US imperialists prevent it anyway.

You should explain in full to the south Korean people that the country must be reunified based on the three principles for national reunification. By doing this, you should ensure that everyone who wants to see the country reunified will turn out as one man in the struggle to accomplish this cause, regardless of property status, religious belief and ideology.

Next, you should help the south Korean people to understand the need for unity with the communists for national reunification.

Last year I held talks with a compatriot who visited the homeland from the United States. At the time, I told him: “The south Korean authorities should not oppose the communists in their efforts to reunify the country; in the northern half of Korea the communists have taken power and there are two million members of the Workers’ Party and, if their families are included, the number totals as many as eight million; ‘reunification by prevailing over communism’ means to kill more than half the population of the northern half, so, in that case, reunification will be pointless; therefore, reunification presupposes unity with communists; although there are differences in our political views because you believe in ‘God’ and we adhere to communism, we share the same purpose of reunifying the country, don’t we?; you have no reason to oppose us because we follow communist ideology and we have no reason to stand against you because you believe in ‘God’; so let us unite to reunify the country.” Christian as he was, he said that my statement was absolutely correct.

The south Korean puppet clique is currently conducting an anti-communist campaign, insisting on “peaceful reunification”. In the final analysis, this means to achieve “reunification by prevailing over communism”. This testifies to the fact that there is no “threat of

aggression” from the north, as the enemy says, but that the south Korean authorities have the wild intention of a northward invasion.

You must explain this evil ambition of the south Korean puppet clique properly to the workers, peasants, young people and students, intellectuals and democrats in south Korea. In this way, you should persuade them to become completely familiar with the cunning moves of the south Korean puppet clique and to have an understanding of the need for a combined effort with the communists to achieve national reunification. When they rise up with a clear understanding of the matter of reunification, the country’s reunification will be brought ever closer.

I believe that you will fight vigorously to hasten national reunification and defend your socialist homeland, as our Party and our country expect.

I hope that on your return you will convey to the Comrade Chairman and other Chongryon officials and all our compatriots in Japan, my desire for them to wage a more vigorous campaign, enjoying good health, for national reunification and to safeguard the socialist homeland.

